MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE STRYKER BRIGADE COMBAT TEAM INFANTRY BATTALION

SEPTEMBER 2003

HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

This publication is available at Army Knowledge Online (www.us.army.mil) and the General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library at (www.adtdl.army.mil)

*ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
No. 7-22-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 19 September 2003

MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR THE STRYKER BRIGADE COMBAT TEAM
INFANTRY BATTALION

CONTENTS

Page

---

*DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) is designed for the infantry battalion, Stryker Brigade Combat Team (SBCT). This MTP provides Active and Reserve Component commanders and staff with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the infantry battalion to perform its critical wartime missions. Although a unit's missions and deployment assignments impact on the commander's final set of training priorities, the tasks described herein are the primary ones the infantry battalion must be able to execute with proficiency. The unit is expected to train all tasks to standard. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. The preparing agency is the US Army Infantry School. Submit recommendations for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 (Recommended changes to Publications and Blank Forms) or in any clearly written format and forward them to Commandant, US Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-ATD, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5007. Electronic contact can be made at doctrine@benning.army.mil

Unless otherwise stated, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

Note: The term "Infantry Battalion" will be referred to in this MTP as battalion.

1-1**. General.** This Mission Training Plan (MTP) is designed to provide the battalion commander and his staff with a tactical training and evaluation program for the battalion. It also provides guidance about how to train and the key missions on which to train. The specific details of the training program depend on many factors, including:

- Unit's Mission Essential Tasks List (METL).
- Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- Training priorities for the battalion.
- Training resources and areas available.

1-2. **Supporting Material**. The battalion training program fits into the spectrum of activities that also encompasses brigade-level, company-level, platoon-level, leader, and individual training programs. Each MTP contains the following:

- Training information.
- Training matrixes.
- Mission outlines (company and below).
- Training plans (battalion and higher).
- Sample training exercise examples.
- Comprehensive detailed Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&EOs).
- Evaluation information.
- Appendixes describing Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS) (for battalion and higher), sample operations order with threat statement, and other proponent-specific information as appropriate.
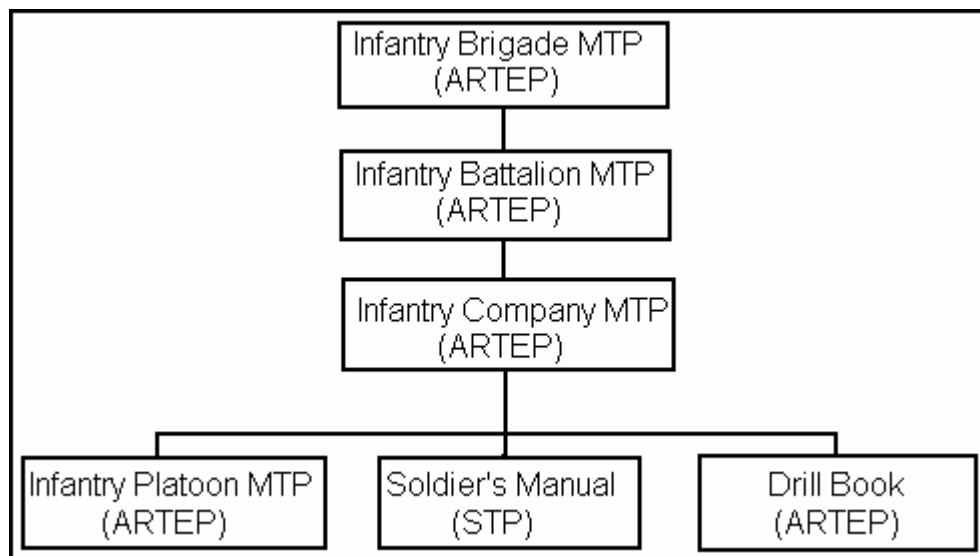

Figure 1-1. MTP echelon relationship.

1-3. **Contents**. This MTP is organized into six chapters and four appendixes.

a. *Chapter 1*, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP.

b. *Chapter 2*, Training Matrixes, presents the relationship between missions and tasks.

c.   *Chapter 3,*Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between critical wartime missions and subtasks inherent to those operations.

d.   *Chapter 4*, Training Exercises, provides information on developing training exercises. It provides sample field training exercises (FTXs) and command post exercises (CPXs) to be used by leaders in developing training exercises for their unit.

e.   *Chapter 5*, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training criteria for tasks that the battalion must master to perform critical wartime operations. These training criteria orient on the levels of collective training executed by the battalion. Each T&EO can be applicable to one or more operations. In various combinations, the T&EOs comprise larger training exercises such as the FTXs and STXs.

f.   *Chapter 6*, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g.   *Appendix A*, Description of Combined Arms Training Strategy.

h.   *Appendix B*, Exercise OPORDs.

i.   *Appendix C*, Enemy Analysis.

j.   *Appendix D*, Digital Supplement.

1-4. **Missions And Tasks**. Full-spectrum operations include offensive operations, defensive operations, stability operations, and support operations. Each operation includes major tasks that the battalion must execute to accomplish that mission. It also includes the tasks that each company; platoon, squad, and soldier must perform. Each of these tasks requires training.

a.   *Collective Tasks*. Collective tasks are trained based on guidelines and procedures outlined in Field Manual (FM) 7-0 (25-100), FM 7-1 (25-101), and in Chapters 4, 5, and 6 of the applicable MTP. Collective tasks may be trained separately or, like collective tasks and or supporting tasks, may be grouped together. Collective tasks can also be combined with collective tasks of other operational levels to form more complex training exercises. (Refer to Chapter 4 for examples of FTXs and CPXs.) Commanders and leaders select the applicable tasks using procedures outlined in FM 7-0 (25-100) and in Chapters 3 and 6 of this MTP.

b.   *Leader Tasks***.** Leader tasks are trained using soldier's manuals (SMs). Selected leader tasks should support the battalion's critical wartime operations. Leaders can be trained using the full range of training exercises established by the Army. (For example, map exercises (MAPEXs), tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs), command post exercises (CPXs), FTXs, and so forth).

1-5. **Principles of Training**. This MTP is based on the training principles outlined in FM 7-0 (25-100). The following paragraphs summarize these concepts.

a.   *Train as a Combined Arms and Service Team*. Army doctrine places a premium on teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together. Leaders must regularly practice cross-attachments with the full wartime spectrum of combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units.

b.   *Train as You Fight*. Conversely, units fight as they have been trained. Soldiers remember the last way they performed a task (right or wrong). To ensure success in combat, soldiers and units must perform to established standards which in turn must be rigidly enforced by leaders. Because it is impossible to predict the type of weather and terrain a unit will face when executing a combat mission,

training should be conducted under varying conditions that are both realistic and progressively more challenging.

c.   *Use Appropriate Doctrine*. Soldiers have no time to learn nonstandard procedures. Their units, therefore, must train by performing tasks to the standards specified in MTPs, drills, SMs, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications. This MTP conforms with doctrine published in source documents, which are FM 3-21.20 (7-20), FM 3-21.30 (7-30), and Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 7-30-MTP.

d.   *Use Performance-Oriented Training*. Soldiers sharpen their skills by performing hands-on training as often as possible, which makes practice the key factor in training. Battalions and their subordinate elements repeatedly practice the tasks and the missions to achieve proficiency.

e.   *Train to Challenge*. The best training is tough, realistic, and both intellectually and physically challenging. It motivates soldiers and inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f.   *Train to Sustain Proficiency*. Soldiers sustain the skills they learn only by practicing them. When developing a training plan, always allow time to practice the tasks and the missions covered in earlier training. Use this MTP as a guide in developing a plan that allows the battalion to achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g.   *Train Using Multi-Echelon Techniques*. This is the most efficient way to train and sustain a diverse range of mission-essential tasks while compensating for limited training resources and time. Training should involve soldiers, leaders, and subordinate elements at all levels of the unit simultaneously.

h.   *Train to Maintain*. Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Keeping equipment ready for the fight is as important as training soldiers to be proficient in its use. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in preparation for training or combat employment.

i.   *Make Commanders the Primary Trainers*. Commanders are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organizations.

1-6. **Training Strategy**. The training program developed and executed by the infantry unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions is a component of the Army's Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). (See Appendix A for a description of CATS.) The following should be considered when developing a unit training strategy.

a.   *Descriptive Strategies*. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with descriptive lists for training. These strategies reflect an optimal way to train to standard. However, all units in the Army probably do not have the same resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b.   *Role of the Brigade*. In large measure, the success of the battalion's training strategy depends on the development of an effective training plan for the parent infantry brigade and on guidance and supervision provided by the brigade commander and his subordinate leaders. The infantry battalion's training strategy provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train the METL from the MTP. Training strategies provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c.   *Role of the Battalion*. The Infantry battalion training strategy consists of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and

focused training strategy that allows the battalion to train to standard. The elements of the infantry battalion's training strategy are *maneuver, gunnery*, and *soldiers.*

(1) **Maneuver Strategy**. The maneuver strategy provides a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) **Gunnery Strategy**. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems in the unit, provides an annual training plan, and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy come from the Standards in Training (STRAC) manual or the appropriate field manual. As a subset of the gunnery strategy, a training strategy is developed for each individual and crew-served weapon in the Army inventory.

(3) **Soldier Strategy**. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train the soldier.

d. *Training Gates*. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before advancing to a more complex or resource-intensive training event or task. Training events follow the "crawl, walk, run" training strategy. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and a CPX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the CPX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. *Standard Army Training System (SATS)*. The SATS provides automated tools for implementing the training management doctrine in FM 7-0 (25-100) and related manuals. SATS facilitates the development of METL, training strategies, training plans, and training schedules. SATS also provides commanders a medium through which to coordinate activities, project resources needed for an event, record the actual resources expended on an event, assess the execution of a collective task and METL, and assess operational readiness. CATS data can be consulted at different points in SATS to assist you in developing your training products.

Training Note: SATS database comprises a variety of MTPs and STPs. To access these publications, users need a copy of the SATS software and the CD-ROM containing the data files. To obtain information on the database and hardware requirements or to order the software and CD-ROM, contact the U.S. Army Training Support Center, ATTN: ATISD, Fort Eustis, Virginia 23605-5166. Information is also available by calling DSN 826-7001, extension 6531, or commercial (757) 878-7001,extension 6531.

1-7. **Conducting Training**. Effective training requires the personal time, energy, and guidance of commanders. Commanders must personally observe and assess training at all echelons. Their specific emphasis is on training one level down and evaluating two levels down; for example, battalion commanders train company commanders with their companies and evaluate platoon leaders with their platoons. Company commanders train platoon leaders with their platoons and evaluate section, squad, team, and crew leaders with their units. This MTP facilitates planning, preparation, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. The following discussion summarizes procedures and considerations for each step in the methodology.

a. *Plan the Training*. Planning links the unit METL and the execution of battle-focused training. It is a centralized process that aligns training priorities with wartime requirements at all levels within the unit. Although there are other training requirements, battle focus allows the leader to narrow his scope of planning to wartime mission essential tasks. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of the infantry battalion's training plan. The following discussion covers several aspects of the planning process.

(1) Planning for the infantry battalion training program involves leaders at all levels of the unit organization.

(a) The brigade commander is the primary trainer of all the battalions within the brigade. He is responsible for developing a comprehensive, long-term training strategy encompassing a variety of training events such as FTXs and CPXs. Based on the unit's METL, the commander makes an initial assessment of the entire brigade, including battalions and companies, to identify systemic weaknesses. He then develops a training focus and specifies the individual and collective tasks he wants to train and evaluate.

(b) The battalion commander focuses on leader training and on collective training, primarily at the platoon and squad levels. Battalions should be able to perform all collective tasks according to standards and guidelines provided in this MTP, FM 3-21.20 (7-20), and unit tactical standard operating procedures (TSOPs). To accomplish this, battalions can plan and execute limited CPXs before taking part in brigade training; these exercises can increase the confidence level of companies, platoons, and squads and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the battalion commander can use CFXs, CPXs, and operation order (OPORD) drills to ensure his subordinate leaders have a basic understanding of the tasks they must execute.

(2) In developing the battalion training plan, leaders at all levels should adhere to the principles outlined in FM 7-0 (25-100) and FM 7-1 (25-101). They should also use this MTP as a guide, employing the following development tools:

(a) The training plans in Chapter 3 provide examples of how unit leaders can develop individualized training programs that reflect their current METL. These plans are adjustable, allowing commanders to tailor CPXs to their needs.

(b) Chapter 4 includes outlines for the FTX and CPX. Example CPXs contain a scenario for an offensive mission and for a defensive mission.

(c) Chapter 5 contains T&EOs for collective tasks that support critical wartime operations.

(d) Chapter 6 provides guidance for planning and conducting evaluations of battalion training exercises.

Training Note: An important tool in the development of the battalion training plan is the SATS. Refer to the discussion in paragraph 1-6 for more information on this computer-based reference data.

(3) There is never enough time to train all tasks. In developing training plans, leaders must prioritize the tasks that require training, focusing on their units' largest operational challenges and on their most difficult sustainment skills. Before training begins, the battalion commander should conduct a training meeting with the leaders of all subordinate units to analyze training requirements and prioritize tasks. This kind of session can also help to identify weak areas that require the attention of trainers and leaders.

(4) Once unit leaders have identified the tasks to be trained, they must integrate them into a training schedule. The battalion commander can use the procedure outlined in the following paragraphs:

(a) List the tasks according to priority and how often they need to be trained.

(b) Determine the amount of time required and decide how to use multi-echelon training.

(c) Determine the site for training.

(d) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(e) Organize the battalion's needs into blocks of time and required training resources, such as ammunition, multiple-integrated laser engagement system (MILES) equipment, and suitable training areas.

(5) The battalion commander may submit a list of the tasks and related training events he has selected to the brigade commander. The brigade commander in turn develops his own list, but he must review the battalion commander's recommendations. Once the brigade commander has approved the list of tasks and related training events, he includes them on the unit training schedule. He must be sure to allocate sufficient preparation time to the battalion.

(6) With his recommendations for training events, the battalion commander must also submit the list of resources he will need, providing the brigade headquarters with sufficient time for acquisition and coordination. The brigade must coordinate resource requirements with the division.

b. *Train and Certify Leaders.* This is the most important step of conducting training and covers all trainers, evaluators, and leaders involved in unit training.

(1) The proficiency and preparedness of the evaluation team will directly affect the quality of training and the proficiency units gain at the training site. Before execution of training, senior leaders must certify all trainers and leaders to ensure their technical and tactical proficiency in relation to the unit they will be training and evaluating. This can be accomplished using a series of officer, noncommissioned officer, and leader professional development sessions followed by certification exercises, TEWTs, or examinations. These can take the form of written examinations and or sand table evaluations.

Training Note: Trainers should have held the position of the individuals they are selected to evaluate.

(2) The leaders within the battalion must also undergo training before the battalion takes part in a collective training exercise. Division and brigade commanders must ensure that the battalion commander is able to perform the required leader tasks in support of the team's collective tasks. Consequently, the battalion commander is responsible for training his subordinate leaders on the individual tasks required to support the collective tasks.

c. *Reconnoiter the Site*. After trainers and evaluators are certified, the commander and the evaluation team must make a site reconnaissance of the area where the FTX will be conducted. At this point, they can begin to develop graphic control measures for the exercise. The commander and evaluation team also conduct a terrain analysis to identify all key terrain and the following locations:
- STX lanes.
- OPFOR positions.
- Assembly areas.
- Leader training sites.
- After-action review (AAR) sites.
- Logistical support locations.
- Command post (CP) locations.
- Retraining areas.

d. *Issue the Plan*. After planning and coordination are completed and the training event begins, the battalion commander receives the OPORD and begins planning. (Planning can be completed prior to the FTX using a separate staff exercise.) While he formulates his plan, the rest of the battalion conducts the various activities of the troop-leading process, including company training in preparation for the exercise. The trainer and or brigade commander evaluates the battalion commander on his understanding of the OPORD, requiring him to give a confirmation brief on the order. This procedure ensures that the battalion commander is ready to issue the OPORD to his staff and company commanders. It will also test his ability to understand oral orders and build his confidence before approaching his subordinate leaders to issue the order.

e. *Rehearse*. The value of this step should never be underestimated. Rehearsals are a critical part of every training exercise. Units must never bypass rehearsals to save time or resources. Trainers and commanders must plan for battalion rehearsals and ensure they are conducted as part of the battalion's troop-leading procedures. A well planned, efficiently run rehearsal can accomplish the following:
- It will reinforce earlier training and increase proficiency in the critical tasks to be evaluated.
- It will reveal weaknesses or problems in the plan.
- It will synchronize the actions of the battalion's companies and any other subordinate elements.
- It will confirm coordination between the battalion and adjacent units.
- It will improve each leader's understanding of the concept of the operation, the fire plan, anticipated contingencies, and possible actions and reactions for various situations that may arise during the operation.

f. *Execute*. The battalion should initiate a training exercise only when it has a clear understanding of how to execute the mission. The trainer makes this determination at the conclusion of the rehearsals. At that point, he either allows the battalion to execute the task or continues with additional rehearsals, focusing on leader training. During the execution phase, the trainer conducts a detailed evaluation for use

during the AAR, which is conducted immediately following the exercise. Evaluations are conducted based on the GO or NO-GO criteria described in Chapter 5 of this MTP. Trainers provide the participants with a rating for each task trained during the exercise.

g. *Conduct the AAR*. At the conclusion of the exercise, the battalion receives a complete AAR from the trainer. The AAR, which focuses on the training objectives and standards, is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. This structured review process allows training participants to discover for themselves what happened, why it happened, and how the unit can improve its performance. Based on the battalion's performance, the trainer recommends to the commander whether the team will require retraining to meet the standards.

h. *Conduct Retraining*. Based on the evaluation results, the battalion must undergo retraining on each task for which it receives a NO-GO rating. Trainers and leaders develop a training program to meet these specific requirements. The team can then be reevaluated, either immediately at the STX or FTX site or at a later date.

Training Note: Battle focus derives peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. It guides the planning, execution, and assessment of the battalion's training programs to ensure the unit trains as it is going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process. Commanders use it to allocate resources for training based on wartime operation requirements. Also, commanders can recognize that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task because of time or resource constraints. A successful training program is achievable, however, by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of vital tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment.

1-8. **Force Protection (Safety)**. Risk assessment is the thought process of making operations safe without compromising the mission. Commanders must continuously perform a risk assessment of conditions under which training is conducted to prevent the unnecessary loss of soldiers and equipment. The degree of risk varies with the conditions at the time of training. For example, have the soldiers done the training before? Will the training be done for the first time at night? Are the soldiers fatigued? In reality, risk management is smart decision-making.

a. A well-trained unit is normally accident free; however, accidents can occur through no fault of the soldier or equipment operator. Most accidents result from inadequately trained, unsupervised, or complacent personnel.

b. Training must be tough, realistic, and safe. Commanders must consider the following points as they integrate risk assessment into their training:
- Accept no unnecessary risks.
- Make risk decisions at the proper level.
- Accept risks if mission benefits outweigh the costs.

c. It is important to remember that the commander is the safety officer, but all soldiers and leaders are responsible for safe training. All leaders must--
- Identify the risks using the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
- Assess possible loss, cost, and probability.
- Make decisions and develop controls to reduce risks.
- Implement controls by integrating them into plans, orders, TSOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.
- Supervise and enforce safety controls and standards at all times. (Leaders should make on-the-spot corrections when an unsafe act is observed.)

d. Leaders use the safety checklist of the United States Army Safety Center, Fort Rucker, Alabama, in conjunction with local unit safety checklists, to enhance the overall safety practices of soldiers during training.

1-9. **Environmental Protection**. Environmental planning includes identifying environmental risks posed by an operation and considering ways to reduce those risks during long-, short-, and near-term planning. The staff may produce an environmental protection-level matrix similar to the example in Figure 1-2. This matrix ties directly into risk assessment.

Environmental Protection Level				
Level 1		**Level 2**	**Level 3**	**Level 4**
1. Waste Management				
Human waste	Unit TSOP	Slit trench	Burnout latrine	Sanitary sewer
Solid waste	Unit TSOP	Unit Incineration or burial	Incineration	Landfill
Medical Waste	Unit TSOP	Field collection, consolidate disposal	US or host Nation (HN) approved disposal methods	Same
Hazardous waste	Unit TSOP	Field collection, consolidate disposal	Unit collection point, classify, label, DLA contract	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) or HN procedures
2. Hazardous Materials				
Water	Unit TSOP	Spill response, report any water contamination	HM tracking, spill response, report spills over 50 gallons	Spill prevention plans, response teams
3. Natural resources				
Water	Unit TSOP	Unit TSOP	Erosion control	No degradation of water due to erosion or effluent
Vegetation	Unit TSOP	Restriction on camouflage	Clearing in excess of 100 acres requires joint task force (JTF) approval	Clearing requires environmental assessment
Air	Unit TSOP	Dust suppression nonhazardous only	Control open fires, fugitive dust	Controls on incineration and traffic
Wildlife	Unit TSOP	Unit TSOP	Note and avoid specific habitats	Taking species prohibited
4. Cultural and Historical Resources				
	Unit TSOP	Minimize damage if possible	Division level approval required for operations in area	JTF approval required for operations in area

Figure 1-2. Notional environmental protection matrix.

All leaders, trainers, and soldiers must comply with the environmental laws and regulations. The leader must identify the environmental risks associated with training individual and collective tasks. Trainers must work to reduce and avoid damage to training areas and environment caused by realistic training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. *Identify Hazards.* Identify the potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of the factors of METT-TC. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and or destroying cultural and or historical artifacts.

   b.   *Assess Hazards*. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation by using the environmental risk assessment matrixes in TC 5-400. The severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation may have on the environment. The risk effect value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low using the environmental assessment matrixes.

   c.   *Make Environmental Risk Decisions*. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high-environmental risks.

   d.   *Brief Chain of Command*. Brief the chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable) about proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

   e.   *Implement Controls*. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, TSOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

   f.   *Supervise*. Supervise and or enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. **Evaluation.** Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are formal and are usually conducted by the headquarters two levels above the unit. Chapter 6 describes how to set up an external evaluation.

   a.   *Use of T&EOs*. In addition to their role as a training guide, the T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the criteria for evaluating the unit. The task standard statement in each task outline describes how well the unit must perform the task steps and performance measures to receive a GO rating for the task.

   b.   *Simultaneous Training and Evaluation*. The heart of the MTP concept is simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides evaluation feedback; at the same time, every evaluation is a training session. For the program to work effectively, trainers must always evaluate training as it is being executed. A common deficiency is the failure to evaluate each task each time it is performed. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy. Outside evaluators usually make this unfeasible for higher level exercises. Leaders should plan AARs at frequent and logical intervals during exercises. This technique allows the battalion commander to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind.

   c.   *Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Evaluations*. Training plans should include evaluations of each task and exercise under NBC conditions. Consider conducting at least one iteration of each training event in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear.

1-11. **Feedback**. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Send DA Form 2028 comments to the address reflected in the third paragraph of the Preface.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

Note: Given both the size and infantry task/equipment orientation of the individual task database that would be produced by the MTP database report generator, this matrix will not be generated for battalion and brigade MTPs. Battalion and brigade commanders and leaders are encouraged to review the appropriate MOS STPs that support individual training in the various staff sections.

2-1. <u>General</u>. The training Matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel.

2-2. <u>Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix</u>. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate   BOS which are indicated by an **X** in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table
Mission Title
• Defense
(**DEFENSE**)
• Offense
(**OFFENSE**)
• Reconnaissance and Security
(**RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY**)
• Retrograde
(**RETROGRADE**)
• Stability
(**STABILITY**)
• Support
(**SUPPORT**)

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table.

Collective Tasks		DEFENSE	OFFENSE	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	RETROGRADE
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X

Collective Tasks		DEFENSE	OFFENSE	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	RETROGRADE
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		

Collective Tasks		DEFENSE	OFFENSE	RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY	RETROGRADE
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

Collective Tasks		STABILITY	SUPPORT
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver			
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		

Collective Tasks		STABILITY	SUPPORT
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	
Protect the Force			
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		
Exercise Command and Control			
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions.

2-3. <u>Supporting References to Collective Tasks Matrix</u>. This matrix (Figure 2-3), identifies references that provide additional information on each of the Collective Tasks.

Collective Tasks		AR 220-10	AR 380-19	AR 380-19-1	AR 380-5
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		AR 220-10	AR 380-19	AR 380-19-1	AR 380-5
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		AR 220-10	AR 380-19	AR 380-19-1	AR 380-5
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		AR 220-10	AR 380-19	AR 380-19-1	AR 380-5
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		AR 220-10	AR 380-19	AR 380-19-1	AR 380-5
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**	**X**	**X**
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		AR 220-10	AR 380-19	AR 380-19-1	AR 380-5
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		AR 220-10	AR 380-19	AR 380-19-1	AR 380-5
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R	DA FORM 5032-R
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R	DA FORM 5032-R
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R	DA FORM 5032-R
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R	DA FORM 5032-R
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R	DA FORM 5032-R
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R	DA FORM 5032-R
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 1155	DA FORM 1156	DA FORM 1355-1-R	DA FORM 5032-R
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5976	DD FORM 1380	FM 100-10	FM 100-103
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5976	DD FORM 1380	FM 100-10	FM 100-103
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5976	DD FORM 1380	FM 100-10	FM 100-103
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5976	DD FORM 1380	FM 100-10	FM 100-103
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5976	DD FORM 1380	FM 100-10	FM 100-103
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5976	DD FORM 1380	FM 100-10	FM 100-103
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		DA FORM 5976	DD FORM 1380	FM 100-10	FM 100-103
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-20	FM 100-23
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-20	FM 100-23
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-20	FM 100-23
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-20	FM 100-23
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-20	FM 100-23
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-20	FM 100-23
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**		
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-14	FM 100-17	FM 100-20	FM 100-23
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-34	FM 100-34-1	FM 100-40	FM 100-5
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	

Collective Tasks		FM 100-34	FM 100-34-1	FM 100-40	FM 100-5
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-34	FM 100-34-1	FM 100-40	FM 100-5
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**		
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-34	FM 100-34-1	FM 100-40	FM 100-5
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 100-34	FM 100-34-1	FM 100-40	FM 100-5
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-34	FM 100-34-1	FM 100-40	FM 100-5
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	X	X		
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-34	FM 100-34-1	FM 100-40	FM 100-5
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**		

Collective Tasks		FM 100-55	FM 100-6	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-1
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X

Collective Tasks		FM 100-55	FM 100-6	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-1
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X

Collective Tasks		FM 100-55	FM 100-6	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-1
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X

Collective Tasks		FM 100-55	FM 100-6	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-1
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		X
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 100-55	FM 100-6	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-1
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	**X**
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	**X**
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	**X**
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-55	FM 100-6	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-1
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		X
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				X
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)			X	X
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 100-55	FM 100-6	FM 101-5	FM 101-5-1
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X

Collective Tasks		FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4	FM 10-500-2	FM 1-100
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4	FM 10-500-2	FM 1-100
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4	FM 10-500-2	FM 1-100
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4	FM 10-500-2	FM 1-100
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4	FM 10-500-2	FM 1-100
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**	**X**	
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4	FM 10-500-2	FM 1-100
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	X			
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	X			
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

ARTEP 7-22-MTP

Collective Tasks		FM 101-5-2	FM 10-27-4	FM 10-500-2	FM 1-100
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			

2 - 53

Collective Tasks		FM 1-111	FM 11-41	FM 11-43	FM 11-50
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-111	FM 11-41	FM 11-43	FM 11-50
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-111	FM 11-41	FM 11-43	FM 11-50
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-111	FM 11-41	FM 11-43	FM 11-50
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 1-111	FM 11-41	FM 11-43	FM 11-50
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-111	FM 11-41	FM 11-43	FM 11-50
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 1-111	FM 11-41	FM 11-43	FM 11-50
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 12-6	FM 19-15	FM 19-30	FM 19-40
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		X
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 12-6	FM 19-15	FM 19-30	FM 19-40
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 12-6	FM 19-15	FM 19-30	FM 19-40
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 12-6	FM 19-15	FM 19-30	FM 19-40
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		X
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 12-6	FM 19-15	FM 19-30	FM 19-40
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		X
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 12-6	FM 19-15	FM 19-30	FM 19-40
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 12-6	FM 19-15	FM 19-30	FM 19-40
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 20-3	FM 20-32	FM 21-60	FM 24-33
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	

Collective Tasks		FM 20-3	FM 20-32	FM 21-60	FM 24-33
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	

Collective Tasks		FM 20-3	FM 20-32	FM 21-60	FM 24-33
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 20-3	FM 20-32	FM 21-60	FM 24-33
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 20-3	FM 20-32	FM 21-60	FM 24-33
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 20-3	FM 20-32	FM 21-60	FM 24-33
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 20-3	FM 20-32	FM 21-60	FM 24-33
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 3-100	FM 3-19
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		

Collective Tasks		FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 3-100	FM 3-19
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		

	Collective Tasks	FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 3-100	FM 3-19
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		

Collective Tasks		FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 3-100	FM 3-19
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**		
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**		
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 3-100	FM 3-19
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**		
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 3-100	FM 3-19
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	X	X		
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	X	X		
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 24-35	FM 24-35-1	FM 3-100	FM 3-19
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		

Collective Tasks		FM 3-3	FM 33-1	FM 3-3-1	FM 3-34.2
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-3	FM 33-1	FM 3-3-1	FM 3-34.2
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-3	FM 33-1	FM 3-3-1	FM 3-34.2
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-3	FM 33-1	FM 3-3-1	FM 3-34.2
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 3-3	FM 33-1	FM 3-3-1	FM 3-34.2
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-3	FM 33-1	FM 3-3-1	FM 3-34.2
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	X
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-3	FM 33-1	FM 3-3-1	FM 3-34.2
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-4	FM 34-1	FM 34-130	FM 34-2
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	**X**
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-4	FM 34-1	FM 34-130	FM 34-2
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-4	FM 34-1	FM 34-130	FM 34-2
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X		X	
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

	Collective Tasks	FM 3-4	FM 34-1	FM 34-130	FM 34-2
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**		
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 3-4	FM 34-1	FM 34-130	FM 34-2
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-4	FM 34-1	FM 34-130	FM 34-2
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-4	FM 34-1	FM 34-130	FM 34-2
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-2-1	FM 34-3	FM 34-40-7	FM 34-5
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-2-1	FM 34-3	FM 34-40-7	FM 34-5
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-2-1	FM 34-3	FM 34-40-7	FM 34-5
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-2-1	FM 34-3	FM 34-40-7	FM 34-5
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 34-2-1	FM 34-3	FM 34-40-7	FM 34-5
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-2-1	FM 34-3	FM 34-40-7	FM 34-5
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-2-1	FM 34-3	FM 34-40-7	FM 34-5
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-52	FM 34-54	FM 34-60	FM 34-8-2
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**	**X**	**X**
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-52	FM 34-54	FM 34-60	FM 34-8-2
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-52	FM 34-54	FM 34-60	FM 34-8-2
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-52	FM 34-54	FM 34-60	FM 34-8-2
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 34-52	FM 34-54	FM 34-60	FM 34-8-2
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-52	FM 34-54	FM 34-60	FM 34-8-2
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 34-52	FM 34-54	FM 34-60	FM 34-8-2
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-5	FM 3-50-1	FM 3-6	FM 3-7
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-5	FM 3-50-1	FM 3-6	FM 3-7
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-5	FM 3-50-1	FM 3-6	FM 3-7
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-5	FM 3-50-1	FM 3-6	FM 3-7
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			**X**
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**		**X**	
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 3-5	FM 3-50-1	FM 3-6	FM 3-7
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-5	FM 3-50-1	FM 3-6	FM 3-7
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**		
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 3-5	FM 3-50-1	FM 3-6	FM 3-7
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 41-10	FM 44-1	FM 44-8	FM 44-80
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 41-10	FM 44-1	FM 44-8	FM 44-80
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 41-10	FM 44-1	FM 44-8	FM 44-80
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		

Collective Tasks		FM 41-10	FM 44-1	FM 44-8	FM 44-80
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	**X**
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 41-10	FM 44-1	FM 44-8	FM 44-80
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 41-10	FM 44-1	FM 44-8	FM 44-80
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 41-10	FM 44-1	FM 44-8	FM 44-80
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-100	FM 5-101	FM 5-102	FM 5-103
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	**X**
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-100	FM 5-101	FM 5-102	FM 5-103
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-100	FM 5-101	FM 5-102	FM 5-103
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-100	FM 5-101	FM 5-102	FM 5-103
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 5-100	FM 5-101	FM 5-102	FM 5-103
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-100	FM 5-101	FM 5-102	FM 5-103
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-100	FM 5-101	FM 5-102	FM 5-103
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-170	FM 5-20	FM 5-33	FM 5-34
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-170	FM 5-20	FM 5-33	FM 5-34
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-170	FM 5-20	FM 5-33	FM 5-34
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-170	FM 5-20	FM 5-33	FM 5-34
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 5-170	FM 5-20	FM 5-33	FM 5-34
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-170	FM 5-20	FM 5-33	FM 5-34
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**		**X**	
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-170	FM 5-20	FM 5-33	FM 5-34
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-35	FM 55-10	FM 55-12	FM 55-15
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-35	FM 55-10	FM 55-12	FM 55-15
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

	Collective Tasks	FM 5-35	FM 55-10	FM 55-12	FM 55-15
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

	Collective Tasks	FM 5-35	FM 55-10	FM 55-12	FM 55-15
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 5-35	FM 55-10	FM 55-12	FM 55-15
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-35	FM 55-10	FM 55-12	FM 55-15
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 5-35	FM 55-10	FM 55-12	FM 55-15
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 55-65	FM 5-71-2	FM 5-71-3	FM 6-20-10
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		

Collective Tasks		FM 55-65	FM 5-71-2	FM 5-71-3	FM 6-20-10
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		

Collective Tasks		FM 55-65	FM 5-71-2	FM 5-71-3	FM 6-20-10
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X

Collective Tasks		FM 55-65	FM 5-71-2	FM 5-71-3	FM 6-20-10
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**		
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 55-65	FM 5-71-2	FM 5-71-3	FM 6-20-10
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**		
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 55-65	FM 5-71-2	FM 5-71-3	FM 6-20-10
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 55-65	FM 5-71-2	FM 5-71-3	FM 6-20-10
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 6-20-20	FM 6-20-40	FM 6-30	FM 701-58
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 6-20-20	FM 6-20-40	FM 6-30	FM 701-58
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	

Collective Tasks		FM 6-20-20	FM 6-20-40	FM 6-30	FM 701-58
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**		**X**	

Collective Tasks		FM 6-20-20	FM 6-20-40	FM 6-30	FM 701-58
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 6-20-20	FM 6-20-40	FM 6-30	FM 701-58
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				**X**
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 6-20-20	FM 6-20-40	FM 6-30	FM 701-58
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 6-20-20	FM 6-20-40	FM 6-30	FM 701-58
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 71-123	FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-22 (3-21.21)
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X

Collective Tasks		FM 71-123	FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-22 (3-21.21)
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		X
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X

Collective Tasks		FM 71-123	FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-22 (3-21.21)
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		X
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X

Collective Tasks		FM 71-123	FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-22 (3-21.21)
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 71-123	FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-22 (3-21.21)
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**	**X**	
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**	**X**	**X**
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**	**X**	**X**
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**	**X**	
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 71-123	FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-22 (3-21.21)
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)		X		X
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)		X		
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		

Collective Tasks		FM 71-123	FM 71-2	FM 7-20	FM 7-22 (3-21.21)
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**	**X**	**X**	

Collective Tasks		FM 7-85	FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-98
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			X
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 7-85	FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-98
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			

Collective Tasks		FM 7-85	FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-98
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	

Collective Tasks		FM 7-85	FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-98
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 7-85	FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-98
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X

Collective Tasks		FM 7-85	FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-98
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	**X**			
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 7-85	FM 7-90	FM 7-91	FM 7-98
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10	FM 8-10-1	FM 8-10-25	FM 8-10-6
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10	FM 8-10-1	FM 8-10-25	FM 8-10-6
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10	FM 8-10-1	FM 8-10-25	FM 8-10-6
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10	FM 8-10-1	FM 8-10-25	FM 8-10-6
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10	FM 8-10-1	FM 8-10-25	FM 8-10-6
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X	X	X
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10	FM 8-10-1	FM 8-10-25	FM 8-10-6
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10	FM 8-10-1	FM 8-10-25	FM 8-10-6
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10-7	FM 8-10-9	FM 8-230	FM 8-51
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10-7	FM 8-10-9	FM 8-230	FM 8-51
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10-7	FM 8-10-9	FM 8-230	FM 8-51
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10-7	FM 8-10-9	FM 8-230	FM 8-51
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10-7	FM 8-10-9	FM 8-230	FM 8-51
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10-7	FM 8-10-9	FM 8-230	FM 8-51
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-10-7	FM 8-10-9	FM 8-230	FM 8-51
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-55	FM 8-9	FM 90-10(HTF)	FM 90-10-1
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			**X**	**X**
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-55	FM 8-9	FM 90-10(HTF)	FM 90-10-1
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-55	FM 8-9	FM 90-10(HTF)	FM 90-10-1
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-55	FM 8-9	FM 90-10(HTF)	FM 90-10-1
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 8-55	FM 8-9	FM 90-10(HTF)	FM 90-10-1
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-55	FM 8-9	FM 90-10(HTF)	FM 90-10-1
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 8-55	FM 8-9	FM 90-10(HTF)	FM 90-10-1
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 90-13	FM 90-2	FM 90-4	FM 90-7
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X		X
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X		X
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X		

Collective Tasks		FM 90-13	FM 90-2	FM 90-4	FM 90-7
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X			
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 90-13	FM 90-2	FM 90-4	FM 90-7
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		X		
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)			X	
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 90-13	FM 90-2	FM 90-4	FM 90-7
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)		**X**		
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 90-13	FM 90-2	FM 90-4	FM 90-7
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 90-13	FM 90-2	FM 90-4	FM 90-7
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X	X	X
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 90-13	FM 90-2	FM 90-4	FM 90-7
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 9-43-1	FM 9-43-2	TB 55-46-1	TC 7-98-1
Develop Intelligence					
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 9-43-1	FM 9-43-2	TB 55-46-1	TC 7-98-1
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	X	X		
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 9-43-1	FM 9-43-2	TB 55-46-1	TC 7-98-1
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Employ Firepower					
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 9-43-1	FM 9-43-2	TB 55-46-1	TC 7-98-1
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Protect the Force					
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					

Collective Tasks		FM 9-43-1	FM 9-43-2	TB 55-46-1	TC 7-98-1
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
Exercise Command and Control					
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				X	
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)					X

Collective Tasks		FM 9-43-1	FM 9-43-2	TB 55-46-1	TC 7-98-1
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)				
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Collective Tasks		FM 9-43-1	FM 9-43-2	TB 55-46-1	TC 7-98-1
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)				

Figure 2-3. Collective Task to Supporting References.

2-4. Individual Task to Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-4), identifies the relationship that exists between the Collective Tasks in this publication and the Individual Tasks that support them.

CHAPTER 3

Training Plans

3-1. **General**. This chapter describes the use of the Mission Training Plan (MTP) for development of battalion training plans and provides a mission outline. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for critical wartime missions. Field manuals (FM) 7-0 (25-100) and FM 7-1 (25-101) provide detailed information on training management and should be used with the MTP for developing battalion training plans.

3-2. **Long-Range Planning**. Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to the Army's various training resource systems and to provide a general direction for the training programs. The long-range plan consists of a calendar covering the planning period and the commander's formal guidance. To develop a long-range plan, the commander must first develop the unit's mission essential task list (METL) and conduct a training assessment. These two actions are the two principal inputs at the beginning of the planning process. FM 7-0 (25-100) and other FM 7-series manuals provide guidance on developing a unit's METL.

    a. *Develop Unit METL*. The first step in developing a METL is analyzing all specified and implied missions and other guidance. Next, the unit's wartime mission is restated. After analyzing the unit's missions and external directives, a list of tasks is identified which must be accomplished if the unit is to successfully accomplish its wartime mission. Subordinate commanders and key NCOs participate in selecting the tasks. The task list is developed using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of the MTP, missions assigned to the battalion by contingency plans, and missions directed by higher headquarters' guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit's wartime mission. The selected tasks are forwarded to the next higher headquarters for approval. The tasks selected are the unit's METL, Figure 3-1.

INTELLIGENCE.
  1. Conduct S2 Operations.
  2. Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB.
  3. Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB.
  4. Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB.
  5. Evaluate the Enemy during IPB.

MANEUVER.
  1. Conduct Deployment Activities.
  2. Conduct a Movement to Contact.
  3. Conduct an Attack.
  4. Conduct a Defense.
  5. Conduct a Covering Force Operation.

FIRE SUPPORT.
  1. Conduct Lethal Effects Planning.
  2. Execute the Targeting Process.
  3. Manage Counterfire.

MOBILITY, COUNTERMOBILITY, AND SURVIVABILITY
  1. Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations.
  2. Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination.

AIR DEFENSE.
  1. Conduct Air Defense Artillery Planning and Coordination.

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT.
  1. Conduct S1 Operations.
  2. Conduct S4 Operations.
  3. Plan Health Service Support.
  4. Sustain the Force.

COMMAND AND CONTROL.
  1. Conduct Command and Control of Operations.
  2. Conduct S3 Operations.
  3. Execute Battle Staff Activities.
  4. Plan Operations Using the MDMP.

This example is not intended to be a fully developed METL. It was developed for instructional purposes only.

Figure 3-1. Example battalion METL.

b. *Establish Training Objectives.* After the METL is identified, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards which describe the situation or environment and ultimate outcome criteria the unit must meet to successfully perform the tasks. Training objectives and standards for METL can be obtained from the MTP, Soldier Training Publication (STP), higher headquarters command guidance, and local tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

c. *Conduct Training Assessment.* The training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (Trained), "P" (Needs Practice), "U" (Untrained), or "?" (Unknown). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit's training requirements, Figure 3-2.

Mission Essential Tasks	CURRENT TRAINING STATUS BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS							TRAINING STRATEGY
	Intel	Maneuver	Fire Spt	M/CM/S	Air Defense	CSS	C2	Overall
Conduct Battle Tracking	P	T	P	P	T	U	U	P
Conduct S4 Operations	P	T	T	P	U	T	T	T
Plan Operations using the MDMP	U	P	T	T	T	T	T	T
Define the Battlefield Environment	?	U	?	?	?	?	?	?
Legend: T - Trained U - Untrained P - Needs Practice ? - Status Unknown								

Figure 3-2. Example commander's training assessment.

   d.   *Develop Training Strategy and Commander's Guidance.* The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency each mission essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance, which includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must:
   (1) Review higher commander's goals.
   (2) Spell out in real-world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of higher commanders.
   (3) List in broad terms his goals for the unit. Figure 3-3 provides a sample of battalion goals.

- Attain and sustain proficiency in all MTP tasks.

- Maintain a 90 percent operational ready (OR) rate.

- Attain and sustain a 100 percent crew gunnery qualification.

Figure 3-3. Example battalion goals.

   e.   *Establish Training Priorities.* Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on training status, the criticality of the task, and the relative training emphasis the task should receive. Figure 3-4 provides a sample training priority list.

TASK	SOURCE	TRAINING PRIORITY
Define the Battlefield Environment	MTP	4
Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force	MTP	1
Fight a Meeting Engagement	MTP	2
Conduct a Defense	MTP	3
Occupy an Assembly Area	MTP	5

Figure 3-4. Example battalion training priority list.

f.   *Prepare Long-Range Planning Calendar*. The long-range planning calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range training events to identify time periods available for training mission essential tasks. The long-range planning calendar projects training events and activities of the unit for the next 12 to 18 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below.

(1) Select training events and activities to train the missions. At battalion level, the commander must project events that will enable him to achieve his goals.

(2) Assign time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the battalion training program.

(3) Examine various training alternatives to make optimum use of the training support available to the unit. Available training resources must be compared against higher headquarters-directed training, battalion-directed training events, and subordinate level projected training events. Examples of resourcing tools available to the battalion commander are the Battalion Level Training Model (BLTM), operating tempo (OPTEMPO), and Standards in Training Commission (STRAC).

(4) Obtain approval of long-range plans from higher headquarters.

(5) Issue guidance. Training guidance is issued to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range training calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range training calendar and generally includes:

(a) Training policies.

(b) Types of mandatory training.

(c) Training resource guidance.

(d) Quotas for centralized training (schools).

(e) Training goals.

3-3. **Short-Range Planning**. A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (3 months for Army component units; 1 year for reserve component units). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on the goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below.

a. Review the training program, current unit proficiency, resources, and training environment.

(1) Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.

(2) Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

(3) Review current unit proficiency to update priorities.

(4) Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

(5) Review the training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively impact on the training program are:

(a) Personnel assigned.
(b) Personnel turbulence.
(c) Morale.
(d) Education programs.
(e) Mandatory training.
(f) Visits, inspections, and tests.
(g) Supplies and equipment.
(h) Nonmission-related activities.
(i) Other programs.

b. Develop a detailed plan of action for short-range training plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below.
(1) Examine events scheduled on the long-range training plan to determine if they are still valid.
(2) Transfer valid events to a short-range training plan calendar.
(3) Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events.
(4) Analyze missions to determine related individual, leader, and collective tasks.
(5) Determine if there are any weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these identified weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader, and unit strengths, as necessary.
(6) Select the specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the commander with the training objectives.
(7) Prepare a short-range training plan calendar or 3 monthly schedules. The short-range training plan calendar provides a detailed plan of action for the specified period.
(8) Review short-range plans with Class III requirements.
(9) Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.

3-4. **Near-Term Planning**. The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Using the short-range plan, prepare weekly training schedules.

a. Review the training program, unit proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long-range and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are still valid.

b. Finalize plans based upon the review of the training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.

c. Brief trainers, observers and or controllers (O/Cs), opposing force (OPFOR), and support personnel on what is being trained, why it is being trained, and what their role in the training will be.

3-5. **Training the Headquarters and Headquarters Company (HHC)**. Planning training for the HHC provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that have to do with time and availability of personnel. The staff and headquarters detachment are involved in day-to-day operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to adequately address the training needs of these elements. These elements must be capable of fulfilling their roles in order for the battalion to perform its wartime missions. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include an effective method of training individuals, staffs, leaders, and units.

a. *Training the Battalion (Staff Training)*. Training of the staff presents the greatest challenge within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the training objectives for the staff.
(1) The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. The following are examples of tasks that any staff must be able to perform.
(a) Analyze terrain.
(b) Function as an effective team.
(c) Exchange information.
(d) Prepare estimates.
(e) Give appraisals.
(f) Make recommendations and decisions.
(g) Prepare plans.

          (h) Issue orders.
          (i)   Coordinate and control unit operations.
          (j)   Supervise subordinate units within their area of responsibility.
      (2) The strategy used to train the staff will vary based on the considerations used in planning training (such as level of proficiency and training support available). FM 7-1 (25-101) contains detailed information on the conduct of exercises. Some methods of staff training include the following exercises.
          (a) Tactical Exercise without Troops (TEWT). TEWTs are low-cost, low-overhead exercises conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. TEWTs are used by commanders to train subordinate leaders and staffs to analyze terrain and plan for the conduct of unit missions.
          (b) Map Exercise (MAPEX). MAPEXs are low-cost, low-overhead training exercises that allow commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and control functions to support their decisions under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may be used to train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.
          (c) Command Post Exercise (CPX). CPXs are medium-cost, medium-overhead training exercises that may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use a battle simulation to drive the staff actions.
          (d) Field Training Exercise (FTX). FTXs are high-cost, high-overhead exercises conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. Unit-conducted FTXs exercise the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of unit operations. They normally require the staff planning tasks to be completed before the exercise begins. Brigade FTXs provide the best opportunity for the battalion staff to combine all of its skills and perform as it would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.
      (3) At battalion level, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, CPXs, combined field exercises (CFXs), and combined arms live fire exercises (CALFEXs) to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This effectively exercises the entire spectrum of the staff and also makes optimum use of unit field training time. Each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

    b. *Training the Battalion.* Training the battalion is a complex task requiring both unit and staff training programs. Normal day-to-day operations place a unique burden on the battalion commander to accomplish training. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The battalion executive officer (XO) coordinates with the battalion commander to ensure individual soldiering tasks are being mastered.

3-6. **Developing Training Exercises**. Chapter 4 provides sample exercises for the battalion to use as examples on how to prepare training exercises to meet specific training needs. Since only an example FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the battalion to develop exercises for its own use. This section provides general procedures for the battalion staff to use for both the FTX and situation training exercise (STX) preparation. Exercise plans are normally prepared during preparation of the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below.

    a. *Selection of Missions and Tasks for Training.* This is accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

    b. *Site Selection.* Confirm selection of a training area.

    c. *Scenario Development.* After missions and tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise.
      (1) List the missions, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.
      (2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercise. These events would normally include issuance of orders, after-action reviews (AARs), and any other administrative or logistics action necessary to conduct the exercise.
      (3) Prepare the exercise overlays which show the sequence of actions and terrain to be used for each event.
      (4) Determine the estimated time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d. *Selection of O/Cs and OPFOR.* O/Cs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and STX when MILES is used. It is difficult for a battalion to provide these from its own resources. When O/Cs and OPFOR must be provided from within the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the O/Cs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attainment of the exercise objectives. Ideally, the higher headquarters should provide O/Cs and OPFOR.

e. *Preparation of the Control Plan.* Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and O/Cs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan consist of:
  (1) Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
  (2) Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.
  (3) Detailed schedule of activities for units.
  (4) Operation orders (OPORDs) and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) for friendly units. Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.

f. *Preparation of the Evaluation Plan.* All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, by whom, and at what time. The evaluation will consist of:
  (1) Specific instructions for the O/Cs.
  (2) A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each O/C.
  (3) Detailed time schedules for evaluation and AARs.

3-7. **Mission Outline**. The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime mission to FTXs and STXs at company level and below. However, a mission outline can be used by the battalion to assist the commander and staff in the preparation of training plans. Figure 3-5 and 3-5a is a sample mission outline for the battalion.

INFANTRY BATTALION TRAINING PLAN OFFENSE		
FTX <u>Conduct Offensive Operations</u> 07-1-E0001		
STX <u>Conduct an Attack</u> 07-1-E0001	STX <u>Conduct a Movement to Contact</u> 07-1-E0007	STX <u>Conduct a Raid</u> 07-1-E0011
Plan Operations using the MDMP 07-1-5189	Plan Operations using the MDMP 07-1-5189	Plan Operations using the MDMP 07-1-5189
Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB 07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB 07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB 07-1-2009
Evaluate the Enemy during IPB 07-1-2027	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB 07-1-2027	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB 07-1-2027
Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB 07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB 07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB 07-1-2027
Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations 07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations 07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations 07-1-2036
Execute the Targeting Process 07-1-3009	Execute the Targeting Process 07-1-3009	Execute the Targeting Process 07-1-3009
Prepare for Operations 07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations 07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations 07-1-5198
Conduct a Rehearsal 07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal 07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal 07-1-5000
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207	Conduct a Movement to Contact 07-1-1072	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207
Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit 07-1-1081	Fight a Meeting Engagement 07-1-1243	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit 07-1-1081

Figure 3-5. Sample mission outline.

INFANTRY BATTALION TRAINING PLAN OFFENSE		
FTX Conduct Offensive Operations 07-1-E0001 Continued		
Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) 07-1-1198	Conduct Consolidation 07-1-5036	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) 07-1-1198
Occupy an Assembly Area 07-1-5180	Conduct Reorganization 07-1-5081	Occupy an Assembly Area 07-1-5180
Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) 07-1-1198		Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) 07-1-1198
Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force 07-1-1171		Conduct a Raid 07-1-1099
Conduct Consolidation 07-1-5036		Conduct Consolidation 07-1-5036
Conduct Reorganization 07-1-5081		Conduct Reorganization 07-1-5081

Figure 3-5a. Sample mission outline (continued).

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. **General**. This chapter provides guidance to commanders and staff on planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training exercises. The training exercises and graphics presented in this chapter are for **instructional purposes only**. Each commander should develop training exercises to train his unit.

Note: The Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS) for your unit should be reviewed along with this chapter when developing training events. CATS provides more detailed information on time requirements, audience, and support requirements.

The information in this chapter supplements field manual (FM) 25-4, FM 7-1 (25-101), and training circular (TC) 25 series.

NOTE: Safety is a major factor and or issue when it comes to training. Soldiers must be constantly alert for and avoid situations that may result in injury or death (for example, lock cargo hatches; do not grab the hot barrel of a machine gun; always be aware of your location and your buddies' locations during live-fire exercises; confirm, double-check and reconfirm all mortar firing data).

    a.   Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This Mission Training Plan (MTP) has two types of exercises: field training exercise (FTX) and command post training exercise (CPX). These exercises are designed to assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating this unit's mission proficiency. Table 4-1 is an example of how to number training exercises.

Exercise Number	Title
FTX 07-1-E0001	Conduct Combat Operations
CPX 07-1-E0007	Conduct a Movement to Contact
CPX 07-1-E0001	Conduct an Attack
CPX 07-1-E0002	Conduct a Defense
CPX 07-1-E0008	Conduct Area Security Operations

Table 4-1. Exercises.

4-2. **Field Training Exercise**. An FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. The FTX supports training at battalion, company, and platoon levels. FTXs fully integrate the total force in a realistic combat environment. An FTX involves combat arms, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units and encompasses such training as battle drills, crew drills, and CPXs to reinforce soldier and collective training integration. They are used to train the leaders, subordinate elements, and slice elements--

- To move and maneuver units realistically.
- To employ organic weapons systems effectively.
- To build teamwork and cohesion.
- To plan and coordinate supporting fires.
- To plan and coordinate logistical activities to support tactical operations.

4-3. **Command Post Exercise (CPX)**. CPXs are medium-cost, medium-overhead training exercises that may be conducted at garrison locations or in the field. In garrison, CPXs are expanded MAPEXs using tactical communications systems and personnel in a command post environment. Normal battlefield distances between the CPs are usually reduced, and CPs do not need to exercise all tactical communications. The most effective CPXs are conducted in the field. In field operations, time and distance should realistically reflect air-land battle doctrine. Operations should be continuous and use all organic and supporting communications equipment. Commanders practice combined arms integration

and tactical emplacement and displacement of CPs. Each headquarters should practice survivability operations such as dispersion, camouflage, and security.

4-4. **Planning Exercises**. (See FM 25-4, How to Conduct Training Exercises.)

    a. *Conduct Analysis.*
      (1) Determine the need for training exercises and identify the types to be used. The need for an exercise is based upon the following:
        (a) Higher headquarters' analysis of subordinate unit proficiency.
        (b) Higher headquarters' issuance of the missions, goals, objectives, and guidance.
        (c) Commanders' evaluations of unit and soldier proficiency.
        (d) METL. (Company is the lowest level to prepare a METL.)
      (2) Consider the principles of training established in FM 7-1 (25-101).
      (3) Establish the training requirements and the priorities for unit training programs.
      (4) Determine the training objectives, which are based on the leader, individual, and collective (unit) skills/tasks that need initial or sustainment training.
        (a) Exercise objectives should be specific, relevant, realistically obtainable, measurable, and supportive of exercise goals.
        (b) Exercise objectives should be organized into functional areas to highlight activities that need improvement.
        (c) Properly stated objectives provide evaluators with a solid basis for conducting their evaluation and after-action reviews (AARs).

Note: When the exercise objectives are established, the type of exercise to be conducted can be selected.

    b. *Select the Type of Exercise.*
      (1) Determine the type of exercises to be conducted by comparing the objectives with the kind of training that each exercise provides.
      (2) Identify the proper exercise, within resource constraints, that can best meet the objectives.

    c. *Considerations.*
      (1) **Flexibility**.
        (a) Plan for alternate types of exercises in case weather or other constraints prohibit the originally scheduled exercise.
        (b) Exercises should allow subordinate commanders the freedom to innovate within the framework of doctrine, tactics, techniques, and operating procedures.
        (c) Exercises should not follow rigid timetables that inhibit training and learning. Instead, they should establish schedules that provide sufficient time to correct mistakes and ensure learning and AARs at all levels.
      (2) **Resources**.
        (a) Facilities and land. Planners must consider the environment for the exercise and the impact of weather. If inadequate land or facilities will seriously degrade training, planners may have to alter the exercises.
        (b) Support. Planners must ensure that the exercises can be conducted within the resource levels and that the training received justifies the resources expended. Communications and transportation for participants and evaluators must be adequate. Units should use only the transportation, communications, and equipment authorized by their table of organization and equipment (TOE) or modified table of organization and equipment (MTOE).
        (c) Time. For each exercise, subordinate elements must be allocated time to conduct troop-leading procedures as well as develop tactical situations that lead to logical and sound tactical employment of player units. Time must be allocated for conducting complete logistical support of tactical operations. Time must be allocated so that a thorough AAR can be conducted.
        (d) Participants. Planners must consider whether or not units or groups of individuals to be trained are of the proper size or strength to benefit from the type of exercise selected.

(e) Pre-exercise Plans. Planning begins immediately after the decision has been made to conduct an exercise. The planning steps listed below are used to prepare for an exercise. Specific exercises may omit some steps. These steps are generally sequential; however, some may be performed at the same time.

    (1) Prepare an exercise directive that--

- Specifies what type of exercise is to be conducted and states its specific training objectives.
- Indicates the time frame for the exercise, its physical location, and the duration of its execution phase. (The location, time, and duration must be consistent with the type of exercise selected and the training objectives.)
- Identifies the type and quantity of special equipment required.
- Provides additional information such as environmental constraints.

    (2) Assign responsibilities for planning.
    (3) Conduct research.
    (4) Prepare a supporting plan schedule.
    (5) Prepare an outline plan.
    (6) Conduct a reconnaissance.
    (7) Complete the exercise support plans.
    (8) Prepare the scenario.
    (9) Prepare and issue the operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.
    (10) Publish the memorandum of instruction (MOI).
    (11) Prepare the terrain.
    (12) Conduct a rehearsal.

d. *Develop the Exercise.*

Note: Formats for the FTX and CPX are addressed in this chapter. **However, battalions normally conduct FTXs to prepare for brigade or higher FTXs**.

    (1) ***Exercise Format***. Formats for FTXs and CPXs are generally the same.

Note: The following table lists the components of the FTX format and their purposes in the order they would appear.

Heading	Identify the proponent, type, title of exercise, and number.
Objective	Describe "who" and "what" the exercise is designed to train.
Interface	Provide a list of the next higher echelon FTXs and the supporting element' or unit CPXs.
Training Enhancers	Provide specific information for using the FTX for training and provide a sample scenario for training.
General situation	Provide general information concerning the unit and its training environment.
Special Situation	Provide specific information from higher headquarters or the unit's commander.
Support Requirements	Provide a listing of those items required to conduct the exercise. If it is a battalion or higher echelon MTP, the support requirements would be a statement that says the support requirements are the consolidated requirements of the battalion headquarters and all its subordinate units.
T&EO Sequence	Provide a listing of T&EO task titles in the chronological sequence in which they are executed in the course of the exercise.

Table 4-2. FTX Format.

Note: The following table lists the components of the CPX format and their purposes in the order they would appear.

Heading	Identify the proponent, type, title of exercise, and number.
Objective	Describe "who" and "what" the exercise is designed to train.
Interface	Provide a list of titles and identify the applicable supporting CPX (battalion or brigade). Include habitually attached, supported, and supporting unit's CPX, if available, which may be trained in conjunction with this CPX.
Training	Provide leader training information and training tips.
General Situation	Provide general information concerning the unit and its training environment.
Special Situation	Provide sample fragmentary order (FRAGO) from unit commander. Provide specific information required for the exercise from higher headquarters not given in the FRAGO.
Support Requirements	Provide a listing of those items required to conduct the exercise.
T&EO Sequence	Provide a listing of T&EO task titles in the chronological sequence in which they are executed in the course of the exercise.

Table 4-3. CPX format.

(2) Training exercise examples follow.

INFANTRY BATTALION FTX

7-1-E0001

Conduct Combat Operations

1. **Objective**. Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this FTX is to train and or evaluate the infantry battalion in the conduct of combat operations. This FTX trains and or evaluates the battalion commander, battalion staff, and subordinate leaders in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing combat operations. This FTX is designed as a free-play, force-on-force exercise that provides a flexible training vehicle for training critical METL tasks.

Note: The specific sequence of events will vary with the actions of the opposing force (OPFOR) and battalion commander's training objectives. The battalion commander will modify the sequence of events through his selection of primary and supporting events to meet his specific training objectives.

2. **Interface**.

    a. This FTX supports the higher headquarters FTX 07-6-E0001, Conduct Combat Operations.

    b. This FTX is supported by:
        (1) CPX 07-2-E0001, Conduct an Attack.
        (2) CPX 07-2-E0002, Conduct a Defense.
        (3) CPX 07-2-E0003, Conduct Reconnaissance and Security Operations.
        (4) CPX 07-2-E0004, Conduct Retrograde Operations.
        (5) CPX 07-2-E0005, Conduct Stability Operations.

3. **Training Enhancers**. In preparing the battalion to conduct an FTX, the battalion commander and his staff must first assess soldier, leader, and unit proficiency in accomplishing the METL. This will provide the basis to identify areas on which to concentrate future training. Since this is a high-cost exercise, extensive planning and preparation are required to ensure the exercise training objectives are met. OPFOR controllers and OPFOR should be the same in both the practice exercises and for the actual FTX. The battalion commander and staff can develop and conduct the initial or needed training to attain proficiency in designated areas before the FTX.

    a. *General Tips for Training.*
        (1) Conduct AARs throughout the exercise that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.
        (2) Include normal attachments and DS elements (field artillery, engineers).
        (3) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.
        (4) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.
        (5) Use trained personnel to act as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
        (6) Integrate nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and electronic warfare (EW).
        (7) Ensure that personnel are familiar with the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) that relate to the exercise.
        (8) Review soldier familiarity with the training environment.

    b. *Pre-Exercise Activities.*
        (1) MAPEX(s) combined with sand table exercise(s) that match the terrain to be used during the FTX.
        (2) TEWT and or terrain walk.
        (3) Communications exercise.
        (4) Applicable CPX.

    c. *Exercise Instructions.*

     (1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.

     (2) The tasks that support this FTX must be executed to standard.

     (3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.

     (4) MILES should be used when feasible.

     (5) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.

     (6) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.

     (7) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated.

     (8) This exercise begins with the receipt of a WARNO and it ends after consolidation and reorganization.

     (9) This exercise should be conducted under all environmental conditions and during periods of daylight and limited visibility. The battalion should operate under threat of NBC attacks, attacks by ground or air, indirect fire, and EW.

     d. *Scenario.* Your battalion (1-25 IN [M]) is conducting combat operations in the Beta Republic as part of the 1st Brigade. The Beta Republic has a well-trained combat force that consists of air, sea, and ground forces. The enemy possesses biological and chemical weapons and may have nuclear capability. Hostilities have been on-going for six months. For the most part, the civilian population is in favor of military actions by the US and its allies.

     e. Table 4-4 is an example of a listing of sequence, events, and associated time.

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
1	Administrative Preparations	Pre FTX
2	Receive Warning Order	1 hr.
3	Plan Operations Using the MDMP	4 hr.
4	Prepare OPLAN	1 hr.
5	Develop Road Movement Order	40 min.
6	Develop Occupation, Internal Support, and Defense Plans	1hr 15 min.
7	Intermediate AAR	1 hr.
8	Conduct Tactical Movement	2 hrs.
9	Conduct a Movement to Contact	6 hrs.
10	Intermediate AAR	1 hr.
11	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force	6 hrs.
12	Conduct Consolidation	30 min.
13	Conduct Reorganization	1 hr.
14	Intermediate AAR	1 hr.
15	Conduct a Defense	24 hrs.
16	Final AAR	3 hrs.

Total Time: 53 hr 25 min

NOTES:

Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.
Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the unit staff.

Table 4-4. Example of a listing of sequence, events, and associated time.

4. **General Situation**. 1st Brigade continues to conduct tactical operations against the Beta Republican forces. At D+17, 1st Brigade began its attack with two heavy task forces (TFs) abreast to destroy security zone forces and penetrate the enemy's first and second defensive belts in zone. TF 3-66 Armor has bypassed a reinforced company in the security zone. The friendly element that was left in contact was destroyed.

5. **Special Situation**. 1-25 IN (M) has received a brigade FRAGO that directs the battalion to conduct a movement to contact to find and on order destroy a bypassed enemy company and be prepared to defend.

     a.   The battalion commander issues planning guidance and the staff begins planning the operation. (See OPORD at Appendix B). (The OPORD may have been developed during a previous staff training exercise.)

6. **Support Requirements**. The support requirements for the FTX are the consolidated requirements for the battalion headquarters and all of its subordinate elements. Support requirements include the following:

a. 100% of TOE equipment readiness code (ERC) A items.

b. Minimum trainers or evaluators. When conducting a battalion-level internal training exercise, the battalion commander and executive officer (XO) are the trainers/evaluators, but they may need additional assets from the brigade to support the FTX. Evaluators at each echelon, down to and including squads and sections, should be allocated to assist the battalion commander in evaluating the FTX. Each evaluator should be supported by an evaluation plan to guide his actions during the exercise and support the battalion commander's overall evaluation plan. Evaluators must position themselves to monitor all company and platoon activities as well as the actions and communications of the battalion staff.

c. Vehicles and communications support for evaluators and OPFOR.

d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications and medical personnel support.

e. Classes of supply I through V, VIII, and IX in sufficient quantities to support the FTX (friendly, evaluator, and OPFOR).

f. *Opposing Force*. Company-size forces should oppose maneuver battalions. Platoon-sized forces should oppose maneuver companies. A reinforced squad can support special events such as ambushes. The OPFOR should be equipped with vehicles that realistically simulate enemy mobility capabilities. Ideally, the OPFOR will be equipped with modification kits that suggest the appearance and silhouette of enemy combat equipment.

g. *Maneuver Area*. A training area large enough to support battalion maneuver is required.

7. **T&EOs**. T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-5 is a sample list of T&EOs.

Task	Task Number
Plan Operations Using the MDMP	07-1-5189
Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB	07-1-2009
Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB	07-1-2018
Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB	07-1-2027
Evaluate the Enemy during IPB	07-1-2054
Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations	07-1-2036
Execute the Targeting Process	07-1-3009
Prepare for Operations	07-1-5198
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted)	07-1-1207
Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit	07-1-1081
Conduct a Movement to Contact	07-1-1072
Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force	07-1-1171
Conduct Consolidation	07-1-5036
Conduct Reorganization	07-1-5081
Conduct a Defense	07-1-1027

Table 4-5. T&EOs.

8. Evaluators. Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in the chapter 5 of this MTP.

INFANTRY BATTALION CPX

7-1-E0007

Conduct a Movement to Contact

1. **Objective**. Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this CPX is to train and or evaluate the infantry battalion in the conduct of a movement to contact. This CPX trains and or evaluates the commander, staff, and subordinate leaders in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing the movement to contact.

2. **Interface**.

    a. This CPX is supported by the following:
        (1) CPX 07-2-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.

3. **Training**. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the CPX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this CPX. The staff can develop the OPLAN or OPORD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.

    a. *General Tips for Training*.
        (1) Conduct AARs throughout the exercise that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.
        (2) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.
        (3) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.
        (4) Use trained personnel to act as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
        (5) Integrate nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and electronic warfare (EW).
        (6) Ensure that personnel are familiar with the platoon's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) that relate to the exercise.
        (7) Review soldier familiarity with the training environment.

    b. *Pre-Exercise Activities*. (Use one or more.)
        (1) MAPEX(s) combined with sand table exercise(s) that match the terrain to be used during the CPX.
        (2) CPX. (May develop OPORD during a separate CPX).

    c. *Exercise Instructions*.
        (1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.
        (2) The tasks that support this CPX must be executed to standard.
        (3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.
        (4) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.
        (5) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.
        (6) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated. (Train controllers and or evaluators as required.)
        (7) This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO and it ends after consolidation and reorganization.
        (8) This exercise should be conducted under all environmental conditions and during periods of daylight and limited visibility. The platoon should operate under threat of NBC attacks, attacks by ground or air, indirect fire, and EW.

        d. Scenario. The battalion (1-25 IN [M]) is conducting operations as part of the 1st Brigade in the Beta Republic. The Beta Republic has a well-trained combat force that consists of ground forces.

Enemy forces in 1-25 IN (M) area of interest consist of a bypassed reinforced recon company that is acting as the security force for the Beta Repulican forces. Its most probable course of action will be to attempt to establish a cohesive defense in our sector in order to block the brigade's lines of communication (LOC) in the northern part of the brigade zone. A squad-size security outpost will be established forward of the main defensive belt in order to provide the company with earlier warning and indirect fire against our battalion. The exact location of the enemy company and outpost are unknown at this time. The enemy possesses biological and chemical weapons and may have nuclear capability. Hostilities have been on-going for six months. The battalion is at or near 100% strength and has all authorized ERA equipment items. For the most part, the civilian population is in favor of military actions by the US and its allies.

4. General Situation. 1-25 IN (M) is conducting operations as part of the 1st Brigade and has received a FRAGO to conduct a movement to contact to locate a bypassed enemy reconnaissance company. On order, the battalion will attack and destroy the enemy company. Engineer and air defense support has been task-organized to the battalion by the brigade.

5. **Special Situation**. The battalion commander issues planning guidance and the staff begins the planning process. Figure 4-1 is a sample FRAGO.

Fragmentary Order: 02
References: OPORD 07
Map Series: No change from OPORD.
Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

1. SITUATION: TF3-66 has bypassed an enemy
reconnaissance company that must be located and destroyed to
ensure freedom of movement of the BDE.

2. MISSION: 1-25 IN (M) conducts a movement to contact to
locate and on order destroy a bypassed enemy reconnaissance
company.

3. EXECUTION:
    a. Concept. 1-25 IN (M) conducts a movement to contact in
zone with A/1-25 IN on the left (South) and B/1-25 IN (+) as
the main effort on the right (North). 1/C/1-25 IN will follow the
main effort as the BN reserve. Reconnaissance platoon will
screen forward of the two lead companies.
    b. Task to subordinate units.
        (1) A/1-25 IN area of operations is initially from
            LD/LC to PL (name), shifts to PL (name) and PL
            (name) on order.
        (2) B/1-25 IN.
            (a) Area of operations initially is from LD/LC to PL
            (name) on order.
            (b) Prepare to receive 2nd and 3rd platoons to B/1-
            25 IN.
        (3) C/1-25 IN. Prepare to give 2nd and 3rd platoons to
            B/1-25 IN.
        (4) Recon PLT 1-25 IN. Screen forward of lead
            companies NLT (___) to PL (name), on order shift
            to PL (name) and PL (name).
    c. Coordinating instructions. See change 1 to Annex C,
      Operations Overlay.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT: No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND and SIGNAL: Brigade TAC CP is currently
located at _____

ACKNOWLEDGE:

                                  LTC

Figure 4-1. Sample FRAGO.

6. **Support Requirements**. (See Table 4-6 for a sample consolidated support requirements list.) Support
requirements include the following:

a.   *Minimum Trainers and or Evaluators.* The battalion commander conducts this exercise. The battalion XO, S3, command sergeant major (CSM), company commanders, and platoon leaders assist him. Company commanders and platoon leaders may act as observers/controllers for a sister element. Whichever method is chosen, all key leaders must attend an appropriate AAR.

b.   *Opposing Force.* OPFOR should be used, if available, to add realism to the exercise. The trainer must develop an OPFOR scenario with specific actions that cause reactions from the friendly unit consistent with objectives and tasks.

c.   *Standards.* Standards reviewed during leader preparation must be met during the CPX. They should be covered in detail during the AARs. Standards that are not met should be annotated on the unit proficiency work sheet of each subordinate unit.

d.   *Vehicles and Communications.* Use battalion TOE or MTOE equipment.

e.   *Training Area.* The training area should be sufficient in size to allow maneuver by the battalion.

SAMPLE SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS	
Personnel:	
a. Medical	
b. OPFOR	
Equipment:	
a. 100% of TOE equipment readiness code (ERC) A items.	
b. MILES equipment:	
(1) M4 system	1 per M4 (include OPFOR)
(2) M240 machine gun system	1 per M240 (include OPFOR)
(3) Controller guns	9 (8 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
(4) Small arms alignment fixture	9 (8 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
c. Vehicles and communications support for OPFOR.	
d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications.	
Supply: (platoon, OPFOR, other support personnel).	
a. Class I	
(1) MRE	4 ea meals per soldier per day
(2) Potable water	1 ea 400G water trailer
b. Class III. (As required)	
c. Class V	
(1) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A075	600 rds for each SAW
(2) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A080	120 rds for each rifle
(3) 7.62 mm (DODIC) A111	600 rds for each M240
(4) 40 mm dummy (DODIC) B375	1 for each MK 19
(5) 40 mm practice (DODIC) B480	Per TSOP for each M203
(6) Body practice hand grenade (DODIC) G811	4 ea for each rifleman
(7) Fuze hand grenade practice M228 (DODIC) G878	4 ea for each rifleman
(8) Simulator, projectile (DODIC) L594	24 ea per company
(9) Simulator, hand grenade (DODIC) L601	24 ea per company
Maneuver Area: Training area Alpha	

Table 4-6. Consolidated support requirements.

7. **T&EOs**. T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-8 is a sample list of T&EOs.

Task	Task Number
Plan Operations Using the MDMP	07-1-5189
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted)	07-1-1207
Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit	07-1-1081
Conduct a Movement to Contact	07-1-1072

Table 4-7. T&EOs.

8. **Evaluators**. Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in the chapter 5 of this MTP.

INFANTRY BATTALION CPX

7-1-E0001

Conduct an Attack

1. **Objective**. Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this CPX is to train and or evaluate the infantry battalion in the conduct of an attack. This CPX trains and or evaluates the commander, staff, and subordinate leaders in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing the attack.

2. **Interface**.

    a.   This CPX is supported by the following:
        (1) CPX 07-1-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.
        (2) CPX 07-1-E0009, Assault an Objective.

3. **Training**. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the CPX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this CPX. The staff can develop the OPLAN or OPORD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.

    a.   *General Tips for Training.*
        (1) Conduct AARs throughout the exercise that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.
        (2) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.
        (3) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.
        (4) Use trained personnel to act as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
        (5) Integrate nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and electronic warfare (EW).
        (6) Ensure that platoon personnel are familiar with the platoon's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) that relate to the exercise.
        (7) Review soldier familiarity with the training environment.

    b.   *Pre-Exercise Activities.* (Use one or more.)
        (1) MAPEX(s) combined with sand table exercise(s) that match the terrain to be used during the CPX.
        (2) CPX. (May develop OPORD during a separate CPX.)

    c.   *Exercise Instructions.*
        (1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.
        (2) The tasks that support this CPX must be executed to standard.
        (3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.
        (4) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.
        (5) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.
        (6) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated. (Train controllers and or evaluators as required.)
        (7) This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO and it ends after consolidation and reorganization.
        (8)This exercise should be conducted under all environmental conditions and during periods of daylight and limited visibility. The platoon should operate under threat of NBC attacks, attacks by ground or air, indirect fire, and EW.

    d.   *Sample Scenario.* Your battalion (1-25 IN[M]) is conducting combat operations as part of the 1st Brigade and has received a FRAGO to conduct an attack not later than (NLT) _____ to destroy a reinforced reconnaissance company to allow the brigade freedom of movement in the northern part of the brigade's sector. TF 3-66 AR in the enemy security zone has bypassed elements of the Beta Republican

forces. The unit is a reinforced recon company. The company's most probable course of action is to establish a cohesive defense to block brigade LOCs. The unit has been located in prepared defensive positions at grid (____).

4. **General Situation**. 1st Brigade continues offensive operations against Beta Republican forces. In the main battle area (MBA) the two heavy task forces have penetrated the first defensive belt; however, based upon the enemy's extensive obstacle belt and massive enemy indirect fires, the momentum of the brigade attack has slowed. 1-25 IN has identified the location of the bypassed reinforced company blocking LOCs in the brigade's main attack sector. The brigade commander is concerned that this enemy unit to the rear of the main effort will restrict his freedom of movement and further slow his attack.

5. **Special Situation**. The battalion commander issues planning guidance and the staff begins planning the operation.

Fragmentary Order: 02
References: OPORD 07
Map Series: No change to OPORD.
Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

1. SITUATION: Enemy reconnaissance company has been located.

2. MISSION: 1-25 IN (M) conducts an attack to destroy an enemy reconnaissance company at grid (_____).

3. EXECUTION:
    a. Concept. 1-25 IN (M) attacks with two companies abreast and with one platoon in reserve.
      b. Task to subordinate units.
          (1) A/1-25 IN (main effort).
             (a) Crosses LD at date time group (DTG) and moves along AXIS (name) to assault position (name). On order attacks to secure OBJ (name).
             (b) Be prepared to receive 2nd and 3rd platoon from C/1-25 IN.
             (c) After consolidation, establish defensive positions and be prepared to support by fire TM A/3-66 AR's attack on OBJ (name).
          (2) B/1-25 IN.
             (a) Crosses LD at (DTG) and moves along AXIS (name) to assault position (name). On order attacks to secure OBJ (name).
             (b) Identify and mark two lanes through obstacle to the east of OBJ (name) to facilate the passage of TF 3-66.
          (3) C/1-25 IN. No change to OPORD.
          (4) Recon PLT 1-25 IN.
             (a) Recon forward of two lead companies and confirm enemy composition, disposition, and location.
          (5) AT/1-25 IN. Move along AXIS (name) to support by fire position (name) and provide supporting fires in vic of objectives (name) and (name).
      c. Coordinating instructions. Report crossing LD.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT: No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND and SIGNAL: Battalion main CP currently located at _____

ACKNOWLEDGE:

                        LTC

Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO.

6. **Support Requirements**. (See Table 4-8 for a sample consolidated support requirements list.) Support requirements include the following:

      a. *Minimum Trainers and or Evaluators*. The battalion commander conducts this exercise. The battalion XO, S3, command sergeant major (CSM), company commanders, and platoon leaders assist

him. Company commanders and platoon leaders may act as observers/controllers for a sister element. Whichever method is chosen, all key leaders must attend an appropriate AAR.

b. *Opposing Force.* OPFOR should be used, if available, to add realism to the exercise. The trainer must develop an OPFOR scenario with specific actions that cause reactions from the friendly unit consistent with objectives and tasks.

c. *Standards.* Standards reviewed during leader preparation must be met during the CPX. They should be covered in detail during the AARs. Standards that are not met should be annotated on the unit proficiency work sheet of each subordinate unit.

e. *Vehicles and Communications.* Use battalion TOE or MTOE equipment.

f. *Training Area.* The training area should be sufficient in size to allow maneuver by the battalion.

SAMPLE SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS	
Personnel:	
a. Medical	
b. OPFOR	
Equipment:	
a. 100% of TOE equipment readiness code (ERC) A items.	
b. MILES equipment:	
(1) M4 system	1 per M4 (include OPFOR)
(2) M240 machine gun system	1 per M240 (include OPFOR)
(3) Controller guns	9 (8 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
(4) Small arms alignment fixture	9 (8 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
c. Vehicles and communications support for OPFOR.	
d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications.	
Supply: (platoon, OPFOR, other support personnel).	
a. Class I	
(1) MRE	4 ea meals per soldier per day
(2) Potable water	1 ea 400G water trailer
b. Class III. (As required)	
c. Class V	
(1) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A075	600 rds for each SAW
(2) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A080	120 rds for each rifle
(3) 7.62 mm (DODIC) A111	600 rds for each M240
(4) 40 mm dummy (DODIC) B375	1 for each MK 19
(5) 40 mm practice (DODIC) B480	Per TSOP for each M203
(6) Body practice hand grenade (DODIC) G811	4 ea for each rifleman
(7) Fuze hand grenade practice M228 (DODIC) G878	4 ea for each rifleman
(8) Simulator, projectile (DODIC) L594	24 ea per company
(9) Simulator, hand grenade (DODIC) L601	24 ea per company
Maneuver Area: Training area Alpha	

Table 4-8. Sample consolidated support requirements.

7. **T&EOs**. T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-9 is a sample list of T&EOs.

Task Title	Task Number
Prepare for Operations	07-1-5198
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted)	07-1-1207
Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force	07-1-1171
Conduct Consolidation	07-1-5036
Conduct Reorganization	07-1-5081

Table 4-9. T&EOs.

8. **Evaluators.** Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in chapter 5 of this MTP.

INFANTRY BATTALION CPX

7-1-E0002

Conduct a Defense

1. **Objective**. Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this CPX is to train and or evaluate the infantry battalion in the conduct of a defense. This CPX trains and or evaluates the commander, staff, and subordinate leaders in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing the attack.

2. **Interface**.

    a. This CPX is supported by the following:
        (1) CPX 07-1-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.
        (2) CPX 07-1-E0004, Conduct a Screen.
        (3) CPX 07-1-E0005, Conduct a Guard.

3. **Training**. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the CPX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this CPX. The staff can develop the OPLAN or OPORD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.

    a. *General Tips for Training.*
        (1) Conduct AARs throughout the exercise that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.
        (2) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.
        (3) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.
        (4) Use trained personnel to act as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
        (5) Integrate nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and electronic warfare (EW).
        (6) Ensure that platoon personnel are familiar with the platoon's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) that relate to the exercise.
        (7) Review soldier familiarity with the training environment.

    b. *Pre-Exercise Activities.* (Use one or more.)
        (1) MAPEX(s) combined with sand table exercise(s) that match the terrain to be used during the CPX.
        (2) CPX. (May develop OPORD during a separate CPX).

    c. *Exercise Instructions.*
        (1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.
        (2) The tasks that support this CPX must be executed to standard.
        (3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.
        (4) MILES should be used when feasible.
        (5) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.
        (6) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.
        (7) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated. (Train controllers and or evaluators as required.)
        (8) This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO and it ends after consolidation and reorganization.
        (9) This exercise should be conducted under all environmental conditions and during periods of daylight and limited visibility. The platoon should operate under threat of NBC attacks, attacks by ground or air, indirect fire, and EW.

    d. *Sample Scenario.* 1st Brigade has been successful in penetrating the defensive strongpoint of the Beta Republic battalion-sized force. 2-67 IN (M) and Team C, 1-79 IN (M), are now occupying battle

positions (BPs) _____ and _____ and have transitioned to the defense. This is in anticipation of an enemy counterattack into the brigade sector by elements of a division-size force equipped with APCs, tanks, and pickup trucks. 1-25 IN (M) has successfully defeated the enemy reconnaissance company that was located along PL _____. 1-25 IN (M) is currently consolidating in the vicinity of PL _____ after its successful attack.

4. **General Situation**. Your battalion [1-25 IN (M)] has consolidated after its attack in the vicinity of PL _____ and is preparing to defend. Your company receives a battalion FRAGO, Figure 4-3. (This FRAGO is an **example ONLY**).

5. **Special Situation**. The battalion commander issues planning guidance and the staff begins planning the operation.

```
FRAGMENTARY ORDER    03

References: OPORD 08

Map Series:  V611, sheets 7061 & 7062, edition
1, scale 1:50,000

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

1.  SITUATION.  The enemy has increased
    his rate of march and is expected in the
    battalion's AO within 18 hours.
2.  MISSION.  No change.
3.  EXECUTION.  No change.

4.  SERVICE SUPPORT.    No change.

5.  COMMAND AND SIGNAL. Battalion Main
CP currently located at xxxxxxxxx.


ACKNOWLEDGE:


                                Abner
                                LTC
```

Figure 4-3. Sample FRAGO.

6. **Support Requirements**. (See Table 4-10 for a sample consolidated support requirements list.) Support requirements include the following:

a. *Minimum Trainers and or Evaluators*. The battalion commander conducts this exercise. The battalion XO, S3, CSM, company TM commanders, and platoon leaders assist him. Company TM commanders and platoon leaders may act as observers/controllers for a sister element. Whichever method is chosen, all key leaders must attend an appropriate AAR.

b.   *Opposing Force*. OPFOR should be used, if available, to add realism to the exercise. The trainer must develop an OPFOR scenario with specific actions that cause reactions from the friendly unit consistent with objectives and tasks.

c.   *MILES*. MILES can provide realistic training. MILES keeps the CPX from becoming a leader exercise. MILES is required in conjunction with an active OPFOR element.

d.   *Standards*. Standards reviewed during leader preparation must be met during the CPX. They should be covered in detail during the AARs. Standards that are not met should be annotated on the unit proficiency work sheet of each subordinate unit.

e.   *Vehicles and Communications*. Use battalion TOE or MTOE equipment.

f.   *Training Area*. The training area should be sufficient in size to allow maneuver by the battalion.

SAMPLE SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS	
Personnel:	
a. Medical	
b. OPFOR	
Equipment:	
a. 100% of TOE equipment readiness code (ERC) A items.	
b. MILES equipment:	
(1) M4 system	1 per M4 (include OPFOR)
(2) M240 machine gun system	1 per M240 (include OPFOR)
(3) Controller guns	9 (8 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
(4) Small arms alignment fixture	9 (8 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
c. Vehicles and communications support for OPFOR.	
d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications.	
Supply: (platoon, OPFOR, other support personnel).	
a. Class I	
(1) MRE	4 ea meals per soldier per day
(2) Potable water	1 ea 400G water trailer
b. Class III. (As required)	
c. Class V	
(1) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A075	600 rds for each SAW
(2) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A080	120 rds for each rifle
(3) 7.62 mm (DODIC) A111	600 rds for each M240
(4) 40 mm dummy (DODIC) B375	1 for each MK 19
(5) 40 mm practice (DODIC) B480	Per TSOP for each M203
(6) Body practice hand grenade (DODIC) G811	4 ea for each rifleman
(7) Fuze hand grenade practice M228 (DODIC) G878	4 ea for each rifleman
(8) Simulator, projectile (DODIC) L594	24 ea per company
(9) Simulator, hand grenade (DODIC) L601	24 ea per company
Maneuver Area: Training area Alpha	

Table 4-10. Sample consolidated support requirements.

7. **T&EOs**. T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-11 is a sample list of T&EOs.

Task	Task Number
Prepare for Operations	07-1-5198
Conduct a Rehearsal	07-1-5000
Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted)	07-1-1207
Execute the Targeting Process	07-1-3009
Conduct a Defense	07-1-1027

Table 4-11. T&EOs.

8. **Evaluators.** Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in chapter 5 of this MTP.

The following is an example of a CPX planned for a stability environment. This CPX was not developed to support the above FTX.

INFANTRY BATTALION CPX

7-1-E0010

Conduct Stability Operations

1. **Objective**. Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this CPX is to train and or evaluate the infantry battalion in the conduct of a defense. This CPX trains and or evaluates the commander, staff, and subordinate leaders in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing the attack.

2. **Interface**.

    a. This CPX is supported by the following:
        (1) CPX 07-1-E0003, Conduct a Reconnaissance.
        (2) CPX 07-1-E0008, Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment.

3. **Training**. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the CPX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this CPX. The staff can develop the OPLAN or OPORD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.

    a. *General Tips for Training.*
        (1) Conduct AARs throughout the exercise that focus on strengths, weaknesses, and safety.
        (2) Ensure the OPFOR is trained in enemy tactics and doctrine.
        (3) Include OPFOR personnel in AARs.
        (4) Use trained personnel to act as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).
        (5) Integrate nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and electronic warfare (EW).
        (6) Ensure that platoon personnel are familiar with the platoon's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) that relate to the exercise.
        (7) Review soldier familiarity with the training environment.

    b. Pre-*Exercise Activities.* (Use one or more.)
        (1) MAPEX(s) combined with sand table exercise(s) that match the terrain to be used during the CPX.
        (2) CPX. (May develop OPORD during a separate CPX.)

    c. *Exercise Instructions.*
        (1) Perform this exercise at full speed after performing building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the "run" level of execution.
        (2) The tasks that support this CPX must be executed to standard.
        (3) The size of the OPFOR element facing the unit must be supportable and doctrinally correct.
        (4) MILES should be used when feasible.
        (5) Ensure that the conditions set for the exercise are realistic.
        (6) Except for MILES or appropriate simulation devices, use only TOE equipment or authorized replacements.
        (7) Use controllers and or evaluators that are thoroughly knowledgeable in the specific tasks to be evaluated. (Train controllers and or evaluators as required.)
        (8) This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO and it ends after consolidation and reorganization.
        (9) This exercise should be conducted under all environmental conditions and during periods of daylight and limited visibility. The platoon should operate under threat of NBC attacks, attacks by ground or air, indirect fire, and EW.

    d. *Sample Scenario*.

      (1) **Summary of the Enemy Situation**.

        (a) Background. The United States has a treaty agreement with the Alpha Republic that declares the US intent to support any newly elected democratic government with both economic and military aid. In a recent election, the citizens of Alpha turned out the leadership of the Alpha Patriotic Front (APF) by electing a new prime minister and cabinet that pledged democratic reform within the country. The election, monitored by international observers, was very close with the winner managing only 53 percent of the popular vote. As a result, disgruntled supporters of the losing party have taken to the streets in various cities throughout the country. Some elements of the APF have refused to accept the election results and have threatened violence if a new election is not held within one month. Other factions within the country are politically, ethnically, and religiously allied with neighboring Beta, whose totalitarian regime had been strongly influencing the APF during the past decade. The government of Beta worked in vain to prevent the election of the democratic government now in power--a government it deemed to be more aligned with western democratic nations and far less favorable to Beta interests.

        (b) The Alpha and Beta Republics have been belligerents for almost 200 years, actually going to war about 85 years ago. While the two countries have many citizens who share a common religion and ethnic background, the governments of the two emerging nations have chosen different economic and social paths. The current border between the two countries, set by international agreement and arbitration after the last war in 1915, has continued to be a source of conflict and disagreement for more than 85 years. The Mongrel Republic, the country bordering the Alpha Republic on the north, has generally remained neutral during past disagreements between Alpha and Beta, but they have made no secret of their desire to possess a critical natural resource available only in northeast Alpha.

        (c) Belligerent Forces:

- Alpha: Alpha Army; paramilitary forces; and religious, political, and other factions.
- Beta: Beta Army and paramilitary and terrorist forces.

        (d) Composition: The Alpha Army is at 50% strength. The Beta Army is at 80% strength. The paramilitary forces from both countries operate without a clearly defined order of battle but can be expected to fight in squad- to platoon-size groups. Paramilitary forces are not well armed and normally operate dismounted but occasionally employ modified civilian vehicles armed with small arms.

        (e) Recent Activities: Paramilitary forces from Alpha threatened that a defeat of the APF in the recent election might trigger wide-scale violence and the use of a biological agent to poison the water supply throughout the country.

      (2) **Concept**. Your battalion [1-25 IN (M)] will conduct any or all of the following tasks, on order (O/O), to establish and maintain stability in the area of operations (AO).

        (a) Conduct intelligence-gathering activities.

        (b) Establish a reserve force to respond to sites of civil disturbance.

        (c) Man observation posts (OPs).

        (d) Man checkpoints and or roadblocks.

        (e) Conduct patrols.

        (f) Provide escorts for military and or civilian movements as required.

        (g) Secure selected sites (for example, voting sites, refugee camps, schools, churches).

        (h) Enforce curfews.

        (i) Stabilize areas that have escalating tension.

        (j) Open and secure routes as required.

        (k) Conduct weapons site inspections as required.

4. **General Situation**. 1-25 IN (M) is conducting operations independently or as part of the 1st Brigade. The battalion is occupying a base camp 2 kms west of the Akusk Airport in the Alpha Republic. Base camp security has been established. The battalion has been given an on order mission to conduct security operations in the area of operations. Local populous and factions may or may not be cooperative.

5. **Special Situation**. 1-25 IN (M) has been designated as the reserve force. The battalion has rehearsed possible contingency operations required of the reserve force. Your battalion receives a battalion FRAGO to react to a civil disturbance. (See Figures 4-3 and 4-4.)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER. 01

References. OPORD 01.

Map Series. No change to OPORD.

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

1. SITUATION.
    a. Enemy forces.
        (1) Political and other factions.

2. MISSION. 1-25 IN (M) reacts to a civil disturbance NLT
_____ near the northern perimeter fence of the Akusk
Airport (grid) to establish order and detain known belligerent
participants and activities.

3. EXECUTION. Per TSOP.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per TSOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. BN main CP currently located
at base camp.

ACKNOWLEDGE.

                                        Commander

Figure 4-3. Sample FRAGO.
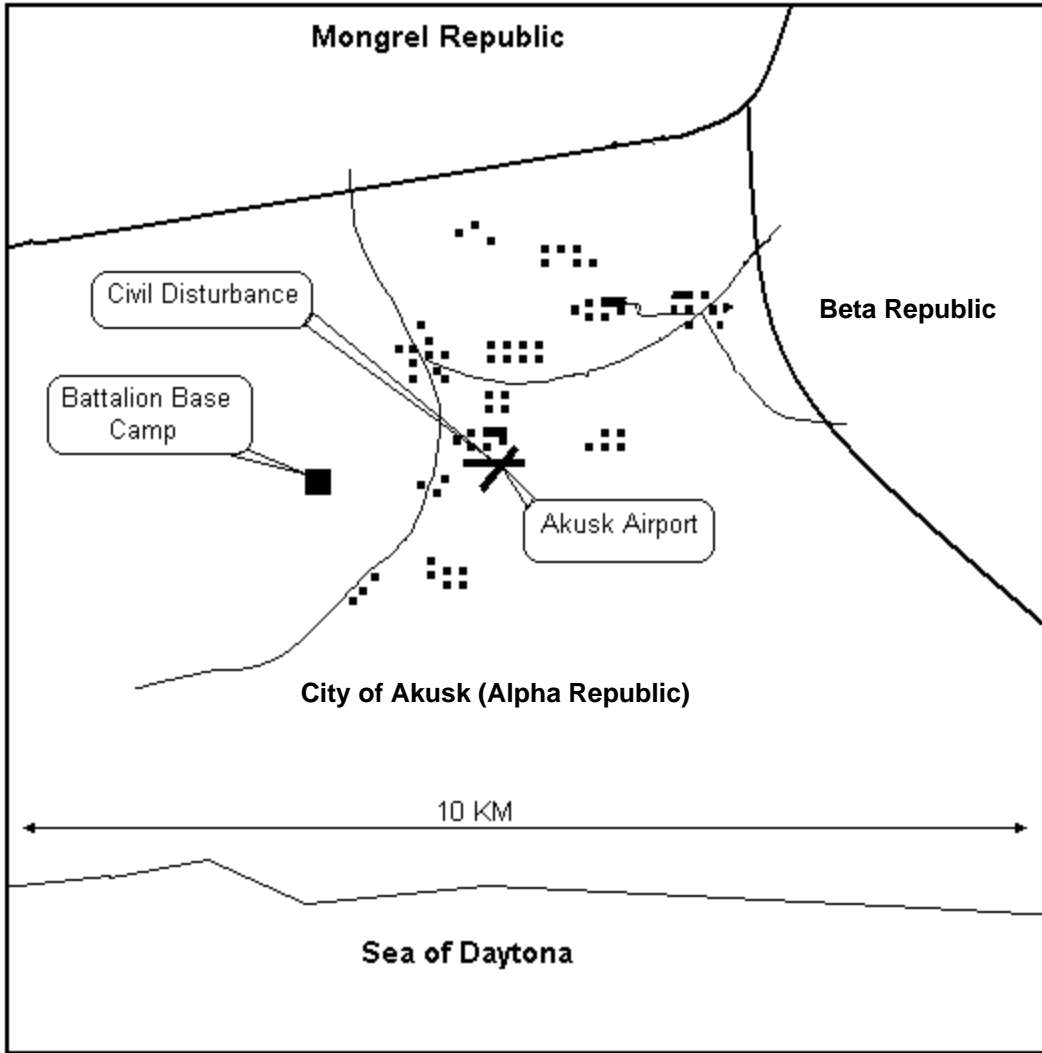
Figure 4-4. Map of the area of operations (example only).

6. **Support Requirements**. The support requirements for the CPX are the consolidated requirements for the company plus attachments.

SAMPLE SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS	
Personnel:	
a. Medical	
b. OPFOR	
Equipment:	
a. 100% of TOE equipment readiness code (ERC) A items.	
b. MILES equipment:	
(1) M4 system	1 per M4 (include OPFOR)
(2) M240B machine gun system	1 per M240B (include OPFOR)
(3) Controller guns	3ea (2 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
(4) Small arms alignment fixture	3ea (2 ea for evaluators, 1 ea for OPFOR)
c. Vehicles and communications support for OPFOR.	
d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications.	
Supply: (platoon, OPFOR, other support personnel).	
a. Class I	
(1) MRE	3ea meals per soldier per day
(2) Potable water	1ea 400G water trailer
b. Class III. (As required)	
c. Class V	
(1) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A075	600 rds for each SAW
(2) 5.56 mm (DODIC) A080	120 rds for each rifle
(4) Simulator, Launching TOE (DODIC) L592	1ea per TOW
(5) 40 mm practice (DODIC) B480	Per TSOP for each M203
(6) Body practice hand grenade (DODIC) G811	4ea per rifleman
(7) Fuze hand grenade practice M228 (DODIC) G878	4ea per rifleman
(8) Simulator, projectile (DODIC) L594	24 per platoon
(9) Simulator, hand grenade (DODIC) L601	24 per platoon
Maneuver Area: Training area Alpha	

Table 4-10. Consolidated support requirements.

7. **T&EOs.** T&EOs used in evaluating the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-11 is a sample list of T&EOs.

Task	Task Number
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	07-1-5036
Prepare for Combat	07-1-5081
Conduct a Rehearsal	07-1-5000
React to a Civil Disturbance	07-1-1396
Secure Civilians during Operations	07-1-4036
Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	07-1-5009

Table 4-11. Training and evaluation outlines.

8. **Evaluators**. Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks using the standards published in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. Introduction. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in a CPX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Figure 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. *Element.* This identifies the unit or unit elements that perform the task.

b. *Task.* This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

c. *References.* These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.

d. *Iteration.* This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

e. *Commander/Leader Assessment.* This assessment is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) **T--Trained**. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) **P--Needs practice**. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) **U--Untrained**. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. *Condition.* A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

g. *Task Standard.*

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance

observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. *Task Steps and Performance Measures*. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. *GO/NO-GO Column*. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. *Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block*. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO." It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the unit's demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO." It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. *Supporting Individual Tasks*. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, task numbers, and task title.

l. *Supporting Collective Tasks*. This is a clearly defined, discrete, and measurable activity, action, or event (for example, task) which requires organized or unit performance and leads to accomplishment of a mission.

m. *Opposing Force Standards*. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify <u>what</u> must be accomplished--not <u>how</u> it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy it is portraying.

5-4. <u>Use</u>. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as a CPX or an FTX.

Develop Intelligence

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines.

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines (continued).

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines (continued).

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines (continued).

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-2000)

(<u>FM 34-8-2</u>)	(FM 100-5)	(FM 100-55)
(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 34-130)
(FM 34-2)	(FM 34-2-1)	(FM 34-3)
(FM 34-40-7)	(FM 34-5)	(FM 34-54)
(FM 34-60)		

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified time and location. The S2 section is established and supports staff operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF S2 section conducts S2 operations IAW the TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The S2 section plans, coordinates, and participates in mission analysis and order development. The S2 section prepares, updates, and maintains the intelligence estimate. The S2 section utilizes available digital systems and conventional sources of intelligence to process, analyze, and disseminate information. The S2 section provides intelligence to support the commander's decision-making ability. The S2 section tracks the current battle. The S2 officer supervises the section and assigned personnel. The S2 section, in conjunction with the rest of the staff, develops the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan and overlays. The S2 participates in the target selection process. The S2 section coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities. The S2 section assists in preparing deception plans. The S2 section determines map requirements and requisitions maps as necessary. The S2 section considers ROE and ROI during planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. BN/TF intelligence (S2) section participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP).
Note: The S2's first priority at this level is to ensure a healthy intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process to drive staff planning.
    a. Receives and analyzes mission.
        (1) Receives commander's guidance and assist in development of commander's priority intelligence requirements (PIR).
        (2) Understands commander's intent.
        (3) Defines the battlefield environment.
        (4) Identifies intelligence gaps.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Develops preliminary intelligence requirements (IR).		
(6) Identifies specified and implied intelligence tasks.		
(7) Determines availability of organic, attached, and supporting intelligence assets.		
b. Requests support and or information from higher headquarters if items or information are not available organically.		
(1) Requests maps, imagery, sketches, and blueprints of objectives, and named areas of interest (NAIs).		
(2) Requests collection plan, asset available times, and asset tracks.		
(3) Requests weather and light data and climatic summary.		
(4) Requests enemy order of battle (OB) data.		
(5) Requests terrain products (line of communications [LOC], vegetation, cross-country mobility [CCM], modified combined obstacle overlay [MCOO], elevation, line of sight [LOS], and hydrology).		
(6) Requests higher intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan.		
c. Obtains signal operating instructions (SOI) and sign and countersign information through unit signal officer (S6).		
d. Briefs staff on abbreviated intelligence estimate to assist their mission planning.		
e. Issues warning order (WARNO) to R&S assets.		
f. Describes the battlefield's effects.		
g. Assess other characteristics of the battlefield. (mission dependent).		
(1) Includes politics.		
(2) Includes population.		
(3) Includes demographics.		
(4) Includes social ethnic and religion.		
(5) Includes economic.		
h. Evaluates enemy.		
i. Determines enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
(1) Sends information on ECOAs to subordinate units to facilitate planning.		
j. Develops intelligence synchronization matrix (ISM).		
(1) Ties to PIR and intelligence requirements (IR) (include last time information is of value [LTIOV]).		
(2) Includes timeline, required decisions, decision criteria, serious incident report (SIR), and collection assets.		
(3) Plans for system cross-cue and back-up coverage.		
(4) Ensures it answers commander's requirements for intelligence, targeting, and battle damage assessment (BDA) in time to make decisions.		
k. Participates in staff war game of decision support template (DST) and targeting plan. (as enemy commander).		
l. Develops ISR plan and overlay to support DST. (with support from operations officer [S3], fire support officer [FSO], engineer, and air defense officer if available).		
3. BN/TF S2 section participates in the preparation, coordination, authentication, and distribution of orders and operations plans (OPLANs).		
4. BN/TF S2 section develops and provides applicable graphics to subordinate elements.		
5. BN/TF S2 coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Prepares, updates, and maintains the intelligence estimate and situational and event templates and assists with the preparation of the DST by nominating commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).		
(1) Provides situational and event templates to the commander that accurately locate likely enemy positions and identify likely ECOA and enemy weaknesses.		
Note: Enemy locations should be annotated in the appropriate All Source Analysis System (ASAS) files for digital equipped units.		
(2) Annotates significant obstacles and restricted and severely restricted terrain.		
(3) Considers weather and its impacts. (effects on visibility, trafficability, personnel, equipment, nuclear, biological, and chemical [NBC], and smoke).		
(4) Evaluates key terrain for potential enemy and friendly use and annotates information.		
Note: The S2 refers to analysis on S2 and or G2 home page. (digital equipped units).		
(5) Maintains the enemy situation. (uses ASAS if digital equipped).		
(6) Identifies enemy weaknesses.		
(7) Provides templates and estimates to the commander before his analysis.		
(8) Verifies that the S2 situation map (SITMAP) and appropriate overlays are current and complete.		
(9) Annotates graphics in ASAS overlays. (digital equipped units).		
(10) Builds essential information into ASAS report and text files. (digital equipped units).		
(11) Builds information or products required for transmission to company and below.		
b. Provides commander with input during courses of action (COA) analysis.		
(1) Provides input to the development of the battle from the viewpoint of enemy doctrine.		
(2) Identifies likely enemy reactions to friendly actions.		
(3) Assists in COA analysis.		
c. Assists commander by developing collection plan.		
Note: The S2 identifies sufficient PIR, IR, NAIs, TAIs, and decision points (DPs) needed to control the battle.		
d. Directs and coordinates intelligence collection activities.		
(1) Uses Army Battle Command System (ABCS), specifically ASAS and Force XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2), to maximize information management. (digital equipped units).		
(2) Verifies the R&S plan meets the commander's PIR needs, reduces enemy surveillance of friendly action, and does not conflict with the higher headquarters' recon plan.		
(3) Refines all PIR and IR into specific collection tasks. (what, where, and who).		
(4) Assigns mission of observing NAIs, TAIs, and DPs to a specific company sector with guidance of what to look for.		
(5) Assigns specific observation posts (OPs) and patrolling responsibilities other than local security.		
(6) Briefs and debriefs patrols and R&S assets.		
(7) Assigns appropriate collection missions to ground surveillance radars (GSRs) and Improved Remotely Monitored Battlefield Sensor System (IREMBASS).		
(8) Directs collection tasks to accomplish higher headquarters' directed requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(9) Coordinates all collection taskings with the higher headquarters S3 and higher headquarters S2.		
(10) Reports new information to commander, staff, higher headquarters, and subordinate elements as directed.		
(11) Defaults information reporting to ABCS. (digital equipped units)		
(12) Includes all phases of the operation.		
e. Requests information from other sources.		
Note: Requested information should be transmitted in ASAS to and from higher headquarters or higher. if digital equipped.		
(1) Uses available outside intelligence assets (human intelligence [HUMINT], signal intelligence [SIGINT], and electronic intelligence [ELINT]) to obtain information.		
Note: The S2 section requests unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV), Joint Surveillance Target Attack Radar System (JSTARS) and other higher headquarters processed imagery.		
(2) Requests information early and continually.		
(3) Uses all available collection resources. (scouts, patrols, OPs, forward observers [FOs], engineers, air defense [AD], GSRs, and aviation information).		
f. Analyzes available intelligence.		
(1) Determines enemy size and direction of approach.		
(2) Determines enemy area of main effort.		
(3) Estimates time and distance when enemy will likely come within range and communicates to commander, staff, and subordinates.		
(4) Templates follow-on or reserve forces and estimates time and distance.		
(5) Selects lucrative indirect fire and close air support (CAS) targets.		
(6) Makes recommendation, when required, on enemy likely COA and unit response.		
(7) Disseminates and coordinates intelligence information.		
g. Assists with operations security (OPSEC) and counterreconnaissance.		
(1) Verifies that IPB identifies enemy reconnaissance routes, objectives, and events.		
(2) Destroys all classified material when no longer needed.		
h. Reports intelligence IAW TSOP or as directed.		
6. BN/TF S2 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.		
a. Accesses higher headquarters enemy situation database for updates.		
7. BN/TF S2 section maintains the enemy situation.		
8. BN/TF S2 section coordinates with the S3 for processing materials (with intelligence purposes) taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and civilian internees.		
9. BN/TF S2 section assists the S3 in preparing deception plans.		
10. BN/TF S2 section synchronizes tactical operations with all staff.		
11. BN/TF S2 section determines map requirements and requests maps from higher headquarters.		
12. BN/TF S2 section assesses and tracks the current battle and monitors the execution of decisions.		
a. Monitors continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Directs adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		
*13. BN/TF S2 provides immediate and continuous feedback to the commander when new or updated intelligence is received.		
14. BN/TF S2 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems.		
15. BN/TF S2 supervises the S2 section and S2 personnel.		

16. BN/TF S2 section complies with ROE and ROI.
   a. Considers ROE and ROI during planning.
   b. Enforces ROE and ROI during execution.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-2009)
<u>(FM 34-130)</u>   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff defines the battlefield environment IAW TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The staff defines the battlefield area of operations (AO), area of interest (AI), and battlespace. The staff creates the battlefield environment overlay. The staff considers ROE and ROI during planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).		

* 3. BN/TF commander and or operations officer (S3) establish the limits of the area of operations (AO) based on his intent and desired end state. (Normally, the AO is established by the higher headquarters' order.)
    a. Retrieve higher graphics via Maneuver Control System (MCS) or common operational picture (COP). (digital equipped units only).
    b. Drawn to include the terrain in which activity may occur that would affect the upcoming mission.
    c. Establish unit AO notional overlay using common tactical picture (CTP). (digital equipped units only).
Note: The term "notional overlay" is used to reflect the computer coding language used by COP. This computer language refers to the static information portrayed on the overlay.		

4. BN/TF S3 approves the AO notional overlay. (digital equipped units only).		
5. BN/TF staff identifies the limits of unit battlespace. Note: The limits of a command's battle space are determined by the maximum capabilities of a unit to acquire targets and physically dominate the enemy using supporting and organic systems.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Establishes the unit battlespace notional overlay by consolidating staff battlespace notional overlay input using COP. (S3). (digital equipped units only).		

6. BN/TF staff establishes the limits of the area of interest (AOI).
    a. Bases the limits of the AOI on the ability of the enemy to project power or move forces into the AO.
    b. Anticipates future mission or "be prepared" and "on order" missions identified during mission analysis and determine their effect on the limits of the AOI.
    c. Identifies changes in the command's battle space as a result of maneuver.
    d. Establishes the unit AOI notional overlay by consolidating staff AOI notional overlay input using COP. (Intelligence officer [S2]). (digital equipped units only).		

7. BN/TF staff identifies significant characteristics of the environment.
    a. Identifies enemy forces and all other aspects of the environment that may have an effect on accomplishing the mission including the following: (Dependent on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC].)
      (1) Includes geography, terrain, and weather of the area.
      (2) Includes population demographics. (ethnic groups, religious groups, age distribution, and income groups).
      (3) Includes political or socio-economic factors. (Including the role of clans, tribes, gangs, and so forth).
      (4) Includes infrastructures such as transportation or telecommunications.
      (5) Includes rules of engagement (ROE) or legal restrictions such as international treaties or agreements.
      (6) Includes enemy forces and their capabilities in general terms. Consider para-military forces as well.		

* 8. BN/TF commander and or staff identify the amount of detail required and feasible within the time available for IPB.		

9. BN/TF staff evaluates existing databases and or products and identify intelligence gaps.
    a. Identifies and prioritizes the gaps using the commander's initial intelligence requirements and intent to set the priorities.
    b. Consolidates information gaps and submits request for information (RFI) to higher headquarters. (S2).
    c. Identifies any gaps that cannot be filled within the time allowed for IPB.
    d. Formulates reasonable assumptions for gaps not expected to be filled.		

10. BN/TF staff collects the material and intelligence required to conduct the remainder of IPB.
    a. Initiates collection or requests for intelligence to fill intelligence gaps to the level of detail required to conduct IPB.
    b. Includes collection against all identified significant characteristics of the battlefield, not just enemy forces, in priority order.
    c. Updates IPB products and or overlays as additional intelligence is received.		

11. BN/TF S3 section establishes the battalion battlefield environment notional overlay by consolidating the AO, AOI, and battlespace notional overlays. (digital equipped units only). a. Presents the battalion battlefield environment notional overlay to the commander and or executive officer (XO). (digital equipped units only).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*12. BN/TF commander or XO approves or disapproves recommendation on battlefield environment.		
13. BN/TF staff sections disseminate intelligence overlays or products (as necessary) to subordinate elements to facilitate further planning. a. Post the battlefield environment notional overlay on MCS and transmits to staff; if applicable, transmits to subordinate units as an element of warning order (WARNO) 2. (S3 section).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-2018)
      (FM 34-130)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters larger task-organized force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP).   All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF is task-organized as appropriate for mission conditions. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff describes battlefield effects as part of the IPB process IAW the TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF staff evaluates the effects of terrain and weather on friendly and enemy operations. The BN/TF S2 section disseminates the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO), demographics information, and weather and light data to staff and subordinate units. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. BN/TF staff evaluates battlefield effects on friendly and enemy operations.
      a. Analyzes the effects of terrain on the battlefield environment.
         (1) Uses observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach (OCOKA).
            (a) Proposes locations that best support enemy collection. (Intelligence officer [S2]).
            (b) Identifies key terrain, decisive terrain, avenues of approach, decisive point, and critical point for the operation. (Operations [S3] section, in coordination with the S2 and staff engineer [if available])
            (c) Uses terrain analysis to provide overlay that includes concealment from aerial and space-based signal intelligence (SIGINT) systems, line-of-sight characteristics of terrain, to include communications and noncommunications emitters, vegetation and its effects on radio wave absorption and antenna height requirements, and large objects, such as buildings or cliffs, that will influence radio waves. (Signal [S6] section)
            (d) Analyzes the terrain data using OCOKA and determines fire support implications. (Fire support element [FSE])		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

3. BN/TF staff evaluates the effects of terrain on operations.
Note: Relate the analysis of terrain effects on the broad courses of action (COAs) available to enemy and friendly forces such as attack or defend.
    a. Identifies enemy engagement areas, battle positions, immediate and intermediate objectives, ambush sites, etc. (S2 section).
    b. Identifies friendly engagement areas, battle positions, immediate and intermediate objectives, ambush sites, etc. (S3 section).
    c. Provides assessment of the effects of terrain on fire support operations. (fire support officer [FSO]).
     (1) Includes terrain features rated key terrain from a fire support perspective.
 	
     (2) Includes position area notional overlay. (enemy and friendly) (digital equipped units).
     (3) Includes artillery dead space notional overlay. (digital equipped units).
    d. Identifies possible air avenues of approach, potential friendly and enemy air defense artillery (ADA) system positions, possible forward area arming and refueling point (FARP) sites, landing zones (LZs) and or pickup zones (PZs), and airfields [designated staff element in the absence of an air defense officer (ADO)].
    e. Identifies terrain favorable for the use of weapons of mass destruction (WMD) and smoke (chemical officer or NCO).
     (1) Uses common tactical picture (CTP) on maneuver control system (MCS) to provide notional overlay that includes analysis of terrain pertaining to employment of weapons of mass destruction (WMD) and smoke.
 	
4. BN/TF S2 with recommendations from staff briefs the areas of the battlefield environment that favor offensive and or defensive operations and those that are neutral.
 	
5. BN/TF S2 with assistance from staff analyzes the effects of weather on the battlefield environment.
Note: The S2 coordinates with higher headquarters to obtain battlefield forecasting model (BFM) products that portray the military aspects of weather, if available.
    a. Evaluates the effects of weather on operations.
Note: Relate the analysis of weather effects on the broad COAs available to enemy and friendly forces such as attack or defend.
     (1) Analyzes the effects of weather on maneuver operations and updates notional overlay as appropriate (S3 section).
     (2) Analyzes the effects of weather on enemy operations and updates notional overlay as appropriate (S2 section) .
     (3) Analyzes the effects of weather on the use of WMD and smoke and updates notional overlay as appropriate (Chemical officer and or NCO).
     (4) Analyzes the effects of weather on fire support operations and updates notional overlays as appropriate (FSE).
     (5) Analyzes the effects of weather on air operations and updates notional overlay as appropriate (ADO designated staff element in the absence of an ADO).
 	
6. BN/TF staff analyzes the military aspects of weather.
    a. Include visibility. (to include illumination).
    b. Include wind. (speed and direction).
    c. Include precipitation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Include cloud cover.
    e. Include temperature and humidity.
 	
7. BN/TF S2 section, assisted by the primary and special staff, to include the staff judge advocate (SJA) and civil military officer, if available, determines other characteristics of the battlefield that could affect operations.
    a. Determines demographic, political, and socioeconomic factors.
    b. Determines infrastructures (transportation and telecommunications, etc.)
    c. Determines local, United States (US), and international law.
 	
8. BN/TF S2 section obtains electronic preparation of the battlefield (EPB) information from the analytical control element if available.
 	
9. Staff describes the battlefield's effects on enemy and friendly capabilities and broad COAs, and incorporates analysis into staff estimates.
    a. Identifies areas along each avenue of approach best suited for engagement areas, ambush sites, battle positions, immediate or intermediate objectives and so forth.
    b. Identifies periods when weather conditions will optimize the use of friendly sighting and target acquisition systems.
    c. Identifies other characteristics of the battlefield that will affect military operations.
 	
10. BN/TF S2 section receives staff input concerning battlefield effects and COAs and consolidates information.
 	
11. BN/TF S2 section disseminates terrain, weather, and light data to staff and subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-2027)
(FM 34-130)   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). The BN/TF staff has defined the battlefield environment and the effects of the battlefield on friendly and enemy forces as part of the initial IPB. The BN/TF staff has evaluated the enemy as part of the initial IPB and has refined the doctrinal template and created a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff determines enemy courses of action (ECOAs) IAW TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The staff develops the full set of course of action (COAs) available to the enemy. The S2 section develops the situation template, COA descriptions and options, and high value targets (HVTs) list. The staff prioritizes COAs and identifies the most likely COA.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF staff defines the battlefield area of operations.		
3. BN/TF staff describes the effects that the battlefield environment will have on operations.		
4. BN/TF evaluates the enemy.		

5. BN/TF intelligence officer (S2) updates enemy doctrine or patterns of operation to doctrinal templates.
   a. Requests intelligence information and or products from higher headquarters.
   b. Develops event templates that depict where and when to collect information that will indicate which COA the enemy has adopted.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Develops new named areas of interest (NAIs) at specific points, routes, or areas within the area of operations (AO) and area of interest (AOI) that can match natural terrain features, arbitrary features such as time phase lines, or engagement areas. Also include collection targets that exist in the electromagnetic spectrum.
d. Develops an event matrix that provides details on the type of enemy activity expected in each named area of interest, when the named area of interest is expected to be active, and its relationship to other battlefield events.
 	
6. BN/TF identifies likely objectives and desired end state of enemy command forces at least one level above own and two levels below own command.
   a. Identifies and analyzes the full set of COAs available to the enemy.
     (1) Analyzes the feasibility of each ECOA in terms of time, space, resources, and the force ratios required to accomplish its objective(s).
     (2) Identifies the uniqueness and suitability of each ECOA.
     (3) Determines the acceptability of risk to enemy forces for each COA.
     (4) Determines whether the COAs are consistent with enemy doctrine.
     (5) Determines if the ECOA effectively supports the perceived objective and task and or purpose of its higher echelons, two echelons up if possible (i.e., Will a regiment's COA support its division and army's objectives?).
   b. Develops each COA in the amount of detail time allows.
   c. Evaluates and prioritizes each COA. (staff).
     (1) Determines the most dangerous ECOA.
     (2) Determines the most likely ECOA.
     (3) Recommends updates to the SITEMP.
     (4) Recommends updates to the ECOA overlay, COA descriptions and options, and high value targets (HVTs). (during war gaming.)
 	
7. BN/TF develops situation template (SITEMP), COA descriptions and options, and HVTs.
   a. Refines the initial SITEMP by graphically depicting expected enemy dispositions at critical "snapshots in time" as agreed upon by the S2 and or operations officer (S3) for each ECOA.
   b. Adds time phase lines (TPLs) depicting enemy movement to the SITEMP.
   c. Describes each COA and options to support staff war gaming.
   d. War-games the SITEMPs, the times, or phases in the COA to determine when HVTs are most valuable to the commander and portrays refined HVTs on the SITEMPs.
   e. Refines the HVTs list for each COA.
 	
8. BN/TF S2 section uploads battlefield planning and visualization tool with data to portray the ECOAs. (digital equipped units).
 	
9. BN/TF S2 section disseminates the ECOAs, event template, and event matrix in the form of a collection graphic to support intelligence planning and collection by other units.
 	
10. BN/TF staff completes the following, once the commander has selected the friendly COA.
   a. Reprioritizes the initial list of ECOAs to reflect changes in friendly dispositions and activities.
   b. Updates the SITEMP.
   c. Updates the ECOA overlays, COA descriptions and options, and HVTs.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
　　　　　　　HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-2036)

(<u>FM 34-2-1</u>)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	

ITERATION:　　　　　　　1　2　3　4　5　M　　(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:　　T　P　U　　(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) has received an order to conduct a mission, or anticipates a new mission derived from an ongoing operation. The staff is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). Collaborative intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) planning is occurring between the BN/TF and its higher headquarters. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/unit, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff conducts collaborative planning, and develops an ISR order that synchronizes higher headquarters and BN/TF ISR operations and supports the commander's information requirements (IR).   The BN/TF executive officer (XO) assembles staff required for ISR planning IAW the BN/TF TSOP. BN/TF XO and ISR planning team conduct ISR mission analysis. The BN/TF commander issues ISR planning guidance. The BN/TF S3 section issues warning order (WARNO) to ISR elements. The BN/TF ISR planning team develops ISR scheme of support. The BN/TF ISR team wargames the ISR plan. The BN/TF issues an ISR order to subordinate units that synchronizes higher headquarters and BN/TF ISR operations, and supports the commander's information requirements (IR).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF executive officer (XO) assembles the ISR planning team. (Normally would include [as a minimum] an effects coordination cell, an intelligence [S2] representative, and an operations [S3] representative.)		
3. BN/TF ISR team, in conjunction with the battle staff, develops initial ISR requirements as part of mission analysis. 　　a. Identifies initial priority intelligence requirements (PIRs). (S2 section). 　　b. Identifies higher headquarters PIRs that require unit assets to collect. (S2 section). 　　c. Develops specific information requirements (SIRs) from the unit commander's PIRs. (R&S team).		
4. BN/TF ISR team converts the SIRs to production and collection requirements. 　　a. Develop an SIR for each named area of interest (NAI) for each collection asset.		
5. BN/TF ISR team develops the initial ISR plan. 　　a. Evaluates resources.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Identifies collection assets required.
Note: The ISR team must consider type of mission, strength, composition, and disposition of the enemy security force.
    c. Identifies equipment required.
        (1) Identifies the proximity of the collection assets to the NAI, environmental conditions, and signature provided by the target.
        (2) Determines availability of ISR assets. (higher and two levels down).
        (3) Determines capabilities of ISR assets.
        (4) Matches resources to requirements.
    d. Develops ISR scheme of support in coordination with the S3.
    e. Develops and prioritizes specified orders and requests (SOR).
    f. Completes initial ISR plan.
        (1) Develops initial event template matching NAIs against commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).
        (2) Develops initial ISR plan guidance in order to answer the what, where, when, why, and who should collect.
        (3) Drafts the order for an ISR mission and submits to the S2 for approval.
        (4) Creates the initial ISR plan, applicable overlay(s), and collection matrix. (S2 section).
 	
6. BN/TF S3 section tasks the appropriate unit in the form of a mission tasking order (OPORD or FRAGO) and disseminates R&S order to higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.
 	
7. BN/TF S2 section identifies collection gaps and submits request for information (RFIs) to higher headquarters.
 	
8. BN/TF ISR team, in cooperation with the staff, develops a refined ISR plan as part of staff war gaming.
    a. Receives refined battle staff products to include updated PIR, information requirements (IRs), high value targets (HVTs), and high payoff target list (HPTL).
    b. Uses the commander's CCIR and situation and event templates and associates them with enemy COA in order to define collection requirements of decided COA.
    c. Refines the R&S plan by integrating the scheme of maneuver, fires, and engineers.
    d. Provides engineer plan to support counter-reconnaissance plan and establishes engineer collection requirements. (staff engineer).
    e. Develops air defense and early warning plan to integrate into the ISR plan. (air defense officer, if available).
    f. Assists with the identification of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) NAIs, and integrates NBC operations and NBC defense into the ISR plan. (chemical officer).
    g. Completes associated fire plan to support the ISR plan. (fire support officer [FSO]).
        (1) Coordinates aspects of maneuver. (S3 section).
        (2) Plans for the infiltration and exfiltration of collection assets and resupply routes through friendly force sectors and or zones.
        (3) Establishes collection assets relationship with security force.
        (4) Establishes R&S control measures such as line of advance (LOA), battle handover line (BHL), and forward boundary line.
        (5) Performs terrain management.
    h. Develops a logistics support plan to support ISR.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Verifies that resupply is identified and that it addresses how often, by whom, where, and how.
    (2) Verifies that collection assets have the proper evacuation resources to evacuate casualties, identifying by whom and how.
 	
9. R&S team, in cooperation with the staff, completes the final ISR plan.
    a. Updates the ISR plan, applicable overlay(s), ISR collection matrix, and situation template (SITEMP). (S2 section)
    b. Uses approved ISR plan to coordinate the final decision support template (DST) with the staff. (S3 section).
    c. Produces the ISR Annex including ISR applicable overlay(s) and SITEMP for inclusion in the unit order. (S2 section).
 	
10. BN/TF ISR team updates the ISR plan as necessary based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
 	
11. BN/TF ISR team provides ISR team with updated IPB products as they become available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2000.07-IOTE	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4009.07-IOTE	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4018.07-IOTE	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5099.07-IOTE	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5108.07-IOTE	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-2054)
<u>(FM 34-130)</u>   (FM 101-5)   (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified time and location. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff evaluates the enemy as part of the IPB process IAW the TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The staff utilizes available digital systems and conventional sources of intelligence to evaluate enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities. The staff provides a consolidated assessment of the enemy to the commander and/or executive officer (XO). The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF staff defines the battlefield area of operations.		
3. BN/TF staff describes the effects the battlefield environment will have on operations.		

4. BN/TF staff evaluates the enemy.
   a. Requests intelligence products from higher headquarters.
   b. Creates or updates enemy models.
     (1) Includes doctrinal templates.
       (a) Constructs doctrinal templates through an analysis of the intelligence database and an evaluation of the enemy's past operations.
       (b) Determine how the enemy normally organizes for combat and how he deploys and employs his units and the various Battlefield Operating System (BOS) assets.
     (2) Includes description of preferred tactics and options.
       (a) Addresses the operations of the major units or elements portrayed on the template and the activities of the different BOS.
       (b) Contains a listing or description of the options available to the enemy should the operation fail (branches) or subsequent operations if it succeeds (sequels).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Addresses typical timelines and phases of the operation (maneuver and support), points where units transition from one formation to another, and how each BOS contributes to the operation's success.		
(d) Describes the actions of the supporting BOS in enough detail to allow the later identification of high value targets (HVTs) and high pay-off targets (HPTs).		
(3) Includes identification of type of HVTs.		
(a) Identities assets that are key to executing the primary operation.		
(b) Identifies any assets that are key to satisfying decision criteria or initial adoption of the branches and sequels listed in the description statement.		
(c) Determines how the enemy might react to the loss of each identified HVT. (Consider his ability to substitute other assets as well as the likelihood of adopting branches to the operation.)		
(d) Rank-order HVTs with regard to their relative worth to the enemy's operation and record them as part of the enemy model.		
(e) Identifies any changes in value by phase of the operation and makes the necessary annotations.		
(4) Evaluates the enemy models for completeness and relevant patterns of behavior in their area of expertise.		
(5) Consolidates enemy model input and updates the enemy doctrinal template and patterns of operation.		
c. Identifies enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities, supporting missions, and other actions that can influence friendly operations. (Intelligence officer [S2] section).		
(1) Establishes initial enemy mission, enemy capabilities, and initial doctrinal template notional overlays using common tactical picture (CTP). (S2 section of digital equipped units).		
(2) Reviews enemy capabilities and recommends changes to the S2 based upon BOS-related analysis. (staff sections).		
d. Develops situation templates that graphically depict doctrinal enemy dispositions given terrain constraints in the area of operations (AO) and area of interest (AOI) should the enemy adopt a particular course of action (COA). (S2 section).		
e. Establishes order of battle (OB) files and historical enemy records if not provided by higher headquarters. (S2 section).		
f. Evaluates the current OB files for completeness and accurate enemy composition, strength, and dispositions. (staff sections).		
g. Evaluates the historical records for relevance. (staff sections).		
h. Identifies information gaps and submits request for information (RFIs) to the higher headquarters S2 or BOS representative as appropriate. (staff sections).		
i. Recommends updates to the doctrinal template by establishing BOS doctrinal template notional overlays based upon the enemy identification analysis and enemy past operations. (determined in previous step). (staff sections of digital equipped units).		
6. BN/TF S2, with assistance from the staff, provides executive officer (XO) a consolidated staff assessment of enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities.		
a. Describes enemy tactics.		
b. Identifies those HVTs critical to the completion of the enemy commander's operations.		
c. Identifies enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities, supporting missions, and other actions that can influence friendly operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Provides a refined doctrinal template as required. 7. BN/TF S2 section disseminates the results of evaluating the enemy to staff and subordinate units. Note: Traditionally the enemy evaluation is disseminated via the intelligence estimate, but the unit may use means best suited to the situation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1000)

    (FM 71-2)   (FM 7-20)   (FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
    (FM 7-85)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an attack by fire (ABF). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The unit received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the ABF IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF prevents the enemy from withdrawing or repositioning if the intent includes fixing the enemy. The BN/TF inflicts casualties until the enemy is combat ineffective if the intent is enemy destruction. The BN/TF prevents the enemy from engaging friendly forces, if the intent is enemy suppression. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly forces are lost due to fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Includes human intelligence [HUMINT] and signal intelligence [SIGNIT]).		

2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Assign sectors of fire and or engagement areas to each company to provide complete coverage of the enemy defensive positions or avenues of approach.
    b. Designate control measures for massing, distributing, and shifting direct and indirect fires.
    c. Allocate space to allow positioning to engage the enemy.
    d. Designate measures for front, flank, and rear security, and contact points or other coordination measures to ensure coordination between companies.
    e. Provide for maximum use of hide positions and natural fighting positions before initiation of the attack.
    f. Designate measures to hide movement and occupation, and deceive the enemy about the intent of the operation.
    g. Detail requirements for ABF preparation.
Note: Possible preparations include reconnaissance, preparation of routes, security of movement routes, firing positions before the movement of the main body, and stocking of Class V items.
    h. Specify movement instructions into initial attack and supporting positions.
    i. Integrate Class III and V re-supply to support continuation of the attack.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

j. Plan close air support (CAS) and include mission requirements in the attack guidance matrix (AGM) and the high payoff target list (HPTL) as input in Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS). (fire support officer [FSO])
     k. Issue order and graphics to subordinate elements.
         (1) Conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to verify understanding of the commander's intent and concept of the operation.
 	
 3. BN/TF prepares for the ABF.
     a. Prepares for movement and occupation of positions.
 Note: Preparation time must provide for leader reconnaissance, route and position designation and preparation, completion of fire plans, and positioning of class V.
         (1) Selects attack positions that provide adequate cover and concealment and allow the BN/TF to effectively engage the enemy.
     b. Detects all enemy elements on movement routes and on all front and flank approaches to the position arrival of the main body and updates enemy situation.
     c. Employs operations security (OPSEC).
 	
 4. BN/TF moves to and occupies initial positions.
     a. Arrives in position at the designated time.
     b. Prevents enemy observation or disruption of the movement to, occupation, and setup of the position.
     c. Establishes front, flank, and rear security and ensures coordination among adjacent elements within 10 minutes of arrival.
 	
 5. FSO uses AFATDS to plan and employ indirect fires.
     a. Selects and occupies positions affording clear observation of the enemy force.
     b. Employs suppressive fires against the enemy to allow the BN/TF to occupy the ABF position(s).
     c. Employs indirect fires to suppress, obscure, or destroy the enemy force.
 	
 6. BN/TF conducts attack and/or counterattack by fire.
     a. Determines location of enemy elements.
     b. Keeps a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy position.
         (1) Orients subordinate elements and focus and distribute direct fires against identified enemy elements.
         (2) Adjusts direct fires to destroy enemy element(s).
         (3) Adjusts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy vehicles or positions.
         (4) Coordinates fires enabling the movement of friendly elements or when desired target effect on the enemy has been achieved.
         (5) Directs subordinate elements as required.
     c. Alternates ABF positions to prevent massed enemy fires on a single position.
     d. Adjusts ABF positions if necessary.
     e. Ceases fire once the enemy is destroyed or indicates surrender.
     f. Sends SPOTREPs and updated SITREPS and makes recommendations to higher headquarters as necessary.
 	
 7. The BN/TF complies with the ROE, Mission Instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1000	Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1018A	Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1045	Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1054	Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1099	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1108	Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1117	Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1180	Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1189	Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1261	Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2045	Develop the Collection Management Plan (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4027	Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4036	Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5045	Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5072	Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5117	Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6018	Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6036	Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6045	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6054	React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6063	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1009)

      (FM 100-55)   (FM 21-60)   (FM 24-35)
      (FM 24-35-1)   (FM 3-34.2)   (FM 5-71-2)
      (FM 71-2)   (FM 7-20)   (FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
      (FM 7-85)

                   ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

                   COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The BN/TF encounters an obstacle, enemy position, or enemy force and reports the situation to higher headquarters. Higher headquarters issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a bypass and directs the unit to avoid becoming decisively engaged. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the bypass IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or guidance from higher headquarters. The BN/TF conducts the bypass without being detected, without being delayed by the obstacle, and without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy force. The BN/TF employs intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets to conduct an area reconnaissance. The BN/TF ensures the bypass affords routes away from the enemy positions, obstacles, and fields of fire. If detected, the BN/TF employs obscuring or screening smoke and/or indirect fires to enable maneuver and/or suppress or destroy enemy elements. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Distributes location and description of obstacle and/or enemy force throughout the BN/TF.
    b. Notifies the higher headquarters.
    c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.
       (1) Identifies bypass route(s).
       (2) Identifies tentative security and support by fire positions as required.
       (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.
    d. Employs ISR assets to conduct an area reconnaissance.
       (1) Determines nature of enemy or obstacle contact, including size, location, composition, and other factors
       (2) Identifies bypass route(s) that affords adequate cover and concealment and/or intervening distance, preventing the enemy from effectively obstructing and or engaging BN/TF elements.
       (3) Ensures that terrain along the bypass supports the BN/TF movement.
       (4) Submits spot reports (SPOTREPs) and SITREPs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Organizes the unit to accomplish the mission.		
3. BN/TF prepares for the bypass.		
a. Positions forces IAW the plan.		
b. Assigns bypass routes that provide protection from the fires of the enemy antiarmor weapons and an order of march for each route.		
c. Ensures bypass affords routes away from the enemy positions, obstacles, and fields of fire.		
d. Ensures terrain along the bypass will support the maneuver of the unit.		
e. Plans additional security measures such as employment of screening or obscuring smoke if adequate cover and concealment or intervening distance are not available.		
f. Issues a FRAGO and supporting mission graphics.		
g. Follows up FRAGO with text and graphics to higher headquarters and to companies.		
4. BN/TF executes the bypass.		
a. Uses appropriate formation and or movement technique.		
b. Maintains the momentum of advance.		
c. Avoids detection and or delay if possible.		
d. Marks bypass as required.		
e. Identifies and reacts to enemy forces along the route.		
f. Initiates the following when encountering an enemy force. (bypass not possible).		
(1) Fixes the enemy force as necessary.		
(2) Conducts tactical movement or maneuver along the route or axis focusing on the following considerations.		
(a) Uses appropriate movement technique or formation.		
(b) Calls for and adjusts indirect fire and smoke to screen movement past the enemy obstacle and or position as required.		
(c) Avoids decisive engagement if possible.		
g. Initiates the following when encountering an enemy position. (bypass not possible).		
(1) Establishes a base of fire to suppress the enemy and prevent him from repositioning any part of his force for use elsewhere.		
(2) Calls for and adjusts indirect fires to suppress the enemy.		
(3) Employs or calls for obscuring or screening smoke to facilitate the maneuver of the rest of the unit.		
(4) Coordinates maneuver to prevent BN/TF from becoming decisively engaged.		
h. Initiates the following when encountering an obstacle. (bypass not possible).		
(1) Maneuvers to suppress and obscure any enemy forces overwatching the obstacle.		
(2) Reduces the obstacle. (supported by engineers if possible).		
(3) Creates lanes through the obstacle.		
(4) Marks lanes as required.		
(5) Provides guides to lead the main body through the obstacle.		
(6) Disseminates breach lane graphic.		
Note: Engineer elements from the main body support the breach effort by creating lanes, improving the marking of lanes, and guiding the main body through the obstacle.		
i. Immediately assesses the situation after completing the bypass or reacting to contact.		
(1) Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) Reports to the higher headquarters.
  (a) Reports completion and location of the bypass route.
  (b) Reports situation after contact with the enemy.
(3) Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
(4) Treats and evacuate casualties.
 	
5. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.
  a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
  b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
 	
6. BN/TF continue operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1252.07-IOTE	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1018A)

(FM 100-20)	(FM 19-15)	(FM 19-40)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-98)
(FM 90-10(HTF))	(FM 90-10-1)	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a cordon and search for insurgents and sympathizers at the location and time specified. The unit is provided an interpreter(s). Army aviation assets are available. Explosive ordinance demolition (EOD) assets are available. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit has engineer assets based on doctrine, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). Higher headquarters has a field artillery battalion in DS. The unit has priority of fires. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit conducts the cordon and search in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes a cordon of the designated area without being detected by the insurgents or sympathizers. The unit conducts the search and captures all insurgents and enemy material within the cordon. The unit establishes clear abort criteria. The unit complies with the ROE and or ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The use of enemy in this training and evaluation outline (T&EO) is synonymous with insurgent, sympathizer, and or other hostile force.		
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Includes human intelligence [HUMINT] and signal intelligence [SIGNIT]).		

* 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
Note: Should involve the analysis of aerial imagery, photographs, or any other detailed information about the building(s) or other urban terrain for which the unit is responsible.
        (1) Obtain maps and diagrams.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Obtain maps of subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes.		
(b) Obtain diagrams of underground water, sewer, and utility systems.		
(c) Obtain diagrams of electrical power stations and emergency services.		
(d) Obtain diagrams of fuel supply and storage facilities.		
(e) Obtain maps and diagrams of mass communications facilities such as cellular phones, computer hubs, radio, and telephone.		
(f) Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to maneuver.		
c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the urban area.		
(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		
(2) Define the urban area environment and describe its effects.		
(a) Identify covered and concealed approaches to the urban area.		
(b) Identify mobility corridors to include air, building level, intra-building level, street level, and subterranean level.		
(c) Identify buildings protected by the law of land warfare such as churches, medical facilities, historic monuments, and other facilities dedicated to arts and sciences, provided they are not being used for military purposes.		
(d) Identify areas and facilities restricted by current ROE.		
(e) Identify stadiums, parks, open fields, playgrounds, and other open areas that may be used for landing zones, holding areas, or engagement areas.		
(f) Identify construction sites that may contain barrier materials.		
(g) Identify significant fire hazards and locations of other hazardous material (HAZMAT), such as hazardous industrial waste.		
(h) Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to employ maximum combat power due to the need to minimize damage and rubbling effects.		
(i) Identify other logistics infrastructure that could effect the operation such as sources of potable water, bulk fuel and transport systems, and so forth.		
(3) Evaluate the enemy.		
(4) Determine enemy courses of action (COAs).		
(a) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (S2).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of the enemy.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems if applicable.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems if applicable.		
(4) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and mines.		
(5) Include known or suspected use of biological and or chemical weapons.		
e. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Divide the area to be searched into zones.		
(2) Organize subordinate companies or elements.		
(a) Designate a cordon element. (Surrounds and secures the area during the search.)		
(b) Designate a search element. (Executes the search mission.)		
(c) Designate a reserve element as required. (Assists the other two elements if needed.)		
g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS) as required.		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(b) Plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations as required.		
(c) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(d) Plan fires beyond the objective area to support a hasty attack or defense.		
(e) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective area.		
(f) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination including supporting CS and CSS plaunitorms and units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Address each task and assign responsibility when developing the SOEO.		
(f) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force if required.		
(g) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(b) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(c) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions in the objective area.		
(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.		
(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
h. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions in the objective area.		
i. Establish clear abort criteria.		
j. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. Unit prepares for the mission.		
a. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive R&S.		
c. Conducts precombat checks.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
e. Coordinates with the local civilian police force to conduct the actual search if their numbers and training permit.		
f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
g. Positions forces to support the plan.		
5. Unit conducts the mission.		
a. Conducts movement into the area to be searched.		
(1) Departs IAW movement tables and in the configuration specified by the OPORD.		
(2) Approaches the area by stealth maintaining security during movement without being detected by the enemy.		
(3) Moves during the hours of darkness, if possible, using as many different routes as possible into the area.		
b. Establishes the cordon. (cordon element).		
(1) Moves rapidly into the positions by stealth IAW TSOP, order, and or guidance from higher headquarters.		
(2) Surrounds the area simultaneously to prevent escape of insurgents and to block any reinforcements. If this is not possible, uses observed fire to cover that portion not covered by soldiers. (Normally conducted during limited visibility if possible.)		
(3) Positions elements in overwatch or blocking positions to support the cordon and isolate the search area from reinforcements.		
(4) Establishes a foothold in the assigned area.		
(5) Secures the objective area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Adjusts cordon as required and closes gaps using patrols or a series of observation posts to prevent enemy from escaping.		
(7) Orients on individuals evading the search.		
(8) Establish checkpoints and roadblocks to control movement into and out of search area.		
(9) Protects the force conducting the actual search.		
c. Conducts the search. (search element).		
(1) Announces the search.		
(2) Conducts the search of suspected insurgents and or sympathizers, supplies, and equipment with the least inconvenience to the populace using one of three methods.		
(a) Assembles inhabitants in a central location if they appear to be hostile. (This method provides the most control and simplifies the search and interrogation; however, taking inhabitants away from their dwellings encourages looting and ill feelings.)		
(b) Restricts inhabitants to their homes. (This prohibits civilian movement and discourages looting, but makes control and interrogation difficult.)		
(c) Controls the heads of households. (Reduces looting and ensures the search teams do not steal anything; this is the best method of searching since it is less disruptive to the inhabitants.)		
(3) Searches all underground and underwater areas.		
(4) Uses observed fire to cover any gaps in the cordon.		
(5) Inspects any freshly excavated ground. (It could be a hiding place.)		
(6) Uses mine detectors to locate metal objects underground and underwater.		
(7) Considers any enemy material found to be booby trapped until inspection proves it safe.		
(8) Prevents hostile forces from outside the search area from joining the inhabitants of the area and interfering with the search.		
* 6. Unit commander or designated representative controls the unit's rate of search and directs reorganization as needed.		
a. Employs the reserve to assist cordon and search elements as the situation requires.		
b. Reports the progress of the unit to the higher headquarters commander.		
c. Enforces the ROE and or ROI.		
7. Unit consolidates as necessary.		
8. Unit reorganizes as necessary.		
9. Unit secures captured insurgents or enemy as required.		
a. Uses the least force to detain the insurgents.		
b. Turns the insurgents over to the local police as soon as the situation allows.		
10. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.		
11. Unit withdraws from the search area.		
12. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
13. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1225	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1225.07-IOTE	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5135.07-IOTE	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5171.07-IOTE	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
71-1-2324.07-C712	Plan Checkpoints and or Roadblocks (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. The OPFOR destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts combat service support operations, and or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1027)

(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 20-3)	(FM 20-32)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 5-102)	(FM 5-103)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 6-30)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-90)
(FM 7-91)	(FM 90-2)	(FM 90-7)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend from battle positions at a specific location and time. Higher headquarters has positioned security forces forward of the BN/TF defensive positions. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters and units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All supporting overlays and graphics are available through ABCS. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF defends in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance and/or intent. The BN/TF defends from mutually supporting positions that are prepared, occupied, and reconnoitered before the "defend not later than (NLT)" time specified in the order. The BN/TF adjusts positions as necessary to cover target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas (EAs), and or sectors of fire, based on the common operating picture (COP). The BN/TF defeats the enemy force by massing fires into engagement areas. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: When defending, forces can be arrayed using the techniques of defense from a battle position, reverse slope defense, defense of a strong point, perimeter defense, and so on.		
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
    c. Organize operations around a framework of a security zone, a main battle area (MBA), a rear area, and a reserve.
    d. Conduct IPB.
NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it should be conducted collaboratively among echelons.
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(4) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).		
(5) Evaluate the enemy.		
(6) Determine enemy courses of actions (ECOAs).		
e. (D) Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and post it in ASAS. (S2)		
(1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs).		
(2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(3) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve.		
(4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
f. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information between the BN/TF and higher headquarters.		
(4) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.		
(5) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (S2).		
(6) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force.		
(7) Determine enemy vulnerabilities.		
g. (D) Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning, ensuring synchronization between ASAS and other digital systems.		
h. Organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Organize operations around a framework of a security zone, a main battle area (MBA), a rear area, and a reserve.		
(2) Determine how to array forces (forward defense or defense in depth) based on higher commander's guidance and factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(3) Determine the task organization and command and control (C2) arrangement of subordinate headquarters.		
i. Develop a defensive scheme of maneuver.		
(1) Define how the commander intends to mass the effects of direct and indirect fires with obstacles and use of terrain to shape the battlefield and defeat or destroy the enemy.		
(2) Develop a security plan that is integrated with higher and adjacent elements and allocates/positions security forces with appropriate CS elements.		
(3) Develop a plan that focuses on a defeat mechanism.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Analyze forces and available assets with particular attention to obstacle assets and fire support assets.		
(5) Define the engineer and fire support allocation in terms of capability.		
(6) Determine what effect forces, fires, and obstacles must achieve on enemy formations by avenue of approach and how these effects will support the defeat mechanism.		
(7) Define the task(s) and purpose for subordinate units.		
(8) Establish priorities for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS).		
(9) Develop obstacle and fire support plans concurrently with the defensive force array, again defining a task, purpose, and end state for each obstacle and target in keeping with the commander's stated essential fire support tasks (EFSTs) and intended obstacle effects.		
(10) Identify where and when the commander will accept risk.		
(11) Identify critical events and, if required, phases of the operation.		
(12) Designate the main effort with associated task(s) and purpose(s), by phase.		
(13) Designate supporting efforts with associated task(s) and purpose(s), defining how they support the main effort.		
(14) Designate supporting efforts with associated task(s) and purpose(s), defining how they support the main effort.		
(15) Define ISR and security operations.		
(16) Provide for withdrawal of the security force.		
(17) Outline the movement and positioning of forces.		
(18) Describe the concept of fires.		
(19) Integrate obstacle effects with maneuver and fires.		
(20) Identify the maneuver options that may develop during execution.		
(21) Identify means and mechanisms for exploiting defensive success.		
j. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Designate priority of fires. (Initial priority of fires is normally allocated to forward security forces.)		
(b) Plan targets along enemy reconnaissance avenues of approach.		
(c) Plan to engage approaching enemy formations at maximum range with indirect fires and close air support (CAS) if available.		
(d) Plan the transition of fires to support the main battle area (MBA) fight.		
(e) Develop clear triggers to adjust fire support coordinating measures (FSCMs) and priority of fires.		
(f) Coordinate the movement of indirect fire assets to support the EFSTs.		
(g) Ensure movement of indirect fire assets is coordinated with the scheme of maneuver.		
(h) Develop and rehearse the observation plan to ensure all targets are adequately observed.		
(i) Ensure integration of fires in support of critical obstacle effects.		
(j) Plan fires to support actions in the rear.		
(2) Plan engineer support and scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) to create detailed terrain analysis products. (BN/TF engineer)		
(a) Plan the transition to countermobility and survivability efforts in detail.		
(b) Plan to site situational obstacles early.		
(c) Plan multiple locations for situational obstacles to support depth and flexibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(d) Plan and coordinate adequate security for obstacle emplacement.		
(e) Integrate triggers for obstacles in the decision support template (DST).		
(f) Coordinate obstacle effort along unit and adjacent unit boundaries.		
(g) Plan the countermobility effort to shape the enemy's maneuver into positions of vulnerability.		
(h) Plan adequate mobility support for withdrawing security forces, the reserve, and repositioning of MBA forces.		
(i) (D) Develop obstacle plans that are synchronized with maneuver and fires and maximize all resources and update overlay data.		
(3) (D) Plan and coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support, if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations through use of Forward Area Air Defense Command, Control, and Intelligence (FAAD2CI). (air defense officer [ADO])		
(a) Plan to position ADA assets and radar along air avenues of approach to provide early detection and engagement of enemy aircraft.		
(b) Plan all-around air defense protection to the unit with mutual supporting and over lapping fires. (Weight fires toward likely air avenues of approach.)		
(c) Plan primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions to support defensive positions in depth, delays, and counterattacks.		
(d) Establish priorities of air defense protection based on the criticality and vulnerability, of BN/TF units and the enemy.		
(e) Define process to disseminate early warning to all task force elements by FM voice communications and/or FBCB2..		
(4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than recon assets from the division cavalry squadron) will be corps assets task organized to the division and will not likely be FBCB2 equipped.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BDE ISR plan.		
(b) Position NBC reconnaissance assets (if available) forward in the security zone and at likely locations for enemy employment of chemical agents. (Support to counterattacking forces is especially important.)		
(c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities.		
(d) Establish decontamination priorities of support and effort.		
(e) Integrate the employment of smoke to support the defense.		
(f) Ensure all subordinate elements clearly understand changes in the priority of support, task organization, and positioning of NBC assets.		
(5) (D) Plan combat service support (CSS) operations.		
(a) Plan the sustainment of security forces.		
(b) Address casualty evacuation, equipment recovery, and resupply for security forces.		
(c) Plan the resupply of critical classes of supply for security forces to support a quick transition from their security mission to follow-on missions.		
(d) Provide the security forces with prepositioned stocks of critical supplies in depth of the security zone.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Determine and or plan primary and alternate main supply routes (MSRs) to support the full depth of the defense.		
(f) Coordinate MSRs to avoid interfering with maneuver or obstacle plans.		
(g) Stockpile limited amounts of Class III and Class V supplies in centrally located battle positions (BPs) or locations.		
(h) Institute a C2 plan for CSS vehicles in the unit area.		
(i) Plan to send forward push packages of critically needed supplies on a scheduled basis.		
(j) Plan resupply during limited visibility to reduce the chances of enemy interference.		
(k) Plan to dispatch maintenance assets forward to reduce the need to evacuate equipment.		
(l) Plan for the use of aviation assets (if available) to resupply critical supplies.		
(m) Plan for the increased demand on decontaminants and mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear.		
(n) Plan for high expenditure of Class V and increased demand of barrier materials (Class IV).		
(o) Plan casualty evacuation.		
(p) Coordinate with higher headquarters' civil affairs (CA) teams concerning refugee control and CSS requirements.		
k. Conduct risk management.		
3. (D) BN/TF commander and staff publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the BN/TF via FBCB2.		
a. (D) Task-organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission. (S3)		
NOTE: The BN/TF S3 must ensure the S6 receives task organization data in time to coordinate the unit task reorganization (UTR, the reorganization of the digital network to correspond with changes in unit organization) change within the BN/TF. The UTR change should be avoided during operations as it will result in the affected units' FBCB2 systems re-booting, causing a temporary loss of SA (a few minutes) and the need to verify connectivity and address groups. This does not prohibit commanders from changing task organization during operations, but leaders must recognize this message traffic will continue to flow IAW the original or previous task organization.		
4. Conduct confirmation briefings between the BN/TF commander, the staff, and subordinate leaders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
5. BN/TF conducts mission preparation.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive ISR.		
c. Conducts precombat checks and inspections.		
(1) Inspects and monitors the progress of defensive preparations to ensure they met the commander's timeline.		
(2) Seeks to identify shortfalls early enough to shift resources.		
(3) Pays special attention to the array of forces, fires, and obstacles along flanks, seams between subordinate elements, or other areas that enemy will likely try to penetrate.		
(4) Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
(5) Use the preparation time prior to the enemy's attack to build the strongest defense possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
(7) Positions forces.		
6. BN/TF occupies and improves defensive positions.		
a. Initiates occupation of defensive positions.		
(1) (D) Issues a FRAGO and graphics to subordinate elements using FBCB2. At a minimum, the FRAGO includes the following:		
(a) Includes changes in friendly and enemy situations.		
(b) Includes changes to BN/TF tasks and purpose and general changes to the scheme of maneuver that facilitate occupation of the defensive position.		
(c) Includes changes to task organization, including digital UTR changes and effect times		
(2) Enters defensive positions from the flank or rear.		
(3) Ensures that subordinate unit sectors of fire and observation overlap and connect with adjacent units.		
(4) (D) Designates defensive control measures and disseminates the information to subordinate commanders via FBCB2.		
(a) Identifies tentative locations for each company's primary defensive position.		
(b) Identifies TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions.		
(c) Identifies tentative locations for the subordinate unit's supplementary defensive position.		
(d) Identifies TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for supplementary defensive position.		
(5) Adjusts positions as necessary to cover TRPs, EAs, and or sectors of fire.		
(a) Verifies direct fire plans and proofs positions.		
(b) Adjusts primary positions as required.		
(c) Adjusts alternate and supplementary positions as required.		
(d) Selects covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions as necessary.		
(6) Completes occupation of the defensive positions.		
(a) Implements changes based on guidance from higher headquarters.		
(b) Implements changes based on guidance from higher headquarters.		
(c) Directs the BN/TF to continue improvement of the defensive position with additional steps of a deliberate occupation as time permits.		
(7) Maintains security by employing scout platoon, observation posts (OPs), and so forth.		
(8) Provides security for elements working forward in sector such as engineers emplacing obstacles.		
(9) Secures obstacles.		
(10) Observes templated enemy landing zones (LZs).		
(11) Clears possible enemy OP locations.		
b. Continues to prepare and or upgrade defensive positions.		
(1) Marks vehicle positions.		
(2) Marks fire control measures in the engagement area.		
(3) Digs survivability positions within the unit's capability.		
(4) Position ammunition caches.		
(5) Emplaces protective obstacles.		
(6) Reports progress to higher headquarters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Conducts reconnaissance and surveillance operations in front of defensive positions.		
(1) Designates reconnaissance group.		
(2) Designates overwatch elements for the reconnaissance group.		
(3) Moves to a vantage point to view defensive position from enemy's perspective if possible.		
(4) Uses covered and concealed routes.		
(5) Moves through engagement area and identifies all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and defensive terrain.		
(6) Evaluates any lateral routes.		
(7) Determines how the enemy will attack.		
(a) Considers how the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets.		
(b) Considers where and when the enemy will change formations or establish support by fire positions.		
(c) Considers where and when the enemy will conduct a breach and or assault.		
(d) Considers where and when the enemy will commit follow-on forces.		
(e) Considers effects of the enemy's combat multipliers.		
(f) Considers enemy's rate of movement		
(8) (D) Updates digital systems to incorporate the following information:		
(a) Updates fire plans and sector sketches and annotates graphic control measures.		
(b) Plans fire support in depth, anticipating the enemy scheme of maneuver and shaping the battlefield.		
(c) Emplaces observers in vantage points within the defensive area that affords a clear view of the AO.		
(d) Establishes BN/TF fire support control measures (FSCM) that correspond to METT-TC.		
(e) Identifies alternate and successive defensive positions.		
(f) Designates covered and concealed routes between alternate and successive defensive positions.		
(g) Designates, marks, and records key locations (in the defensive positions and in the engagement area (EA).		
7. (D) BN/TF engineer integrates obstacles into the defense and disseminates obstacle overlay(s) via FBCB2.		
a. Identifies any obstacles the BN/TF has been tasked to emplace by higher headquarters.		
b. Specifies obstacle locations with defined task and purpose for each.		
c. Provides security during emplacement.		
d. Directs obstacle emplacement.		
e. Identifies locations for massing direct and indirect fires.		
f. Identifies and marks the necessary control measures on the ground.		
g. Identifies tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage.		
h. Sites obstacle group(s).		
(1) Ensures obstacles are covered by direct and indirect fires.		
(2) Identifies dead space.		
(3) Marks general limits and orientation of obstacle groups.		
(4) Sites and reports obstacles.		
(a) Reports completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover or transfer.		
(b) Reports grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. (D) Distributes plans and routinely updates information throughout preparation phase to the BN/TF and higher/adjacent units via FBCB2.		

8. BN/TF reports occupation of defensive positions to higher headquarters
    a. Submits the completed obstacle and fire plans.
    b. (D) Updates the COP.		

9. BN/TF executes the defense.
    a. Withdraws OPs and unit security elements.
    b. Engages the enemy (in the security area or MBA) on order or when engagement criteria are met.
        (1) Employs and focuses direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability. (subordinate leaders).
        (2) Shifts, refocuses, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements. (unit commander and company commanders).
        (3) Employs indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan to achieve desired effects on the enemy force. (BN/TF commander, FSO, and/or company commanders).
        (4) Adjusts indirect fires. (BN/TF commander, FSO, and/or company commanders).
          (a) Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements.
          (b) Lifts indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved.
        (5) (D) Issues additional FRAGOs in FBCB2 or via FM to direct or task subordinate elements as required. (BN/TF commander / S3).
        (6) (D) Issues FRAGO in FBCB2 or via FM to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the specified displacement criteria.
          (a) Moves to alternate, supplementary, or successive defensive positions as required to maintain flexibility and survivability. (subordinate units).
        (7) (D) Sends spot reports (SPOTREPs) and situation reports (SITREPs) through FBCB2, and make recommendations to higher headquarters. (BN/TF commander).
    c. Commits reserves for counterattack IAW the higher commander's intent.
Note: Once committed, the counterattack force is normally the main effort.
        (1) Recognizes enemy deception efforts aimed at causing the premature or indecisive commitment of the reserve.
        (2) Uses decision points and named areas of interest (NAIs) developed during construction of the decision support template to trigger execution of a counterattack.
        (3) Defeats the targeted enemy force before being attacked by subsequent enemy forces.
        (4) Seeks to avoid the enemy's strength. (The most effective attacks are against exposed enemy flanks and or rear).
        (5) Takes advantage of the protection and concealment offered by the terrain and or limited visibility.
        (6) Attacks with long-range direct fires from concealed positions synchronized with all available fire support.
        (7) Launches counterattacks around other committed units rather than through them when feasible.
        (8) Provides for the removal of the reserve or the integration of the reserve into the defense after the counterattack.		

*10. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. (D) Continuously monitor and update the COP and the progress of the operation in ABCS. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. 11. BN/TF consolidates as necessary. 12. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary. 13. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 14. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 15. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required. 16. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-6081.07-IOTE	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1036A)

(FM 100-40)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 34-130)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)
(FM 90-7)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to delay at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The delay may be either to delay in sector or to delay forward of a specified line or position for a specified time. The enemy can attack with ground forces (mounted or dismounted) supported by indirect fire and air. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, and, an air defense platoon in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit conducts the delay in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The unit maintains contact with the enemy. The unit is not penetrated or bypassed by more than a platoon-sized enemy force. The unit delays by combining maneuver, fires, obstacles, and avoidance of decisive engagement to achieve the commander's intent. The unit complies with the ROE and or ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
     a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
 	
     b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
 	
     c. Express the commander's visualization of anticipated enemy actions integrated with the staff's intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
 	
     d. Conduct IPB.
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
 	
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Determine ground and air mobility corridors and avenues of approach to determine where the enemy can maneuver to reach his likely objectives.		
(b) Determine the size of the enemy force that each avenue of approach and mobility corridor can support.		
(c) Identify limitations on friendly maneuver and positioning.		
(d) Identify restrictive terrain that may slow the enemy's attack, cause a separation of forces, create difficulties in command and control, or force the enemy to conduct defile drills. (for example, narrow valleys, passes, or urban areas).		
(e) Identify terrain such as choke points that create potential enemy vulnerabilities and opportunities for friendly attack.		
(f) Identify terrain that canalizes enemy formations into areas that provide defending forces good fields of fire, observation, and flanking fires.		
(g) Identify areas dominated by key or defensible terrain that allows massing of fires.		
(h) Include adjacent sectors and areas forward and to the rear of the unit.		
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(a) Identify the limitations and opportunities the environment offers on the potential operations of friendly and enemy forces.		
(b) Determine the effects of weather on operations.		
(c) Include general characteristics of the terrain, as well as such factors as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics if applicable.		
(d) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(a) Determine enemy size.		
(b) Identify enemy location(s).		
(c) Determine enemy composition.		
(d) Identify potential enemy vulnerabilities based on the enemy's tactics, friendly and enemy capabilities, the terrain, and the weather.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Reflect the enemy's flexibility and true potential.		
(b) Include likely enemy objectives.		
(c) Include enemy composition, disposition, and strength.		
(d) Include schemes of maneuver to include routes, formations, locations and times the enemy may change formations, possible maneuver options available to the enemy, and key decision points.		
(e) Include time and distance factors for the enemy's maneuver through the area of operation.		
(f) Include likely employment of all enemy combat multipliers including artillery, air defense, obstacles, chemical strikes, dynamic obstacles, and attack aircraft.		
(g) Include likely use of all enemy reconnaissance assets and organizations to include likely reconnaissance objectives, reconnaissance avenues of approach, times to expect enemy reconnaissance, and likely locations of enemy observers and observation posts.		
(h) Include identification and likely locations of enemy high-value targets (HVTs), such as artillery formations, reserves, and command and control (C2) nodes.		
(i) Include likely locations, compositions, strength, employment options, and time and distance factors for enemy reserves and follow-on forces.		
(j) Include locations of enemy decision points that determine selection of a specific COA.		
e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs).		
(2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(3) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve		
(4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).		
f. Choose the best method of delay (delay on successive or delay on alternate positions) or combine the methods during factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
g. Employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
(4) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.		
(5) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (S2).		
(6) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force.		
(7) Determine enemy vulnerabilities.		
(8) Select delay positions that provide the following: (a) Provide good observation and long-range fields of fire. (b) Provide covered or concealed routes of movement to the rear. (c) Provide a road network or areas providing good cross-country trafficability. (d) Provide existing or reinforcing obstacles to the front and flanks.		
h. Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning.		
i. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. (1) Determine force array and allocation of combat multipliers, particularly fires and obstacles. (2) Determine the task organization and command and control (C2) arrangement of subordinate headquarters.		
j. Develop the scheme of maneuver.		
(1) Define how the unit intends to mass the effects of direct and indirect fires with obstacles. (2) Define how the unit intends to use terrain to shape the battlefield and inflict maximum damage on the enemy IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent. (3) Analyze forces and available assets with particular attention to obstacle assets and fire support assets.		
(4) Define the engineer and fire support allocation in terms of capability.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Determine what effect forces, fires, and obstacles must achieve on enemy formations by avenue of approach and how these effects will support the commander's intent.		
(6) Define the task(s) and purpose for subordinate units.		
(7) Establish priorities for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS).		
(8) Develop obstacle and fire plans concurrently with the force array, again defining a task and purpose for each obstacle and target in keeping with the commander's stated essential fire support tasks (EFSTs) and intended obstacle effects.		
(9) Identify where and when the commander will accept risk.		
(10) Identify critical events and, if required, phases of the operation.		
(11) Define R&S and security operations.		
(12) Outline the movement and positioning of forces.		
(13) Describe the concept of fires.		
(14) Integrate obstacle effects with maneuver and fires.		
(15) Identify the maneuver options that may develop during execution.		
(16) Identify means and mechanisms for exploiting success within the commander's intent.		
k. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Designate priority of fires. (Initial priority of fires is normally allocated to forward security forces.)		
(b) Plan targets along enemy reconnaissance avenues of approach.		
(c) Plan to engage approaching enemy formations at maximum range with indirect fires and close air support (CAS) if available.		
(d) Develop clear triggers to adjust fire support coordinating measures (FSCMs) and priority of fires.		
(e) Coordinate the movement of indirect fire assets to support the EFSTs.		
(f) Ensure indirect fire asset movements are coordinated with the scheme of maneuver.		
(g) Develop and rehearse the observation plan to ensure all targets are adequately observed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(h) Ensure integration of fires in support of critical obstacle effects.		
(i) Plan fires to support a withdrawal, defense, or counterattack IAW the commander's intent.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.)		
(a) Plan the transition to countermobility and survivability efforts in detail.		
(b) Plan to site situational obstacles early.		
(c) Plan multiple locations for situational obstacles to support depth and flexibility.		
(d) Plan and coordinate adequate security for obstacle emplacement.		
(e) Integrate triggers for obstacles in the decision support template (DST).		
(f) Plan the countermobility effort to shape the enemy's maneuver into positions of vulnerability.		
(g) Plan adequate mobility support for the withdrawal or countermobility.		
(h) Develop obstacle plans that are synchronized with maneuver and fires and maximize all resources.		
(3) Plan and or coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support if available.		
(a) Plan to position ADA assets and radar along air avenues of approach to provide early detection and engagement of enemy		
(b) Plan all-around air defense protection to the unit with mutual supporting and over lapping fires. (Weight fires toward likely air avenues of approach.)		
(c) Plan primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions to support defensive positions in depth, delays, and counterattacks.		
(d) Plan to reposition ADA assets to replace lost assets or mass against significant air threats.		
(e) Establish priorities of air defense protection based on the criticality, vulnerability, and recuperability of units and the enemy.		
(4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC R&S assets (if available) into the unit's R&S plans.		
(b) Position NBC R&S assets (if available) forward in the security zone and at likely locations for enemy employment of chemical agents. (Support to counterattacking forces is especially important.)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities.		
(d) Establish decontamination priorities of support and effort.		
(e) Integrate the employment of smoke to support unit maneuver.		
(f) Coordinate the use of artillery smoke and plan mechanized smoke. (ensure they are synchronized with other actions).		
(g) Ensure all subordinate units clearly understand changes in the priority of support, task organization, and positioning of NBC assets.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Address casualty evacuation, equipment recovery, and resupply for security forces.		
(b) Plan the resupply of critical classes of supply for security forces to support a quick transition from their security mission to follow-on missions.		
(c) Provide the security forces with prepositioned stocks of critical supplies in depth of the security zone.		
(d) Stockpile limited amounts of class III and class V supplies in centrally located battle positions (BPs) or locations.		
(e) Plan to send forward push packages of critically needed supplies on a scheduled basis.		
(f) Plan resupply (if required) during limited visibility to reduce the chances of enemy interference. Plan equipment evacuation.		
(g) Plan for high expenditure of class V and increased demand of barrier materials. (class IV).		
(h) Plan casualty evacuation.		
l. Identify special procedures and positions for limited visibility operations.		
m. Plan for and coordinate battle handover and rearward passage of lines.		
n. Integrate deception into the overall plan.		
o. Conduct risk management.		
p. Specify the degrees of risk.		
* 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. Unit prepares for the delay. a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive R&S.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Selects routes to provide maximum mobility and emplaces obstacles and or enhance existing obstacles to degrade the mobility of the enemy.		
(2) Selects and marks routes to the rear and subsequent delay positions		
c. Prepares subsequent positions.		
d. Designates routes to allow withdrawal for subordinate elements between battle positions (BPs) or exits in each sector.		
e. Ensures all obstacles are covered by fire to slow the enemy and to allow for disengagement by friendly units.		
f. Coordinates fires between the moving element and adjacent, supporting, and overwatch elements.		
g. Coordinates the withdrawal of unit elements with higher headquarters and adjacent units.		
h. Conducts precombat checks and inspections.		
(1) Inspect and monitor the progress of defensive preparations to ensure they met the commander's timeline.		
(2) Seeks to identify shortfalls early enough to shift resources.		
(3) Pays special attention to the array of forces, fires, and obstacles along flanks, seams between subordinate elements.		
(4) Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
j. Positions forces.		
(1) Assigns troop sectors, battle positions, or a combination thereof, consistent with the commander's intent and factors of METT-TC.		
(2) Occupies the initial delay position as a defensive position.		
(3) Positions the reserve in an area so that it can counterattack, move rapidly to reinforce, or cover the withdrawal of forward subordinate elements.		
(4) Locates the main command post (CP) and combat trains to the rear and behind next rearward phase line.		
(5) Locates the command group forward to control the operation.		
k. Prepares to delay at the time prescribed in the higher headquarters order.		
5. Unit executes the delay.		
a. Uses clearly defined decision points or events to trigger withdrawals.		
b. Ensures the security forces provide early warning on high-speed approaches and cover secondary approaches between BPs.		
c. Exploits and reinforces existing obstacles within the limits of available materials, time, and personnel to aid withdrawal.		
d. Provides forces with sufficient lethality and fire support to cover the withdrawal of forward elements.		
e. Engages the enemy at the greatest range using long-range fires.		
f. Forces the enemy to deploy into assault formations repeatedly against successive BPs.		
g. Maintains contact with the enemy's main body.		
h. Maintains flank security.		
i. Achieves depth in the delay.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

6. Avoids decisive engagement, thus allowing the unit to withdraw and maneuver according to plan.
    a. Approves subordinate element disengagement criteria. (commander).
    b. Conducts internal passage of lines as required. (subordinate elements).
    c. Ensures the unit is not bypassed or penetrated by more than a platoon-size element.		

7. Unit leaders assess the operation.
    a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
 	
    b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		

8. Unit withdraws, defends, or counterattacks IAW the order and or guidance from higher headquarters.		
9. Unit complies with ROE and or ROI.		
10. Unit consolidates as necessary.		
11. Unit reorganizes as necessary.		
12. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
13. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.		
14. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
15. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1063.07-IOTE	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1144	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1144.07-IOTE	Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes actions on contact IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts fire and maneuver to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1045)

(FM 71-2)	(FM 100-40)	(FM 100-55)
(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)
(FM 20-32)	(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct either a stationary or moving guard mission. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All overlays and graphics are provided in digital format and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE)and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the guard mission IAW TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF destroys the enemy fixing force, maintains contact with enemy forces, and reports activity in the area of operations (AO). The BN/TF maintains continuous surveillance of assigned avenues of approach in the AO under all visibility conditions. The BN/TF impedes and harasses the enemy using available systems and support. The BN/TF causes the enemy main body to deploy, and then reports its direction of movement. The BN/TF does not allow enemy ground elements to pass through the security area undetected and unreported. The BN/TF destroys or causes the withdrawal of all enemy reconnaissance patrols. The BN/TF maintains contact with the main body and any other security forces operating on its flanks. The BN/TF uses all available means, including decisive engagement, to prevent the enemy from penetrating to a position where it could observe and engage the main body. The BN/TF operates within the range of the main body's fire support weapons. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order, or anticipate a new mission, and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
NOTE: The battle staff continuously updates the Joint Common Database (JCDB) and common operating picture (COP), and refines courses of action (COA) using information and intelligence from higher headquarters' feeds and intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations.
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
       (1) Mark general trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and named areas of interest (NAI).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Mark current and subsequent locations of the protected force.		
(3) Identify tentative defensive positions and or observation posts (OPs) positions.		
(4) Identify route(s) to and from defensive positions and or OPs.		
(5) Identify target reference points (TRPs).		
(6) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach.		
(7) Mark tentative dismount points if required.		
c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).		
NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it must be conducted collaboratively among echelons to build a more complete COP and improve SU.		
(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		
(2) Define the battlefield environment.		
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process.Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU and supports the planning process throughout the duration of the mission.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous information flow between higher headquarters and the BN/TF.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Assign sufficient combat power to defeat, repel, or fix the lead elements of an enemy ground force before they can engage the main body with direct fires.		
(2) Dispatch liaison officers (LNOs) as required.		
(3) Coordinate for additional combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) as required.		
(4) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS).		
(5) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support using Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect BN/TF closure on the objective.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Develop engagement criteria.		
(d) Plan obscuration fires as required. (Mission, enemy, time and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations. METT-TC dependent).		
(e) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(g) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(h) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.		
(2) (D) Plan engineer support and scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).		
(a) Address each task and assign responsibility when developing the SOEO.		
(b) (D) Utilize digital and photographic terrain visualization products from higher headquarters and ensure they are available and distributed to incorporate in planning breach sites, possible bypasses, possible and known enemy positions and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(d) (D) Disseminate confirmed OBSTINTEL immediately to all BN/TF elements, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units, via FBCB2.		
(e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than recon assets from the division cavalry squadron) will be corps assets task organized to the division and will not likely be FBCB2 equipped.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) (D) Develop a plan to immediately disseminate NBC threats, once detected, throughout the BN/TF.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) (D) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis, and disseminate information that identifies planned and active decontamination site locations via FBCB2.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). (a) Ensure adequate AD of the BN/TF guard element and main body.. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan CSS. (a) Assign priority of CSS support. (b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (c) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (d) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (e) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (f) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. h. Conduct risk management. i. Determine disengagement and displacement criteria. j. Designate on order battle positions (BPs) along route of march to block likely avenues of approach. k. Develop movement plan. l. Select or designate methods of communications. m. Develop contingency plans for chance enemy contact. n. Develop control measures to facilitate control and prevent fratricide. (1) Designate boundaries, contact points and other measures to promote mutual support and prevent gaps between subordinate elements. o. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary. p. Coordinate battle handover with the protected force. * 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for the mission. a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. (1) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (2) Determine location, orientation, type, depth, and composition of obstacles. (3) Determine locations of secure bypasses around obstacles. (4) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of reserves. c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Positions forces as per the plan. * 5. BN/TF exercises command and control (C2) of the guard mission. a. Coordinates and synchronizes actions of subordinate elements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Positions itself where it can best control subordinate elements.		
c. (D) Directs elements to move, on order, to phase lines (PLs), or to successive positions and screen, using FBCB2 to communicate orders and graphics to subordinate elements.		
d. Uses FRAGOs and graph control measures to direct subordinate element moves.		
e. Ensures elements report when they occupy a new screen line or observation post (OP), cross phase lines, or reach march objectives.		
6. BN/TF executes assigned guard mission.		
a. Conducts a passage of lines if required.		
b. Destroys the enemy advance guard.		
c. Maintains contact with enemy forces and reports activity in the area of operations (AO).		
d. Maintains continuous surveillance of assigned avenues of approach in the AO under all visibility conditions.		
e. Impedes and harasses the enemy using available systems and support.		
f. Causes the enemy main body to deploy, and then reports its direction of movement.		
g. Allows no enemy ground element to pass through the security area undetected and unreported.		
h. Destroys or causes the withdrawal of all enemy reconnaissance patrols.		
i. Maintains contact with the main body and any other security forces operating on its flanks.		
j. Uses all available means, including decisive engagement, to prevent the enemy from penetrating to a position where it could observe and engage the main body.		
k. Operates within the range of the main body's fire support weapons		
l. Conducts advance guard, if assigned.		
Note: Generally a BN/TF is given an advance guard mission when the brigade is moving as part of the division main body in a movement to contact. The advance guard is normally conducted as a movement to contact.		
(1) Coordinates and conducts the rearward passage of lines of the covering force.		
(2) Reduces obstacles to create lanes or improves existing lanes as required to support maneuver of the main body.		
(3) Eliminates enemy forces bypassed by the covering force.		
(4) Coordinates and conducts a forward passage of lines through the covering force and fixes enemy forces in the enemy's main defensive positions to allow the friendly main body to maneuver.		
m. Conducts rear guard, if assigned.		
Note: When a division conducting a movement to contact requires rear security, a BN/TF may be given a rear guard mission.		
(1) Maintains contact with the main body.		
(2) Protects the rear of the main body and all CS and CSS elements in the main body by conducting an attack, a defense, or a delay.		
(3) Follows the same axis of advance as the protected force at a distance prescribed by the main body commander.		
(4) Displaces to successive battle positions (BPs) along phase lines (PLs) or delay lines in depth as the main body moves (if conducting rear guard for a moving force).		
n. Conducts flank guard, if assigned.		
Note: A BN/TF is given a flank guard mission when a division is conducting a movement to contact.		
(1) Guards a stationary force.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Establishes defensive positions in assigned BPs or within its assigned AO and establishes a screening element forward of these positions.		
(b) Attacks, defends to defeat, fixes enemy ground forces before they can engage the main body, or conducts a delay. (Actions are based on the commanders intent and the situation.)		
(2) Guards a moving force.		
(a) Monitors potential enemy avenues of approach for as long as they threaten the main body.		
(b) Maintains contact with the protected force's main body.		
(c) Reconnoiters the area between the main body and the flank guard's routes of advance.		
(d) Conducts IPB specifically supporting the flank guard AO and develops an ISR plan with specific reconnaissance objectives. (S2)		
(3) Regulates its movement along the route of advance by the pace of the main body, the distance to the objective, and the enemy situation.		
(4) Uses one of three methods of movement based on the enemy situation.		
(a) Uses successive bounds.		
(b) Uses alternate bounds.		
(c) Uses continuous march.		
(5) Occupies blocking positions if the protected main body stops moving.		
7. BN/TF completes guard mission.		
a. Conducts battle handover with protected force and or follow-on guard force.		
b. Consolidates as necessary.		
c. Reorganizes as necessary.		
d. Secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
e. Treats and evacuates casualties.		
f. Withdraws or displaces as directed or IAW protected force or higher headquarters commander's intent.		
8. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment, as required.		
9. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6000	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6000.07-IOTE	Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.   Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1054)

(<u>FM 90-13</u>)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a combat mission. Reconnaissance identified a water obstacle that must be crossed to accomplish the mission. The water obstacle exceeds the fording depth of unit vehicles and cannot be bypassed. The water obstacle width does not exceed 15 meters. The banks require little or no preparation. Enemy resistance is weak. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting is in accordance with applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.
  Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the hasty water crossing IAW TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF develops a deception plan to deny the enemy any crossing information and to maintain surprise. The BN/TF performs intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) early in the military decision-making process (MDMP). The BN/TF establishes security, and maintains traffic control IAW TSOP and FRAGOs. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order, or anticipate a new mission, and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
    c. Perform intelligence surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) early in the planning process. When available, maximize use of digital terrain products and imagery sources, such as unmanned aerial vehicle [UAV] and satellite imagery available from higher headquarters.
Note: Reconnaissance tasks include gathering information without disclosing plan, finding access and exit roads, determining width of river or gap, river velocity, depth, and condition of slope, finding cover and concealment on near and far sides, and locating obstacles and enemy defenses.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Include engineers in reconnaissance of the crossing area and sites to provide technical expertise on the characteristics of the crossing site and reduction of any obstacles the enemy has employed.		
(2) Locate, mark, and report suitable crossing sites.		
(a) Determine the amount and type of enemy resistance.		
(b) Mark approaches and crossing sites.		
(c) Inspect captured bridges and abutments.		
(d) Determine the eight-digit grid to primary and alternate crossing sites.		
d. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).		
NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it must be conducted collaboratively among echelons.		
(1) Define the battlefield environment.		
(2) Describe battlefield effects.		
(3) Evaluate the enemy.		
(4) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and disseminate to subordinate unit.		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(4) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(5) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
f. Develop the ISR plan.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a continuously updated COP and detailed picture of the enemy situation.		
(2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
(4) Plan to conduct reconnaissance of both the near-side and far-side.		
g. Develop a flexible crossing plan.		
(1) (D) Task-organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission. (S3)		
(2) Include multiple approach routes from AAs to crossing sites.		
(3) Include lateral routes to redirect units to alternate crossing sites.		
(4) Include alternate crossing sites and staging areas to activate if enemy action closes the primaries.		
(5) Include crossing equipment held in reserve to replace losses or open alternate sites.		
(6) Designate crossing control measures, such as assembly areas and sequence for crossing and update overlay data.		
(7) Plan fire support using the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS). (fire support officer [FSO])		
(a) Synchronize fires on crossing sites to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces defending the crossing site(s).		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires to cover the crossing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the crossing site (s).		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan fires beyond the crossing site(s) to support a hasty attack or defense.		
(g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the crossing site(s). (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.)		
(h) Plan indirect fires and coordinate close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions at the crossing to prevent fratricide.		
(8) Plan engineer support and scheme of engineer operations (SOEO). (BN/TF engineer)		
(a) Utilize terrain visualization products from higher headquarters and distribute information regarding the crossing site(s), planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Disseminate confirmed OBSTINTEL to all BN/TF elements immediately.		
(d) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(e) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required and transmit location(s) and dimensions to all elements.		
(9) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than division cavalry squadron chemical recon) will be corps assets task organized to the division.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to immediately disseminate NBC threats, once detected, throughout the BN/TF using FM communications.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis, and disseminate information that identifies planned and active decontamination site locations.		
(10) Plan and coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) protection of crossing site, if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations. (air defense officer [ADO]).		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions at the crossing site(s).		
(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.		
(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks.		
(11) Plan CSS operations. (S4/S1)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Integrate movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements, ensuring locations/routes.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR operations.)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by providing immediate forward support once the BN/TF secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
(12) Select far side objectives that provide protection of crossing elements.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the BN/TF.		
4. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept of the operation.		

5. BN/TF prepares for crossing.
 a. Verifies digital and voice communications prior to movement.
 b. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
 c. Conducts extensive ISR of near and far-sides.
 d. Conducts preparation for combat.
 e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are consistent with the unit commander's intent and concept.
 f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
 g. Positions forces.
   (1) Occupies designated support-by-fire positions. (support element).
   (2) Occupies designated positions. (main body and assault element).		

6. Designated BN/TF element(s) secures near side. a. Detects all enemy elements on far side and reports location. b. Clears near bank of all defending and or delaying forces. c. Prepares the entry site for crossing by positioning guides and marking area to facilitate crossing before arrival of main body.		
7. Designated BN/TF element(s) assaults across the water obstacle and secures far side. a. Secures an area large enough so the enemy cannot bring direct fires on crossing force and, when feasible, observed indirect fire. b. Secures an area on the far side that is large enough to allow dispersion. c. Prepares far-side as necessary.		
8. BN/TF emplaces bridging assets.		
9. BN/TF executes crossing. a. Crosses in specified sequence. b. Maintains dispersion. c. Enforces camouflage, noise, thermal, electromagnetic, and light discipline. d. Maintains traffic control. e. Occupies designated positions. f. Establishes security.		
10. BN/TF recovers bridging assets IAW the order and or commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.		
12. BN/TF consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.		
13. BN/TF secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
14. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
15. BN/TF reports status to higher headquarters.		
16. BN/TFcontinues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1009.07-IOTE	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1063)

(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to linkup with another unit. Area of operations (AO), boundaries, restrictive fire lines (RFLs), axis of advance, general linkup point, chain of command upon linkup, and other control and coordination measures are established. The BN/TF and linking unit will move to the designated site.   All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) when equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF performs the linkup in IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance, and conducts necessary planning, coordination, and liaison. The BN/TF moves to the linkup site, avoids decisive engagement, and conducts the linkup as directed. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: It is possible for a digital force and an analog force to conduct operations together such as a linkup. Because of the differences in data transfer and or communications equipment, liaison must take place early and continuously.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order, or anticipate a new mission, and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Establish liaison between the two units during planning and continue liaison throughout the operation.
    b. Develop a plan in conjunction with the other unit. (If joint development is not possible, ensure extensive coordination of the plan.)
    c. Conduct conventional map reconnaissance.
        (1) Identify primary and alternate linkup sites.
        (2) Identify rally point(s).
        (3) Identify an assembly area (AA) short of the linkup site. (The distance between the AA and linkup site is determined by the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC].)
        (4) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Identify routes to and from linkup site, AA, and or rally point(s).		
(6) Mark tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps.		
d. Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a continuously updated and detailed picture of the enemy, allowing the BN/TF to maintain situational understanding (SU).		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous information flow between higher headquarters and the BN/TF.		
e. (D) Task-organize units within the BN/TF to accomplish the mission. (S3)		
NOTE: The BN/TF S3 must ensure the S6 receives task organization data in time to coordinate the unit task reorganization (UTR, the reorganization of the digital network to correspond with changes in unit organization) change within the BN/TF. The UTR change should be avoided during operations as it will result in the affected units' FBCB2 systems re-booting, causing a temporary loss of SA (a few minutes) and the need to verify connectivity and address groups. This does not prohibit commanders from changing task organization during operations, but leaders must recognize this message traffic will continue to flow IAW the original or previous task organization.		
(1) Designate a quartering party to recon and secure AA.		
f. Develop a scheme of maneuver and control measures. (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, routes, and zones of actions).		
g. (D) Coordinate digital, visual, and or voice recognition signals. (far and near).		
h. (D) Coordinate frequencies, call signs, codes, and tactical internet architecture.		
i. Confirm command relationship with the linkup unit. (Who is in charge if the enemy attacks during linkup? Who is in charge after linkup?)		
j. Develop contingency plans.		
(1) Address enemy contact before, during, or after linkup.		
(2) Address how long to wait at the linkup site.		
(3) Address what to do when element(s) do not arrive at the linkup site.		
k. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) (D) Plan and coordinate indirect fire support and/or close air support, if available, using the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS). (fire support officer [FSO])		
(b) Assign direct fire responsibilities.		
(c) Position fire support assets to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(2) (D) Plan engineer support and develop the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO. (BN/TF engineer)		
(a) (D) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, and defending enemy positions or key weapons.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate brigade and infantry unit-wide dissemination including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks in depth throughout the BN/TF AO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to respond to a changing situation.		
(f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for security.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than division cavalry squadron chemical recon) will be corps assets task organized to the division and may not be FBCB2 equipped.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets in the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the BN/TF.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) (D) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate information that identifies planned and active decontamination site locations using FBCB2.		
(4) (D) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations (air defense officer [ADO]).		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the BN/TF during movement.		
(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) (D) Plan CSS operations utilizing FBCB2 to track unit status and maintain SU. (S4)		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Determine fuel requirements.		
(c) Determine duration of the operation.		
(d) Determine operations after the linkup is completed. (For example, attack, withdraw, and defend.)		
(e) Determine transportation requirements for special purpose forces. (For example, air assault, special operation forces [SOF], and so on.)		
(f) Identify lines of communication (LOC) security requirements.		
(g) Plan evacuation of equipment, wounded, and enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
(h) Plan resupply of stationary unit if applicable.		
l. (D) Share SA data between linkup units.		
(1) (D) Include intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products and data in ASAS.		
(2) Include digital and or conventional overlays.		
(a) Indicate primary and alternate link up points.		
(b) Indicate checkpoints and waypoints information.		
(c) Indicate unit disposition and activity. (friendly and enemy).		
(d) Indicate location and type of obstacles.		
(e) Indicate fire control measures including restricted fire line (RFL).		
(f) Indicate communications security (COMSEC) requirements and procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) (D) Include internet provider (IP) address databases if applicable.		
(4) (D) Include Single Channel and Ground Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) and Enhanced Position Locating and Reporting System (EPLRS) hop set data.		
(5) (D) Include positioning of EPLRS position server links.		
(6) (D) Include modifications to digital communications structure if applicable.		
m. Coordinate a passage of lines as required.		
n. Conduct risk management.		
3. (D) BN/TF commander and staff publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the BN/TF via FBCB2.		
4. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
5. BN/TF prepares for linkup.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive ISR operations.		
c. Conducts preparation for combat.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent and concept.		
e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
f. Dispatch quartering party to secure AA.		
g. Positions forces as necessary.		
6. (D) BN/TF commander maintains SU to ensure conduct of the operation is consistent with established control measures.		
7. BN/TF executes the linkup.		
a. Begins movement to the AA short of the linkup site.		
(1) Secures and occupies AA.		
b. (D) Establishes and maintains digital and or FM voice communications throughout the operation.		
c. (D) Tracks progress in FBCB2.		
d. Avoids enemy contact if possible.		
(1) Destroys or bypasses and reports enemy that cannot be avoided.		
e. Makes adjustments to the linkup plan based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(1) Slows movement to maintain positive control and to prevent fratricide.		
f. Conducts the following actions. (The FIRST element to arrive at the linkup point).		
(1) Sends a security team forward to secure the linkup point. (may be mounted or dismounted).		
(a) Clears the immediate area around the linkup point.		
(b) Marks the linkup point with the coordinated recognition signal.		
(c) Positions security team in covered and concealed positions that overwatch the linkup point.		
(d) Returns to the linkup AA and establishes a perimeter defense.		
(e) Establishes a perimeter defense.		
g. Conducts the following actions: (The SECOND element to arrive at the linkup point).		
(1) Moves to a position short of the linkup point and gives any predetermined signals to the unit already at the linkup site.		
(2) Moves to the linkup site and conducts near recognition.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Security team leads second element to the first element's established perimeter. (4) Second element is incorporated into the perimeter defense.		
8. Chain of command is established based on the higher command's order.		
9. BN/TF continues the mission IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, and/ or guidance from higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1009.07-IOTE	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1081.07-IOTE	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1090.07-IOTE	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1090A	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-1216.07-IOTE	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1072)

(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF), is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a movement to contact. Higher Headquarters wants to develop the situation and establish or regain contact with the enemy. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics, area of operation (AO) boundaries, control measures and criteria for attacking, defending, bypassing, delaying or withdrawing. The BN/TF common operating picture (COP) is uncertain. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts a movement to contact, search-and-attack, or the approach march technique, IAW the the order, or higher commander's guidance, and/or the BN/TF TSOP. The BN/TF maintains security while focusing all efforts on finding the enemy and is not surprised by the enemy. The security force locates and fixes the enemy, making contact with the smallest possible element. The commander develops the situation to allow selection and execution of the most advantageous maneuver option (attack, defend, bypass, retrograde). The BN/TF maintains contact with the enemy, complies with the ROE and ROI, and enforces measures to prevent fratricide that are consistent with mission constraints.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. The BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP),
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it must be conducted collaboratively among echelons.
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
        (4) (D) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).
        (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
    d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces and target acquisition assets.		
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct a physical reconnaissance throughout the MDMP.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information between the BN/TF and higher headquarters.		
(4) Sustain the ISR effort throughout planning and preparation phases, updating the plan and orders as required.		
f. (D) Develop a flexible scheme of maneuver integrating multiple decision points (DPs) and triggers into the plan based on probable engagement locations. Incorporates graphics and orders into FBCB2 for dissemination to subordinate units.		
(1) Focus all efforts on finding the enemy by developing a strong reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition effort and through the employment of robust security forces.		
(2) Make contact with electronic means first. If that is not possible, then make contact with the smallest force possible, consistent with protecting the force.		
(3) Task-organize the force and use movement formations that enable the BN/TF to rapidly deploy and attack in any direction.		
(4) Task-organize the force and use movement formations that enable the unit to deploy and attack rapidly in any direction.		
(5) Maintain the ability to mass fires rapidly in any direction.		
(6) Keep forces within supporting distances to facilitate a flexible response.		
(7) Integrate BN/TF security to the front, flank, and rear.		
(8) Maintain contact, once gained, regardless of the maneuver option adopted.		
(9) Enforce reliance on TSOPs and drills to develop the situation and maintain tempo. (The key is to quickly develop the situation, then maneuver to mass available combat power against the enemy once the BN/TF is committed.)		
(10) Develop a flexible scheme of maneuver since the location of the engagement with the enemy is not known. (Flexibility is achieved by incorporating multiple decision points (DPs) and triggers into the plan based upon where engagements are likely.)		
(11) Support the higher commander's concept and intent.		
(12) Avoid mounted movement on terrain restricting maneuver (such as draws, ravines, narrow trails, or steep slopes).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(13) Address actions at known or likely enemy locations.		
(14) Address methods for moving through and crossing dangerous areas.		
(15) Address formation and known locations where the formation will change.		
(16) Address actions and array of forces at the final objective or limit of advance (LOA).		
(17) Address decision points (DPs) and criteria for execution of maneuver options that may develop during execution.		
g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) (D) Plan fire support (FS) using the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS).		
(a) Plan responsive and decentralized fires for each phase of the operation.		
(b) Plan targets based on known or suspected enemy locations and danger areas and to support future operations.		
(c) Refine targets based on the reconnaissance effort as the operation progresses.		
(d) Maximize the use of priority targets along the axis of advance. (Plan triggers to put these targets into effect and cancel them based on the movement of the unit.)		
(e) Ensure immediately responsive fire support to the lead elements by assigning priority of fires to the advance guard.		
(f) Position observers effectively and maximize the use of lead maneuver forces to call for fires since they often have the best view of the enemy. (Observers must understand the essential fire support tasks [EFSTs] for each phase of the operation.)		
(g) Synchronize the movement and positioning of artillery and mortars with the tempo of the unit and the FS requirements.		
(2) (D) Develop engineer operations to support the scheme of maneuver and update engineering overlay data in FBCB2.		
(a) Task-organize engineer forces well forward to support potential breaching operations.		
(b) Allocate additional mobility assets and engineer forces to the advance guard.		
(c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units.		
(e) Ensure terrain visualization products from the higher headquarters terrain section's Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions and or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(f) Maintain the flexibility to mass engineers to breach significant obstacles.		
(g) Plan obstacle belts, obstacle control measures, and situational obstacles to support flank security. (Develop and adjust obstacle locations and triggers for execution based on BN/TF movement and enemy situation.)		
(h) Develop plans for the hand off of marked obstacles, lanes, and bypasses.		
(i) Consider the requirement for route maintenance, clearance, and repair.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(j) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone and or axis.		
(k) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(l) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and defense as required.		
(3) (D) Plan and coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support, if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations through use of Forward Area Air Defense Command, Control, and Intelligence (FAAD2CI). (air defense officer [ADO]).		
(a) (D) Define process to disseminate early warning to all task force elements by FM voice communications.		
(b) Shift and reposition ADA assets based on the unit's movement, selected maneuver option, and changes in the enemy air situation.		
(c) Ensure adequate air defense of BN/TF during movements through choke points, breach lanes, bridges, and restrictive terrain.		
(4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than division cavalry squadron chemical recon) will be corps assets task organized to the division and may not be FBCB2 equipped.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Using the Automated NBC Information System (ANBACIS), develop enemy NBC usage template and a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the BN/TF.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(5) Plan combat service support (CSS).		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate the locations, displacements, and routes of CSS assets to maintain responsive support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(f) (D) Use FBCB2 and Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS), if available, to maintain a continuous CSS estimate during all operations. (Ensure the CSS plan is responsive and flexible enough to support all maneuver options.)		
(g) Plan and coordinate for aerial resupply if available.		
(h) Plan casualty evacuation.		
h. Conduct risk management.		
i. Prepare for the movement to contact.		
(1) Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
(2) Conduct extensive reconnaissance.		
(3) Conduct precombat checks.		
Note: Subordinate elements conduct parallel planning as well as begin preparation for the movement to contact upon receipt of the BN/TF warning order (WARNO).		
(4) Supervise and or inspect subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
(5) (D) Conduct preprogrammed unit task reorganization (UTR) capability in FBCB2. (S3)		
(a) Address actions to cross known danger areas.		
(b) Address the advance guard making contact with a small enemy force.		
(c) Address the advance guard making contact with a large force beyond its capabilities to defeat.		
(d) Address advance guard COA for contact with an obstacle that ISR assets have not identified and reported.		
(e) Address a flank security force making contact with a small force.		
(f) Address a flank security force making contact with a large force beyond its capability to defeat.		
(g) Address actions to report and bypass an enemy force (based on the bypass criteria).		
(h) Address transition into a maneuver option.		
(6) (D) Conduct ISR operations to answer the commander's PIR and report activity via FBCB2 to develop the COP.		
(a) Determine the enemy's strength, disposition, and composition including reserves.		
(b) Determine size, location, and composition of obstacles and seeks bypasses or breach site.		
(c) Determine enemy vulnerabilities.		
(d) Focus on the enemy's security forces forward of the enemy's main defense to locate positions and obstacles along the unit's planned routes of advance.		
(e) Locate restrictive terrain and danger areas.		
(f) Maintain contact once gained.		
j. Prepare to initiate contact or continue the movement to contact at night or other periods of limited visibility.		
3. BN/TF executes approach march technique.		
a. Uses movement formation(s) based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).		
b. Uses designated direction of attack or axis of advance to orient movement.		
c. Selects routes based on IPB and guidance from higher headquarters.		
d. Establishes a security force, advance, flank, and rear guards to protect the main body and enable it to deploy if the enemy attacks.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Develops the situation early, but avoids decisive engagement. (Once found; the enemy must be kept under surveillance and his activity reported.)
   f. Establishes a defense and seeks guidance from higher headquarters, if the Battalion reaches the objective or LOA before making contact with the enemy.
   g. Assists battalions by ensuring adequate supporting fires, mobile transportation assets, timely and accurate intelligence, and reserve forces are available.
   h. Ensures ISR elements provide security to the front during the approach march. (ISR elements must be far enough ahead of the advanced guard to provide adequate warning and sufficient space to maneuver the main body.)
   i. Ensures flank security elements operate far enough out to prevent the enemy from placing direct or observed indirect fires on the main body.
   j. Ensures advance guard operates forward of the main body to provide security for the main body and ensure the main body's uninterrupted advance.
     (1) Protects the main body from surprise attack and develops the situation to protect the deployment of the main body when it is committed to action.
     (2) Maintains SU of the entire BN/TF, especially the ISR element.
     (3) Reports enemy contact to the BN/TF commander.
     (4) Collects and reports all information about the enemy.
     (5) Selects tentative fighting positions for following unit units.
     (6) Attempts to penetrate enemy security elements and reach and or identify the enemy main force.
     (7) Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance forces.
     (8) Prevents enemy ground forces from engaging the main body with direct fires.
     (9) Locates, bypasses, or breaches obstacles along the main body's axis of advance.
     (10) Executes tactical tasks such as fix, contain, or block against enemy forces to develop the situation for the main body, within the commanders intent.
     (11) Ensures that all pertinent information is available to the rest of the BN/TF.
   k. Ensures combat elements of the main body are prepared to rapidly deploy and attack, giving them the flexibility to maneuver rapidly to a decisive point on the battlefield in order to destroy the enemy or seize terrain.
     (1) Maintains intelligence of the advance guard's activities.
     (2) Contains the bulk of the unit's combat elements and is arrayed to achieve all-round security.
     (3) Uses standard formations that allow the Battalion commander, to rapidly shift combat power to the decisive point on the battlefield.
     (4) Uses movement formation(s) based on METT-TC.
     (5) Uses designated direction of attack or axis of advance to orient movement.
     (6) Uses aerial maneuver, fire support assets and situational obstacles to fix the enemy in his current positions.
     (7) Execute an attack.
     (8) Execute a defense.
     (9) Terminates the movement to contact when the final objective or limit of advance has been reached.
 	
4. BN/TF conducts search and attack technique.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Specifies where each company will operate, establishes measures to consolidate company and or platoon before the attack, and establishes fire control measures for each company.		
b. Seeks the most likely locations of enemy base camps, command and control sites, and mortars.		
c. Designates a main effort and supporting efforts that enable the unit to maintain the amount of flexibility the situation dictates.		
(1) Designates the company most likely to make contact as the main effort and prepares to shift the main effort rapidly, if necessary.		
(2) Uses the reserve, priority of fire, and other available assets to weight the main effort.		
d. Uses AFATDS to plan concept of fire support and coordinates for responsive indirect fire in support of all CO/TMs. (FSO)		
e. Ensures CSS supports the main effort while remaining responsive to the rest of the unit.		
f. Finds the enemy.		
(1) Allows for decentralized actions and small-unit initiative.		
(a) Uses squads and platoons to locate the enemy.		
(b) Uses multiple coordinated patrols to seek out and find the enemy.		
g. Fixes the enemy using one of the following:		
(1) Prepares to block enemy escape and or reinforcement routes for another unit's attack.		
(a) Maintains contact and positions its forces to isolate and fix the enemy so another unit can attack.		
(2) Conducts an attack. (The BN/TF conducts an attack IAW with the commander's guidance given sufficient relative combat power.)		
(3) Maintains surveillance. (The BN/TF employs stealth techniques to avoid detection and report enemy order of battle and activities.)		
(a) Remains undetected and follows the enemy. (The unit does this to continue to gather information. It must be careful to avoid an enemy ambush.)		
h. Finishes the enemy rapidly.		
(1) Conducts an attack, or maneuvers to block enemy escape routes while another unit conducts the attack.		
(2) Conducts ISR activities and collects information to develop the situational template while remaining undetected.		
(3) Employs indirect fire or close air support (CAS) to destroy the enemy. (The BN/TF may establish an area ambush and use indirect fire and/or CAS to direct enemy movements into the ambush area.)		
* 5. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.		
a. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		
* 6. Upon making contact with the enemy, the BN/TF commander decides on a COA. (See unit task: Fight a Meeting Engagement.)		
a. Evaluates the situation		
b. Deploys, redeploys, and or redirects reconnaissance assets to gain information.		
c. Considers a bypass.		
d. Considers a hasty ambush.		
e. Considers a force-orientated attack.		
f. Considers an attack by fire (ABF).		
g. Considers a defense.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Issues a FRAGO and graphics for the selected COA to subordinate elements.		
7. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.		
8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.		
9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.		
10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
11. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
12. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1243	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1243.07-IOTE	Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.   Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
               HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1081)

(FM 100-40)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 34-130)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)		

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M		(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:				T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) requiring the conduct of a passage of lines. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the passage of lines IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF coordinates with the stationary unit and ensures that the stationary unit establishes control and secures ample maneuver space within the area of operation (AO) to allow the BN/TF to pass through and form into a combat formation prior to gaining contact with the enemy. The BN/TF selects routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt stationary unit defenses, and provide for rapid movement. The BN/TF reconnoiters passage points and passage lanes. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. There are no fratricide incidents.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Units involved in a passage of lines must conduct detailed coordination to ensure they maintain positive control to avoid fratricide, speed the passage, and reduce vulnerability to enemy attack.		
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF ensures that the stationary unit establishes control, and secures the AO far enough to its front so the BN/TF can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force.		

* 3. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order, begin the military decision-making process (MDMP)
     a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
     b. (D) Conduct a map reconnaissance.
        (1) Select routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt stationary unit's defense, and provide for rapid movement.
     c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) (D) Define the battlefield environment as it relates to the operation using line-of-sight analysis capability in FBCB2 and conventional terrain analysis tools.		
(a) Determine ground and air mobility corridors and avenues of approach to determine where the enemy can maneuver.		
(b) Determine the size of the enemy force that each avenue of approach and mobility corridor can support.		
(c) Identify limitations on friendly maneuver and positioning.		
(d) Identify areas dominated by key or defensible terrain that allows massing of fires.		
(e) Include adjacent sectors and areas forward and to the rear of the BN/TF.		
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(a) Identify the limitations and opportunities the environment offers on the potential operations of friendly and enemy forces.		
(b) Determine the effects of weather on operations.		
(c) Include general characteristics of the terrain, as well as such factors as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics if applicable.		
(d) Produce or update the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(a) Determine size of enemy operating in the area of operations if not known.		
(b) Identify enemy location(s).		
(c) Determine enemy composition.		
(d) Identify potential enemy vulnerabilities based on the enemy's tactics, friendly and enemy capabilities, the terrain, and the weather.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of actions (ECOAs).		
(a) Reflect the enemy's flexibility and true potential.		
(b) Include enemy composition, disposition, and strength.		
(c) Include time and distance factors for the enemy's maneuver through the area of operation.		
(d) Include likely employment of all enemy combat multipliers including artillery, air defense, obstacles, chemical strikes, dynamic obstacles, and attack aircraft.		
(e) Include likely use of all enemy reconnaissance assets and organizations to include likely reconnaissance objectives, reconnaissance avenues of approach, times to expect enemy reconnaissance, and likely locations of enemy observers and observation posts.		
(f) Include identification and likely locations of enemy high-value targets (HVTs), such as artillery formations, reserves, and command and control (C2) nodes.		
(g) Include likely locations, compositions, strength, employment options, and time and distance factors for enemy reserves and follow-on forces.		
(h) Include locations of enemy decision points that determine selection of a specific COA.		
d. (D) Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and post it in ASAS. (S2)		
(1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs).		
(2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(3) Include the location of the enemy reserve.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan and employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop an ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU and supports the planning process.		
(2) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.		
(3) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force.		
(4) Determine enemy vulnerabilities.		
f. Organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission. (S3)		
g. (D) Conduct detailed coordination with the stationary unit using FBCB2, MCS, and/or conventional means.		
(1) Coordinate the exchange of intelligence and combat information.		
(2) Coordinate the current friendly dispositions and tactical plans, especially deception and obstacle plans.		
(3) Coordinate direct and indirect fires and close air support (CAS) plans.		
(4) Coordinate any necessary maneuver control measures and graphics not directed by the higher headquarters.		
(a) Include boundary changes.		
(b) Include the battle handover line (BHL).		
(c) Include emergency combat service support (CSS) points.		
(d) Include assembly area(s) to be used.		
(e) Include firing positions for artillery, air defense, and other units.		
(5) Coordinate long-range and short-range recognition symbols and vehicle markings to reduce the probability of fratricide.		
(6) Coordinate transfer of the (AO) from one BN/TF to the other at a time and place designated by higher command or mutual agreement.		
(7) Coordinate provisions for movement control.		
(a) Include contact points.		
(b) Include start and release points.		
(c) Include route selection. (primary and alternate).		
(d) Include priorities for using routes and facilities.		
(e) Include passage points.		
(f) Include provision for guides.		
(8) Coordinate the ISR plan.		
(9) Coordinate communication architectures, digital systems, connectivity, recognition signals, and communication procedures and requirements, to ensure both elements maintain a common operational picture.		
(10) Coordinate security measures during the passage.		
(a) Include nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance or biological detection systems.		
(11) Coordinate fires, obscurants, and any other combat, combat support (CS), and CSS provided by the stationary unit.		
(12) Coordinate measures to reduce both units' vulnerability to attack by enemy weapons of mass destruction (WMD).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(13) Coordinate operational security measures required before or during the passage.		
(14) Coordinate allocation of terrain.		
(15) Coordinate air defense cover up to and forward of the BHL.		
(16) Coordinate logistics support that will be provided by the stationary unit, especially fuel and maintenance.		
4. BN/TF prepares for the passage.		
a. Collocates command posts (CPs) for ease of coordination, making direct liaison, updating plans, and sending changes to higher headquarters. (if CPs were not collocated earlier in the planning process).		
b. Conducts extensive ISR operations.		
(1) Locates contact points on movement routes.		
(2) Reconnoiters passage points and passage lanes.		
(3) Verifies passage lanes are clear of obstacles, provide concealment, and allow for integration with the plan of attack or withdrawal.		
(4) Locates AA and or attack positions that do not interfere with stationary units but provide cover, concealment, and enough room for dispersion.		
c. Obtains updated ISR information from the stationary unit and higher headquarters.		
d. (D) Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
e. (D) Transmits changes in the plan to the stationary unit.		
f. Employs operational security measures to deny the enemy information.		
g. Verifies communications. (internal and with the stationary unit).		
h. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
j. Positions forces IAW the plan.		
(1) Verifies contact points (CPs).		
(2) Verifies overlay data received from stationary unit.		
5. BN/TF conducts the passage.		
a. Provides the element designated to coordinate and assist the passage with a list of elements to go through designated passage points.		
b. Moves along assigned routes and or lanes.		
c. Displays correct visual signals.		
d. Identifies and sends contaminated units to designated passage points.		
e. Passes through the stationary unit without halting.		
f. Maintains cover, concealment, and dispersion.		
g. Imposes minimum radio traffic or radio listening silence for forward passage.		
h. Orients subordinate elements and completes closure.		
6. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.		
a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.		
b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		
7. BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.		
8. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.		
9. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
10. BN/TF processes captured documents and equipment as required.		
11. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1063	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1063.07-IOTE	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2045	Develop the Collection Management Plan (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009.07-IOTE	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5135.07-IOTE	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5207.07-IOTE	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6009.07-IOTE	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
           HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1090A)

(<u>FM 71-2</u>)	(FM 100-40)	(FM 100-5)
(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 44-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 6-30)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)
(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-91)	

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to assist an element with a passage of lines at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The passing unit's commander and key staff representatives have co-located with the unit command post to facilitate planning the passage and establishing a common situational understanding. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, and an air defense platoon in direct support (DS). Close air support (CAS) sorties have been allocated to the unit to facilitate the passage. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit conducts a passage of lines as the stationary unit in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes control and secures the area of operations (AO) far enough to its front so that the passing force can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force. The unit plans and coordinates the passage of lines with the passing unit. The unit provides security of the line of departure (LD) of the passing unit until it is able to assume that responsibility. The unit conducts battle handover without giving the enemy the advantage. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. The unit establishes control and secures the AO far enough to its front so that the passing force can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force.		

3. The two units involved develop a passage plan.
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
       (1) Select routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt defense, and provide for rapid movement.
    c. Conduct IPB.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		
(2) Define the battlefield environment.		
(a) Determine ground and air mobility corridors and avenues of approach to determine where the enemy can maneuver.		
(b) Determine the size of the enemy force that each avenue of approach and mobility corridor can support.		
(c) Identify limitations on friendly maneuver and positioning.		
(d) Identify areas dominated by key or defensible terrain that allows massing of fires.		
(e) Include adjacent sectors and areas forward and to the rear of the unit.		
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(a) Identify the limitations and opportunities the environment offers on the potential operations of friendly and enemy forces.		
(b) Determine the effects of weather on operations.		
(c) Include general characteristics of the terrain, as well as such factors as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics if applicable.		
(d) Produce or update the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(a) Determine size of enemy operating in the area of operations if not known.		
(b) Identify enemy location(s).		
(c) Determine enemy composition.		
(d) Identify potential enemy vulnerabilities based on the enemy's tactics, friendly and enemy capabilities, the terrain, and the weather.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).		
(a) Reflect the enemy's flexibility and true potential.		
(b) Include enemy composition, disposition, and strength.		
(c) Include time and distance factors for the enemy's maneuver through the area of operation.		
(d) Include likely employment of all enemy combat multipliers including artillery, air defense, obstacles, chemical strikes, dynamic obstacles, and attack aircraft.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Include likely use of all enemy reconnaissance assets and organizations to include likely reconnaissance objectives, reconnaissance avenues of approach, times to expect enemy reconnaissance, and likely locations of enemy observers and observation posts.		
(f) Include identification and likely locations of enemy high-value targets (HVTs), such as artillery formations, reserves, and command and control (C2) nodes.		
(g) Include likely locations, compositions, strength, employment options, and time and distance factors for enemy reserves and follow-on forces.		
(h) Include locations of enemy decision points that determine selection of a specific COA.		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs).		
(2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(3) Include the location of enemy the reserve.		
(4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).		
e. Employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.		
(3) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force.		
(4) Determine enemy vulnerabilities.		
f. Organize to accomplish the mission.		
g. Coordinate the following with the passing unit.		
(1) Coordinate the exchange of intelligence and combat information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Coordinate the current friendly dispositions and tactical plans, especially deception and obstacle plans.		
(3) Coordinate direct and indirect fires and close air support (CAS) plans.		
(4) Coordinate any necessary maneuver control measures and graphics not directed by the higher headquarters. (a) Include boundary changes. (b) Include the battle handover line (BHL). (c) Include emergency combat service support (CSS) points. (d) Include assembly area(s) to be used. (e) Include firing positions for artillery, air defense, and other units.		
(5) Coordinate long-range and short-range recognition symbols and vehicle markings to reduce the probability of fratricide.		
(6) Coordinate when and under what conditions control of the AO transfers from one headquarters to the other if not previously established.		
(7) Coordinate provisions for movement control. (a) Include contact points. (b) Include start and release points. (c) Include route selection. (primary and alternate). (d) Include priorities for using routes and facilities. (e) Include passage points. (f) Include provision for guides.		
(8) Coordinate reconnaissance by elements of the passing unit.		
(9) Coordinate signal operating instruction (SOI) details such as call signs, frequencies, and recognition signals.		
(10) Coordinate security measures during the passage. (a) Include nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance or biological detection systems.		
(11) Coordinate fires, obscurants, and any other combat, combat support (CS), and CSS provided by the stationary unit.		
(12) Coordinate measures to reduce both units' vulnerability to attack by enemy weapons of mass destruction (WMD).		
(13) Coordinate operational security measures required before or during the passage.		
(14) Coordinate allocation of terrain for use by the passing force.		
(15) Coordinate air defense cover up to and forward of the BHL.		
(16) Coordinate logistics support for the passing unit that will be provided by the stationary unit, especially fuel and maintenance. h. Use FRAGOs to control or change actions of subordinate elements. i. Report essential information to higher headquarters, subordinate elements, and other affected units.		
4. Unit prepares for the passage.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Clears a lane through all obstacles from the assembly area (AA) or attack position (AP) through passage lanes or routes.
b. Employ reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) assets to gathers requested information for the passing unit.
c. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
d. Employs operational security measures to deny the enemy information.
e. Verifies communications.
f. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
g. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
h. Positions forces.
   (1) Establishes contact points.
 	
5. Unit conducts the passage.
   a. Establishes contact at contact points.
   b. Stops or delays pursuing enemy at BHL.
Note: The fight is transferred to the unit in position, which assumes responsibility for the BHL.
   c. Passes element through unit positions with no halts.
   d. Provides security of the LD of the forward passing unit until it is able to assume that responsibility.
   e. Engages all enemy elements that can fire on passing unit.
   f. Provides emergency resupply of Class III and VIII items and care of casualties to the passing unit to allow continued movement.
   g. Closes all passage lanes when the passing unit has completed passage.
   h. Reports to higher headquarters upon completion of passage.
 	
6. Unit supports by fire.
   a. Engages and suppresses all enemy elements in line of sight by direct or indirect fires IAW passing unit's fire plan.
   b. Responds to requests for supporting fires from passing elements.
   c. Avoids firing on friendly elements.
 	
7. Unit complies with the ROE and ROI.
 	
8. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.
 	
9. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
 	
10. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.
 	
11. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to enemy's location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1099)

(FM 100-34)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 6-30)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a raid at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the raid IAW tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR). The BN/TF establishes clear abort criteria for the raid. The BN/TF surprises the enemy, assaults the objective to achieve the desired end state, and does not become decisively engaged. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
        (4) Evaluate the enemy.
        (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
    d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
        (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.
        (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.
        (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.
        (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.
        (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach.		
e. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate the main effort.		
(a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power.		
(b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort.		
(c) Allocate additional combat elements in task organization, if required.		
(d) Attach combat support elements in direct support (DS) (such as engineers).		
(e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks.		
(2) Designate the supporting effort.		
(3) Designate a breach element as required.		
(4) Designate an assault element as required.		
(5) Designate a reserve as necessary and or as directed.		
g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires as required. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent).		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense.		
(g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective. (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.)		
(h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets and prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) follows.)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective.		
(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.		
(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan combat service support (CSS).		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
h. Establish clear abort criteria for the raid.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

i. Plan rally points for units to assemble to prepare for the attack or to assemble after the mission is complete and the force is ready to withdraw.
    j. Designate the withdrawal sequence.
    k. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions on the objective.
    l. Coordinate for passage of lines, if necessary.
    m. Conduct risk management.
 	
* 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
 	
  4. Unit prepares for the mission.
    a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
    b. Conducts extensive ISR.
      (1) Maintains constant surveillance of the raid objective to ensure the enemy situation remains unchanged and within the capability of the unit.
    c. Conducts precombat checks.
    d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
    e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
    f. Positions forces.
      (1) Position fire support (FS) systems to provide immediate responsive fires during the approach, actions on the objective, and withdrawal.
 	
  5. Unit executes the plan.
    a. Moves tactically to designated tactical assembly area (AA).
      (1) Conducts a passage of lines if required.
      (2) Bypasses the enemy when desired.
      (3) Secures and occupies AA.
      (4) Maintains IPB to prevent fratricide.
    b. Conducts a leader's reconnaissance.
    c. Recommends to higher headquarters' commander. (unit commander).
      (1) Abort if the combat power of the enemy significantly alters the engagement ratio.
      (2) Abort if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements in the area is detected, or increased air coverage is present.
      (3) Continue with the raid.
    d. Conducts approach to the objective.
Note: The commander may choose to execute the raid mounted. However, assault of the objective is NORMALLY conduct DISMOUNTED with infantry carrier vehicles (ICVs) providing support.
      (1) Maintains a steady controlled rate of movement.
      (2) Conducts the following based on the factors of METT-TC.
        (a) Bypasses or breaches obstacles.
        (b) Reacts to artillery, chemical strikes, air attack, and electronic warfare (EW).
        (c) Transitions to different formations based on the terrain and enemy situation.
        (d) Employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles.		
(f) Uses precision maneuver and fires to counter the effects of enemy security forces to ensure an unimpeded and concealed approach.		
(g) Minimizes the effects of enemy deception.		
e. Conducts actions on the objective.		
Note: The intelligence officer (S2) should have an updated intelligence summary available just prior to the unit beginning to attack.		
(1) Commits maneuver forces and fires to isolate then rupture a small vulnerable portion of the enemy's defense to gain a flank or create a penetration.		
(a) Employs fires to weaken the enemy's position and set the conditions for success prior to closure within direct fire range of the enemy.		
(b) Isolates and fixes the enemy targeted for destruction by preventing the enemy from laterally repositioning and or reinforcing.		
(c) Employs screening or obscuring smoke to isolate enemy forces from friendly forces.		
(d) Uses assault positions, phase lines, Terrain Index Reference System (TIRS), or checkpoints to control the positioning of the forces not yet committed.		
(2) Conducts timely reporting, cross-talk, accurate assessments, and sharing of information. (subordinate commanders).		
f. Conducts decisive maneuver.		
Note: Normally, the destruction of a defending enemy force dictates an assault of the objective.		
(1) Shifts direct and indirect fires and repositions supporting force as required to support the maneuver of assaulting forces.		
(2) Commits the assaulting force while the unit commander and staff ensure that intelligence is available and current.		
(3) Directs the assaulting force to conduct the following.		
(a) Assemble quickly into combat formations and rapidly maneuver to destroy the enemy forces and clear assigned objectives.		
(b) Move along covered and concealed routes to an exposed enemy flank, created penetration, or other position of advantage.		
(4) Limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires and close air support (CAS), a rapid assault, and employment of smoke.		
(5) Achieves the intent of the raid.		
6. Unit withdraws from the objective in the sequence designated in the order to a covered and concealed positions away from the objective area.		
a. Requests indirect fire and smoke to cover withdrawal.		
b. Leaves no essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) behind.		
7. Unit consolidates as necessary.		
8. Unit reorganizes as necessary.		
9. Unit secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.		
10. Unit reports PIR and information requirements (IR) to higher headquarters commander and or staff.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.		

12. Unit returns to designated location.
    a. Processes EPWs.
    b. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
13. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1009.07-IOTE	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1081	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1081.07-IOTE	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5126	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5126.07-IOTE	Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5207.07-IOTE	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes actions on contact IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts fire and maneuver to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1108)

(FM 71-2)	(FM 100-34)	(FM 100-55)
(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 6-30)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a relief in place at a specified time and location. A not later than (NLT) time for passage of command is specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the relief in place IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts necessary coordination and/or liaison, moves tactically to designated contact point(s), occupies relieved unit's positions, and assumes responsibility for the fight within the established time line. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Determine the time when the unit assumes responsibility for the area of operations (AO). b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. c. Conduct a map reconnaissance. d. Establish communications with the relieved unit through an exchange of liaison personnel or a other means to exchange information pertinent to the relief operations. e. Determine advance party composition and guidance. f. Determine advance party reconnaissance and coordination tasks. g. Plan to collocate command and control (C2) headquarters. h. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). (1) Obtain updated enemy information from relieved unit's intelligence (S2). (2) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (3) Define the battlefield environment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Describe battlefield effects.		
(5) Evaluate the enemy.		
(6) Determine enemy courses of action (COAs).		
i. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).		
j. Determine technique to use for the relief and order in which subordinate forces are to move and conduct the relief.		
(1) Relieve units one at a time.		
Note: This method is the most deliberate and time-consuming.		
(a) Relieve maneuver companies sequentially one at a time.		
(b) Label routes sequentially to correspond to the order in which the company executes them during the relief.		
(c) Move lead company (of the relieving unit) to its release point (RP), its platoons move to their designated positions.		
(d) Move the next company (of the relieving unit) along its designated route to relieve its counterpart after the lead company is in position.		
Note: This technique is repeated until each company or element has been relieved.		
(2) Relieve units at the same time after the two units' command posts (CPs) are collocated and plans exchanged.		
Note: This method is the fastest but risks revealing friendly unit intentions.		
(a) Move along different routes. (relieving and relived units).		
(3) Relieve units by occupying in-depth and adjacent positions.		
Note: This technique requires sufficient terrain to accommodate at the same time positioning of two like-sized units.		
(a) Position relieving unit so as to observe and provide protective direct and indirect fires for the relieved unit using the relieved units' fire plans.		
(b) Conduct a detailed physical reconnaissance of the defensive positions with their counterparts from the relieved unit. (all commanders).		
(c) Share gathered information from the reconnaissance throughout the relieving unit during the planning and troop-leading process (TLP).		
k. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
l. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates		
(2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
m. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Plan obscuration fires as required. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent).		
(b) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(c) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(d) Plan fires to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(e) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical assets and prevent fratricide.		
(f) Conduct detail fire support coordination between fire support elements (FSEs).		
(g) Exchange target lists.		
(h) Plan for early occupation of the outgoing unit's firing positions and fire in support of the relieved forces' supporting artillery.		
(i) Plan for fire support (FS) assets to remain in position to assist in the operation until all maneuver elements have been relieved.		
(j) Coordinate to relieve forward observers, fire support teams (FIST), and combat observation lasing team (COLT).		
(k) Ensure new FS plan is coordinated with new engineer countermobility plan if applicable.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(f) Conduct detailed coordination with the relieved unit's engineers or designated staff section.		
(g) Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of friendly mines, obstacles, and fortifications.		
(h) Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of prepared demolitions.		
(i) Coordinate with relieved unit to obtain prepare target folders.		
(j) Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of all known enemy mines, obstacles, or fortifications.		
(k) Conduct reconnaissance to verify the accuracy and condition of the previously mentioned information.		
(l) Verify trafficability into the relieved unit's positions.		
(m) Task-organizes assets for the relief to support mobility and continue countermobility and survivability improvements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(n) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(f) Exchange information with the relieved unit's chemical officer about any known NBC strikes in the relieved unit's AO.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement.		
(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(c) Collocate assets with relieved unit's air defense artillery (ADA) until relief is complete.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Determine relief order of combat support (CS) elements.		
(b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(c) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
(e) Plan transfer of excess supplies to the relieving unit.		
n. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. Unit prepares for the mission.		
a. Employs maximum operational security (OPSEC) to prevent the enemy from detecting the operation.		
b. Determines and or confirms contact points.		
c. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
d. Conducts extensive ISR.		
e. Conducts precombat checks.		
f. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
g. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
h. Initiates movement.		
(1) Moves to predetermined contact points and meets guides from the relieved unit.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) Moves into hide positions and coordinates any final information.
  i. Collocates the two unit's main CPs to form a single traffic control cell that coordinates all movement in and out of AO.
  j. Uses primary and alternate routes, assembly areas, and holding areas to assist movement.
  k. Establish traffic control points using scouts or guide traffic and prevent congestion.
  l. Position forces to protect the relief.
  m. Completes preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit.
    (1) Updates the enemy situation.
    (2) Completes transfer of sector sketches and fire plans.
    (3) Completes transfer of obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.
 	
  5. Unit executes the plan.
    a. Maintains OPSEC.
      (1) Changes frequencies on all unit radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit.
      (2) Maintains radio listening silence. (if specified in the OPORD or FRAGO).
      (3) Adheres to noise, light, and litter discipline.
    b. Executes the technique selected for the relief.
    c. Transfers equipment and supplies as required.
    d. Conducts battle handover .
 	
  6. Reliving and relieved units keep main CPs collocated until completion of the relief and share battle tracking and reports.
 	
  7. Unit maintains outgoing units previous schedule of fires so as not to alert the enemy of the relief.
 	
  8. If enemy attacks before completion of the relief, the incoming unit becomes under operational control (OPCON) to the relieved unit.
 	
  9. Incoming and outgoing commanders conduct passage of command.
    a. Complete passage of command by the NLT time specified in the order.
Note: Passage of command normally occurs when front line commanders have assumed responsibility for their respective AOs and the incoming commander has sufficient communications assets to control the operation.
 	
  10. Unit provides closure report to higher headquarters.
 	
  11. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
 	
  12. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.
 	
  13. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
  14. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying an objective rally point with orders to conduct a raid against the enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. The OPFOR avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtains all required priority intelligence requirements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1117)

(FM 100-40)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a screen mission for a larger force. The order designates the general trace of the screen, the duration of the screen, and the time it must be established. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the screen IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or commander's guidance. The BN/TF does not allow any enemy ground elements to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. The BN/TF maintains continuous surveillance, detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO), provides early warning to the screened force, maintains contact with the enemy, and reports any activity in the AO. The BN/TF maintains contact with the main body and any security forces operating on its flanks and destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols. The BN/TF impedes and harasses the enemy and destroys enemy reconnaissance elements. The BN/TF uses all available night and thermal observation devices and electronic surveillance devices during limited visibility. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
 a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
 b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
   (1) Identify screen trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and named areas of interest (NAI).
   (2) Identify enemy avenues of approach and possible objectives for enemy reconnaissance and infiltrating elements.
   (3) Identify and mark tentative control measures and dismount and remount points.
   (4) Select routes or sectors to facilitate rearward displacement.
 c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
   (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
   (2) Define the battlefield environment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Determine location, orientation, type, depth, and composition of obstacles.		
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(a) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.		
(b) Determine likely enemy counterattack or reinforcing routes.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
(4) Integrate use of unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) and imagery forward of the screen line.		
f. Task organize organic and nonorganic elements to best accomplish higher commander's intent.		
(1) Request augmentation for the security force as needed to provide intelligence, engineer, air defense, signal, and combat service support (CSS).		
(2) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS).		
(3) Designate security forces to cover enemy approaches.		
g. Confirm which unit has responsibility for the area between the screening force's rear boundary and the main battle area (MBA).		
h. Ensure the initial screen line is forward of the general trace but within range of supporting artillery.		
i. Depict screen lines as phase lines.		
j. Include passage graphics in the overlay.		
k. Designate the left and right limits of the screen as well as a phase line for the near boundary. (This phase line can also become the on-order battle handover line [BHL].)		
l. Designate control measures.		
(1) Include sectors, areas, or boundaries for subordinate elements.		
(2) Include en route rally points, objective rally points (ORPs), linkup points, contact points, and checkpoints.		
(3) Include passage points and infiltration lanes.		
(4) Include routes for patrols or initial screen line.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
m. Develop engagement criteria.		
(1) Consider size of enemy force.		
(2) Consider type of enemy unit.		
(3) Consider activity of enemy unit.		
n. Designate general locations for observation posts (OPs) enabling observation of the avenues of approach into the sector.		
o. Annotate unit graphic control measures in Maneuver Control System (MCS) using higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide.		
p. Establish engagement criteria, based on the size, type, and activity of the enemy unit.		
q. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Synchronize fires to suppress, neutralize, and destroy enemy forces and protect all screen force positions.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) (if available) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(d) Plan obscuration fires as required. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent).		
(e) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(g) Develop control measures to facilitate control and prevent fratricide.		
(h) Conduct a time-distance analysis covering the enemy's probable rate of advance and the time of flight of artillery or mortars.		
(2) Plan engineer support.		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from the higher headquarters terrain section's Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) are available and distributed for possible bypasses, defending enemy positions and key weapons, and friendly positions.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination including supporting combat support (CS) and CSS platforms and units.		
(d) Design obstacles forward to delay reconnaissance elements temporarily and assist in their destruction.		
(e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(g) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan air defense (AD) support.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to screen location.		
(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].)		
(c) Plan supply routes to each battle position.		
(d) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(e) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(f) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
(g) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.		
(h) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.		
(i) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable).		
r. Develop contingency plan for chance contact with the enemy prior to reaching initial screen line.		
s. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary.		
t. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. Unit prepares for the mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive reconnaissance.		
c. Conducts confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
d. Conducts precombat checks.		
e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
f. Conducts rehearsal during day and reduced visibility conditions if possible.		
g. Positions forces.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Positions ground surveillance radar (GSR) assets and integrates their locations and missions with the security action of the screening element(s).		
5. Unit executes the screen.		
a. Moves to and occupies initial screen line.		
b. Establishes OPs along or slightly forward of the initial screen line as dictated by terrain.		
c. Allows no enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported.		
d. Maintains continuous surveillance of enemy elements in the AO.		
e. Detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO).		
f. Provides early warning to the screened unit.		
g. Maintains contact with the enemy, once contact is made.		
h. Reports any activity in the AO.		
i. Maintains contact with the main body and any security forces operating on its flanks.		
j. Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols using available systems and support.		
k. Impedes and harasses the enemy using available systems and support.		
l. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements using available systems and support.		
m. Moves to keep pace with the main body, of the screened force, by moving or displacing OPs or moving tactically at a designated interval from the main body. (If a moving screen is being executed.)		
n. Guides higher headquarters reaction forces, if designated.		
o. Conducts patrols between OPs and in areas that cannot be observed, as the situation permits.		
p. Withdraws to the subsequent screen line on order.		
q. Uses all available night and thermal observation devices and electronic surveillance devices during limited visibility.		
r. Complies with ROE and ROI.		
* 6. Unit commander and staff control the movement of the screen.		
a. Direct elements to move, on order, to successive screen lines.		
b. Use FRAGOs and graphic control measures to direct the moves.		
c. Direct elements to report when they occupy new screen lines or OPs.		
7. Unit consolidates as necessary.		
8. Unit reorganizes as necessary.		
9. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
10. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.		
11. Unit processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
12. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.   Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task
Force) (07-1-1126)

(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 44-8)	(FM 44-80)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 9-43-1)
(FM 9-43-2)		

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is
conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation
order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to relocate units in a combat zone. The BN/TF will move
to an assembly area (AA) to prepare for combat operations The order designates start point (SP) and
release point (RP) times and the route may or may not be specified by higher headquarters. All
necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with
required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command
Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable
tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of
engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in
the operational environment. Hostile contact is not anticipated.
  Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the tactical road march IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or
higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF crosses and clears the SP and RP at the designated times.
The BN/TF uses the designated formation and road march technique while maintaining the prescribed
intervals and rates of speed. The BN/TF maintains security before the movement, during the movement,
and at the AA, and reacts to contact during the move to defeat encountered enemy forces. The BN/TF
complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). Note: The operations officer [S3] prepares a detailed movement plan. (The S3 has responsibility for planning tactical road marches.) 　　　a. Determine requirements for the movement. 　　　b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. 　　　c. Conduct a map reconnaissance. 　　　　　(1) Identify the route if not provided. 　　　　　(2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach. 　　　　　(3) Mark tentative dismount points as appropriate. 　　　　　(4) Identify critical areas; for example, danger areas, defiles, and choke points, traffic control points, as well as rest and maintenance areas. 　　　　　(5) Determine assembly area (AA) or bivouac areas.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Identify start point (SP) and release point (RP).		
d. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). (staff)		
(1) Define the battlefield environment as it relates to the road march.		
(2) Describe battlefield effects as it relates to the road march.		
(3) Evaluate the enemy that may be encountered during the road march or at the AA.		
(4) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs) during the road march and at the AA.		
e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). (intelligence officer [S2]).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
f. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Assigned reconnaissance task to the reconnaissance element and to the advance party.		
g. Analyze organic and nonorganic movement capabilities.		
h. Establish unit movement priorities.		
i. Determine the road march technique to be used.		
j. Determine security measures to be used before the movement, during the movement, and at the destination.		
k. Determine order of march.		
l. Determine rate of march.		
m. Determine march interval.		
n. Determine time at which the head or tail of the column is to pass the SP and critical points.		
o. Determine location of command post (CP) during movement.		
p. Determine quartering party requirements.		
q. Determine and coordinate combat service support (CSS) requirements.		
r. Assign direct fire responsibilities.		
s. Develop graphic control measures. (for example, check points, phase lines, scheduled halt points.)		
t. Organize the unit into a reconnaissance element, quartering party, main body, and trail element.		
u. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.		
v. Determine actions at the destination.		
w. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(b) Plan obscuration fires as required. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(d) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(e) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions and to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Include engineers in the reconnaissance effort if possible.		
(b) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units.		
(e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan.		
(b) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions in the AA.		
(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Plan equipment recovery operations.		
(b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (such as refueling).		
(c) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
x. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
* 4. Unit commander and or staff organizes and dispatches reconnaissance element. (Reconnaissance effort should begin early in the planning process.)		
a. Confirms available routes and conditions (routes may be specified by higher headquarters).		
b. Confirms SP and RP suitability.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Confirms distance between checkpoints on the route and total distance from SP to RP.		
d. Confirms assembly or bivouac area location.		
e. Confirms checkpoint locations on the route, if required.		
f. Locates and marks obstacles.		
g. Determines the number of guides required and their route location.		
5. Unit prepares for road march.		
a. Reconnoiters its (each march unit of a serial) route to the SP and determines the exact time to reach it.		
b. Performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles before movement and identifies all non-mission capable (NMC) vehicles.		
c. Loads all vehicles IAW load plans and CSS plan.		
d. Briefs and posts road guides.		
e. Verifies communications in all vehicles prior to movement.		
f. Issues strip maps if not issued with order.		
g. Briefs and dispatches the quartering party to conduct the following:		
(1) Navigate by infiltration to the AA.		
(2) Move over the routes to be used by the unit and execute a route reconnaissance and time-distance check.		
(a) Report times and distances to the main CP.		
(3) Provide guides along the route as necessary.		
(4) Report and engage any enemy observed IAW the commander's intent.		
(5) Identify potential CP locations based on tactical requirements such as cover and concealment and the line-of-sight signal requirements of FM radios.		
(6) Identify unit left and right limits of fire. (Record this information and send updates to their commander.)		
(7) Verify subordinate unit locations and sectors of fire to ensure there are no gaps in coverage.		
(8) Ensure necessary routes are cleared.		
(9) Transmit changes and updates to the main CP to alert the main body to changes to the route and or assembly area.		
(10) Adjust unit locations in the area assigned if it is unsuitable. (If such adjustments do not correct the problem, the officer in charge (OIC) or non-commission officer in charge (NCOIC) immediately notifies the S3 or commander.)		
h. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
j. Positions elements in the correct march order.		
6. Unit executes road march.		
a. Crosses the SP at the designated time IAW OPORD or FRAGO.		
b. Uses the designated formation, road march technique and, rate of march.		
(1) Maintains proper march speed to reach checkpoints at times specified in the order.		
c. Uses visual signals and or FM radio to communicate with unit elements IAW order and or TSOP.		
d. Reports control measures IAW order or TSOP.		
e. Maintains 360 degree observation, including aerial observation while moving and at the halt.		
(1) Uses security elements to eliminate enemy elements and allow uninterrupted movement of the main body.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) Detects enemy aircraft before they attack, engages them, and reports to higher headquarters.
f. Conducts scheduled halts at regular intervals IAW the TSOP. (as the tactical situation permits).
    (1) Performs PMCS and refueling as required.
g. Bypasses obstacles if possible.
h. Reports the unit's position to higher headquarters as required.
i. Reacts to hostile contact as appropriate.
j. Maintains radio listening silence.
Note for Digitized Units: Army Battle Command System (ABCS) communications may be maintained during radio listening silence as long as the FBCB2 radio silence switch is activated and the precision lightweight global positioning system receiver (PLGR) is not transmitting.
    (1) Maintains net control.
    (2) Allows no radio traffic other than ABCS on internal nets.
k. Performs recovery operations.
    (1) Repairs vehicles with minor damage.
    (2) Directs all vehicles to rejoin the unit or reports and moves them to designated maintenance collection points (MCPs) or main supply route (MSR) as directed by the order.
l. Arrives at check points or release points at the time specified.
m. Complies with the ROE and ROI.
n. Arrives at and moves through the RP.
    (1) Reports arrival at and the completion of the move through the RP.
    (2) Passes through the release point without halting.
    (3) Meets and follows quartering party guides and move to their designated area.
    (4) Orients weapons to establish local security.
    (5) Enforces proper dispersion and camouflage.
    (6) Processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
    (7) Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
7. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5207.07-IOTE	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1135A)

(FM 71-2)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 6-30)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a terrain-oriented attack at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit has engineer assets based on doctrine, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit conducts the attack in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S). The unit avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. The unit employs all available combat power to seize and retain the designated terrain or area. The unit complies with ROE and or ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Conduct a digital or conventional map reconnaissance.
    b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
 	
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
 	
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
 	
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
 	
        (4) Evaluate the enemy.
 	
        (5) Determine enemy courses of actions (COAs).
    d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs).		
e. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate the main effort.		
(a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power.		
(b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort.		
(c) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS).		
(d) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks.		
(2) Designate the supporting effort.		
(3) Designate a breach element as required.		
(4) Designate an assault element as required.		
(5) Designate a reserve as necessary and or as directed.		
g. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires as required. (METT-TC dependent).		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense.		
(g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective. (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.)		
(h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets and prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan mobility, countermobility, and survivability. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan air defense (AD) support.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective.		
(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.		
(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward R&S assets is well planned and integrated into the R&S plan.)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
h. Conduct risk management.		
i. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. Unit prepares for the mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Continues extensive R&S.		
(1) Determines the enemy's strength and disposition.		
(2) Determines composition, disposition, and strength of enemy forces along a flank or at an area selected for penetration.		
(3) Determines composition; disposition; and strength of security forces, reserve forces, defending combat formations within the enemy's main battle area (MBA), and key combat multipliers. (such as artillery, engineers, and AD).		
(4) Determines location, type, depth, and composition of obstacles and bypasses around obstacles.		
(5) Determines likely enemy counterattack or reinforcing routes.		
(6) Determines type of enemy fortifications and survivability effort.		
(7) Anticipates the enemy's engagement areas (EAs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(8) Determines enemy vulnerabilities.		
(9) Determines gaps in the enemy's defense.		
(10) Determines exposed or weak flanks.		
(11) Determines enemy units that lack mutual support.		
(12) Determines unobserved or weakly defended avenues of approach to the enemy's flank or rear.		
(13) Determines cover and concealed routes that allow friendly forces to close on the enemy's defense.		
(14) Determines weak obstacles or fortifications in the enemy defense, especially along a flank.		
c. Conducts precombat checks.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
f. Positions forces.		
5. Unit executes the plan.		
a. Conducts approach to the objective.		
(1) Attacks only those enemy forces that directly affect the seizure of the objective or that may impact on future operations.		
(2) Supports the unit's approach to the objective. (R&S assets).		
(a) Focuses on the enemy's security forces forward of the enemy's main defense to locate positions and obstacles along the unit's planned routes of advance.		
(b) Locates obstacles, restrictive terrain, and danger areas.		
(3) Breaches or bypasses obstacles.		
(4) Transitions to different formations based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(5) Employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach.		
(6) Avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles.		
(7) Uses available combat power to weaken enemy positions.		
(8) Shifts fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces.		
(9) Minimizes the effects of enemy deception.		
b. Conducts actions on the objective.		
(1) Occupies positions.		
(2) Secures all major facilities and or structures if applicable.		
(3) Positions forces to best defend the objective while allowing a rapid transition to follow-on operations.		
(4) Pushes reconnaissance and security forces forward of the objective to provide early warning of approaching enemy forces.		
(a) Focuses on areas that the enemy may use to reposition forces, commit reserves, and counterattack.		
(b) Reports enemy reactions, repositioning, and battle damage assessment as the unit develops the engagement.		
(5) Calls forward CSS assets.		
6. Unit commander and staff maintain command and control (C2) and report the developing situation to higher headquarters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Reposition main and TAC command posts (CPs) to sustain constant monitoring and tracking of subordinate units and to evaluate information that impacts on decision points.		
7. Unit consolidates as necessary.		
8. Unit reorganizes as necessary.		
9. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.		
10. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.		
11. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.		
12. Unit continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5171.07-IOTE	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6081.07-IOTE	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend a Battle Position (07-OPFOR-0032)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is in a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes the advancing enemy or is alerted to the enemy in the area by a spot report from higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations not later than (NLT) the time specified IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The enemy does not surprise the OPFOR main body. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy when they enter the engagement area. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The OPFOR prevents destruction of obstacles.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1144)

(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 20-32)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disengage and withdraw from the enemy and reposition for another mission. The BN/TF is task-organized as appropriate for mission conditions. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the withdrawal in accordance with (IAW) TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF provides its own security during the withdrawal. The BN/TF disengages the main body and moves to a designated location where the enemy cannot observe friendly forces or engage them with direct fire. The BN/TF disengages the security force. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
        (1) Select primary and alternate withdrawal routes.
        (2) Select tentative successive battle positions.
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
        (1) Ensure that all available information-gathering assets are employed.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
        (4) Evaluate the enemy.
        (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
    d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
        (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.
        (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.
        (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.
        (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate composition and strength of the security element.		
(a) Designates a detachment left in contact (DLIC) as required. (Usually when the unit is in close combat with the enemy and a security zone does not exist.)		
(2) Designate composition and strength of the main body.		
(3) Designate composition and strength of the reserve. (if used).		
(4) Designate a quartering party for future assembly area (AA).		
g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Plan priority of fires to the security force.		
(b) Augment fires for security force with snipers, scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), or Striker assets necessary for the security force to focus fires on multiple routes.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires as required.		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support.		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(g) Plan to site obstacles behind the security force to complicate pursuit.		
(3) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.		
(b) Plan support for security force.		
(4) Plan combat service support (CSS).		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure maintenance collection points are active only long enough to transfer damaged vehicles to other recovery vehicles.		
(c) Ensure maintenance collection points avoid the collection of vehicles greater than their ability to transport them.		
(d) Plan to prestock Classes III and IV adjacent to successive positions.		
(e) Plan to withdraw CSS assets before maneuver elements.		
(f) Plan casualty evacuation.		
h. Determine specific tasks for subordinate elements.		
i. Determine disengagement criteria (time, friendly situation, enemy situation).		
j. Plan for a deliberate break in contact from the enemy.		
k. Plan for deception to conceal the withdrawal for as long as possible.		
l. Plan the rapid displacement of the main body, safeguarded from enemy interference.		
m. Plan for protection of withdrawal routes and alternates.		
n. Determine the withdrawal and linkup plan for the security force.		
o. Coordinate with adjacent units as required.		
3. BN/TF prepares for the withdrawal.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Provides specific tasks to subordinate elements		
c. Supervises subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
d. Conducts rehearsals and inspections. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent).		
(1) Rehearses contingencies for reverting to a delay, commitment of the reserve, and enemy interdiction of movement routes.		
e. Briefs and dispatches quartering party to future AA.		
(1) Conducts reconnaissance of positions to which unit will withdraw.		
(2) Selects subordinate element positions and or sectors.		
(3) Provides guides as necessary.		
(4) Coordinates with the unit or element through which the company will conduct a rearward passage of lines, if required.		
f. Positions security force.		
g. Supervises subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the commander's intent.		
h. Prepares wounded soldiers and damaged equipment and nonessential supplies for movement.		
i. Moves nonessential combat support (CS) and CSS units to the rear.		
j. Conducts ISR IAW the ISR plan.		
k. Positions guides for traffic control if necessary.		
4. R&S assets screen the flanks and conduct reconnaissance of withdrawal routes to allow unhindered maneuver by the main body. (within their capability).		
5. Unit executes the withdrawal.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Executes the deception plan and begins withdrawal. (May want to move casualties out first).		
b. Maintains contact with the enemy unit and simulates the continued presence of the main body until ordered to disengage or until another force takes over the task. (security force).		
(1) Conceals the withdrawal.		
(a) Maintains the defensive pattern of the whole force across the sector.		
(b) Maintains communication and information security.		
(c) Avoids establishing patterns of movement that may indicate friendly intentions.		
(d) Focuses security forces on destroying enemy reconnaissance forces.		
(e) Uses multiple withdrawal routes.		
(f) Moves during limited visibility and along covered and concealed routes if the situation allows.		
(2) Conducts actions on contact during the withdrawal		
(a) Delays, attacks, or defends as required by the situation.		
(b) Shifts to alternate routes or bypasses interdicted routes and or areas.		
c. Disengages main body.		
(1) Maintains deception using security force or detachment left in contact (DLIC) and fires.		
(2) Maintains cohesiveness of the overall operation.		
(3) Moves rapidly on multiple routes to designated positions. (intermediate or final).		
(4) Avoids fixation on the close-in fight.		
(5) Enforces the disciplined use of routes during the withdrawal.		
(6) Reports mobility corridor status.		
d. Provides the unit flexibility to deal with unexpected enemy actions by taking limited offensive action such as spoiling attacks to disorganize or disrupt the enemy or by countering enemy attacks, reinforcing threatened areas, and protecting withdrawal routes. (reserve, if designated).		
e. Breaks contact and moves as a rear guard. (security force).		
(1) Balances security and deception with speed as it disengages		
(2) Maintains tactical movement and security techniques until it is clear that the enemy is not pursuing and contact has been broken and then withdraws as rapidly as possible.		
(3) Counters any enemy attempts to disrupt the withdrawal or pursue the unit.		
6. BN/TF completes withdrawal within times specified in higher headquarters orders.		
7. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.		
8. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.		
9. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.		
10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
11. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
12. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1036A	Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1162)

(<u>FM 71-2</u>)	(FM 100-40)	(FM 100-55)
(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a force-oriented attack against a moving force at the location and time specified. The attack may be conducted during a counterattack, as a spoiling attack, as exploitation, or as a result of a movement to contact. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the attack IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. The BN/TF gains and maintains contact with the enemy force, and fully employs all available combat power to isolate, fix, and destroy the enemy force. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
        (1) Identify tactical assembly area (AA).
        (2) Identify rally points.
        (3) Identify tentative support by fire and assault positions.
        (4) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach (AAA).
        (5) Identify routes to and from the tactical AA and objective.
        (6) Mark tentative dismount points.
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
        (4) Evaluate the enemy.
        (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
    d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
        (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.
      (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.
      (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.
      (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.
      (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).
      (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.
      (8) Include likely enemy AAA.
  e. Employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process.
      (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.
      (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.
      (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
  f. Determine where to fight the enemy.
      (1) Select the most advantageous location to fight the engagement and then determine alternate locations.
      (2) Develop decision points (DPs) for the commitment of the unit at each selected engagement location based on rates of movement of the unit and the enemy (Commander, operations officer [S3], and intelligence officer [S2]).
      (3) Select named areas of interest (NAIs) to identify the enemy's rate and direction of movement (S2).
Note: Digitally equipped units posses the unique ability to rapidly shift from a direction of attack, reorient the attack, and mass combat power to fight a dynamic and fluid battle. They achieve this dominance through situational understanding (SU) that feeds into the common operational picture (COP).
  g. Maximize the advantage of the terrain.
      (1) Select avenues of approach that allow the unit to strike the enemy from a flank or rear.
  h. Maintain flexibility.
      (1) Develop a plan that is flexible enough to allow the unit to attack the enemy regardless of where the engagement develops. (The scheme must include provisions to fight the enemy at alternate engagement areas (EAs).
  i. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.
      (1) Designate the main effort as required.
        (a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power.
        (b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort.
        (c) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS).
        (d) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.
        (e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks.
      (2) Designate the supporting effort.
      (3) Designate a breach element as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Designate an assault element as required.		
(5) Designate a reserve as necessary and or as directed.		
j. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires as required. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent).		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense.		
(g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective. (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.)		
(h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan if assets are available.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective.		
(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.		
(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
(f) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.		
(g) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.		
k. Conduct risk management.		
l. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary.		
3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive reconnaissance.		
(1) Focuses reconnaissance effort on answering intelligence requirements (IRs) to support the commander's decisions on where to fight the enemy, when and where to initiate fires, and how best to maneuver the unit against the enemy.		
(2) Gains and maintains contact with the enemy.		
(3) Supports the unit's movement.		
(a) Moves well forward to reconnoiter obstacles and areas that may slow the unit's movement and that could de-synchronize the timing and planned location of the attack.		
(b) Seeks to detect contaminated areas, enemy security forces, and suitable routes for the unit's use.		
(4) Reports enemy actions on contact.		
(a) Occupies positions that provide good observation of the EA and that are survivable during the engagement (Reconnaissance assets).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(b) Continue to report enemy actions, battle damage assessment, and locations.
c. Conducts precombat checks.
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
 f. Positions forces.
 	
 5. BN/TF executes the plan.
   a. Gains contact with the enemy force through the reconnaissance effort.
   b. Maximizes the approach to the objective.
     (1) Adjusts the speed of the unit to ensure it arrives at the destination EA at the proper time in relation to the enemy.
     (2) Conceals movement to maintain surprise.
      (a) Maximizes the use of covered and concealed routes to mask movement.
     (3) Employs a robust reconnaissance and security effort to detect and destroy enemy security forces.
     (4) Ensures subordinate unit leaders maintain positive control of formations to ensure the unit's ability to mass combat power at the decisive point and time.
   c. Conducts actions on the objective.
     (1) Employs fires.
      (a) Employs indirect fires reinforced with situational obstacles to set the conditions for the EA fights by disrupting and weakening the enemy before he gets to the EA.
     (2) Defeats enemy security forces.
      (a) Attacks the enemy's forward or flank security to develop the situation. (advance guard).
      (b) Engages and defeats the enemy's security forces and gains contact with the enemy's main body before the enemy can effectively react (Advance guard).
Note: The BN/TF commander weighs using the advance guard with maneuver forces and fires to destroy enemy security forces.
     (3) Fixes the enemy.
      (a) Fixes the enemy main body to create the conditions for the main body's attack. (Normally, this task is executed by the unit's advance guard once it destroys the opposing enemy security force.)
      (b) Employs indirect fires against the lead enemy forces to allow the advance guard to deploy and gain contact with the enemy main body.
     (4) Maneuvers the main body.
      (a) Positions the unit to attack the enemy formation from an assailable flank where its total combat power can be massed against an enemy weakness to reach a quick decision.
      (b) Shifts indirect fires to suppress the enemy force that directly opposes the main body's attack.
      (c) Strikes the enemy force with overwhelming strength and speed.
      (d) Adjusts fire support coordination measures (FSCMs) to provide continuous support and ensure force protection. (fire support officer [FSO]).
      (e) Maneuvers to quickly destroy or penetrate any enemy forces attempting to fix or delay the unit and strikes the bulk of the evading enemy force from the flank or rear.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(f) Defeats and or destroys the enemy force IAW the commander's intent.		
6. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.		
7. BN/TF reports as required.		
8. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.		
9. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
11. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
12. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1072.07-IOTE	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5171.07-IOTE	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.   Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1171)

(FM 71-2)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 6-30)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)		

ITERATION: 1M   2M   3M   4M   5M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a force-oriented attack against a stationary force at the location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The unit received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the attack IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF integrates and synchronizes battlefield operating systems (BOS). The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations to determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy forces. The BN/TF employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach, and avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. The BN/TF destroys or forces the withdrawal of opposing enemy security forces. The BN/TF limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires, a rapid assault, quick breaching operations, and effective employment of smoke. The BN/TF fully employs all available combat power to isolate and destroy the enemy force. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TFUnit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and develop a fully synchronized plan that masses all available combat power against the enemy using the military decision-making process (MDMP). 　　a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. 　　b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. 　　c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). 　　　　(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. 　　　　(2) Define the battlefield environment. 　　　　(3) Describe battlefield effects. 　　　　(4) Evaluate the enemy. 　　　　(5) Determine enemy courses of actions (ECOAs). 　　d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate the main effort as required.		
(a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power.		
(b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort.		
(c) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS).		
(d) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks.		
(2) Designate the supporting effort.		
(3) Designate a breach element as required.		
(4) Designate an assault element as required.		
(5) Designate a reserve as necessary and or as directed.		
g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires as required. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent).		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense.		
(g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective. (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets and prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the BN/TF.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective.		
(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.		
(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan combat service support (CSS).		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
h. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive reconnaissance.		
(1) Determines the enemy's strength and disposition.		
(2) Determines composition, disposition, and strength of enemy forces along a flank or at an area selected for penetration.		
(3) Determines composition; disposition; and strength of security forces, reserve forces, defending combat formations within the enemy's main battle area (MBA), and key combat multipliers. (such as artillery, engineers, and AD).		
(4) Determines location, type, depth, and composition of obstacles and bypasses around obstacles.		
(5) Determines likely enemy counterattack or reinforcing routes.		
(6) Determines type of enemy fortifications and survivability effort.		
(7) Anticipates the enemy's engagement areas (EAs).		
(8) Determines enemy vulnerabilities.		
(9) Determines gaps in the enemy's defense.		
(10) Determines exposed or weak flanks.		
(11) Determines enemy units that lack mutual support.		
(12) Determines unobserved or weakly defended avenues of approach to the enemy's flank or rear.		
(13) Determines cover and concealed routes that allow friendly forces to close on the enemy's defense.		
(14) Determines weak obstacles or fortifications in the enemy defense, especially along a flank.		
c. Conducts precombat checks.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
f. Positions forces.		
5. BN/TF conducts movement to the line of departure (LD).		
Note: When attacking from positions not in contact, units often stage in rear assembly areas, road march to attack positions behind friendly units in contact with the enemy, conduct passage of lines, and begin the attack.		
6. BN/TF executes the plan.		
a. Conducts approach to the objective.		
(1) Breaches or bypasses obstacles.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Transitions to different formations based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(3) Employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach.		
(4) Avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles.		
(5) Destroys or forces the withdrawal of opposing enemy security forces.		
(6) Uses available combat power to weaken enemy positions.		
(7) Shifts fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces.		
(8) Minimizes the effects of enemy deception.		
b. Conducts actions on the objective.		
(1) Employs firepower.		
(a) Shifts fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces as the unit approaches the enemy defense.		
(2) Conducts shaping operations.		
(a) Isolates the enemy force targeted for destruction by preventing him from laterally repositioning and reinforcing.		
(3) Conducts decisive operations.		
(a) Updates the assaulting force with critical information about the enemy and friendly situation.		
(b) Limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires, a rapid assault, quick breaching operations, and effective employment of smoke.		
(c) Shifts direct and indirect fires and repositions as required to support the maneuver of assaulting forces. (supporting force).		
(d) Assaults exposed enemy flanks through a created penetration or other position of advantage. (assault force).		
(e) Rapidly maneuvers using covered and concealed routes and breaches protective obstacle(s). (assaulting force).		
(f) Commits the reserve as necessary to reinforce the momentum of the attack, block enemy counterattacks, or exploit success.		
(4) Pushes reconnaissance and security forces forward to provide critical information to the unit.		
(a) Focuses on areas that the enemy may use to reposition forces, commit reserves, and counterattack.		
(b) Reports enemy reactions, repositioning, and battle damage assessment as the unit develops the engagement.		
(5) Calls forward CSS assets.		
* 7. BN/TF commander and staff assess the situation.		
a. Conduct command and control (C2) and report the developing situation to higher headquarters.		
b. Reposition command post (CP) to sustain constant monitoring and tracking of subordinate units and to evaluate information that impacts on decision points.		
8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.		
9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.		
10. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.		
11. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
12. BN/TF processes captured documents and equipment as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
13. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1072.07-IOTE	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5171.07-IOTE	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6081.07-IOTE	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend a Battle Position (07-OPFOR-0032)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is in a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes the advancing enemy or is alerted to the enemy in the area by a spot report from higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations not later than (NLT) the time specified IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The enemy does not surprise the OPFOR main body. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy when they enter the engagement area. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The OPFOR prevents destruction of obstacles.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1180)

(FM 71-2)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 20-32)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-10(HTF))	(FM 90-10-1)
(FM 90-2)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an attack on a built-up area at the location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BT/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the attack IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. The BN/TF employs all available assets against the enemy to isolate and secure the objective(s). The BN/TF destroys, captures, or forces the enemy force to withdraw. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
 Note: The focus of planning is to develop a fully synchronized plan that masses all available combat power against the enemy.
        a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
        b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
 Note: Should involve the analysis of aerial imagery, photographs, or any other detailed information about the building(s) or other urban terrain for which the unit is responsible.
            (1) Obtain maps and diagrams.
                (a) Obtain maps of subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes.
                (b) Obtain diagrams of underground water, sewer, and utility systems.
                (c) Obtain diagrams of electrical power stations and emergency services.
                (d) Obtain diagrams of fuel supply and storage facilities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Obtain maps and diagrams of mass communications facilities such as cellular phones, computer hubs, radio, and telephone.		
c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).		
(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		
(2) Define the battlefield environment and describe battlefield effects.		
(a) Identify covered and concealed approaches to the urban area.		
(b) Identify key and decisive terrain inside and outside of the built-up area.		
(c) Identify mobility corridors to include air, building level, intra-building level, street level, and subterranean level.		
(d) Identify buildings protected by the law of land warfare such as churches, medical facilities, historic monuments, and other facilities dedicated to arts and sciences, provided they are not being used for military purposes.		
(e) Identify areas and facilities restricted by current ROE.		
(f) Identify stadiums, parks, open fields, playgrounds, and other open areas that may be used for landing zones, holding areas, or engagement areas.		
(g) Identify location of prisons and jails.		
(h) Identify construction sites that may contain barrier materials.		
(i) Identify significant fire hazards and locations of other hazardous material (HAZMAT), such as hazardous industrial waste.		
(j) Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to employ maximum combat power due to the need to minimize damage and rubbling effects.		
(k) Identify other logistics infrastructure that could effect the operation such as sources of potable water, bulk fuel and transport systems, and so forth.		
(3) Evaluate the enemy.		
(4) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
(a) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (Intelligence officer [S2]).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate the main effort.		
(a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power.		
(b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort.		
(c) Allocate additional combat elements in task organization if required.		
(d) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS).		
(e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks.		
(f) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(g) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks.		
(2) Designate the supporting effort.		
(3) Designate a breach element as required.		
(4) Designate an assault element as required.		
(5) Designate a reserve as necessary and or as directed.		
g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations.		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the main effort.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense.		
(g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective. (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces).		
(h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Address each task and assign responsibility when developing the SOEO.		
(f) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force.		
(g) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(h) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective.		
(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.		
(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
h. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions on the objective.		
i. Establish clear abort criteria.		
j. Conduct risk management.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		

4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
b. Conducts extensive ISR operations.
   (1) Seeks to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.
c. Conducts precombat checks.
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.
 f. Positions forces.
g. Moves tactically to designated tactical assembly area (AA) or other designated area.
   (1) Conducts a passage of lines if required.
   (2) Secures and occupies AA.
   (3) Maintains commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) to prevent fratricide.
   (4) Leads movement through built-up areas with dismounted infantry. (Tanks or Bradley Fighting Vehicles [BFVs], follow and provide close overwatch.)		

5. BN/TF conducts the attack.
a. Moves to the objective.
   (1) Moves as rapidly as possible without sacrificing security.
   (2) Uses covered and concealed routes.
   (3) Detects enemy forces, positions, and obstacles to prevent them from interfering with the attack plan. (reconnaissance element and or security element).
   (4) Breaches or bypasses encountered obstacles.
   (5) Defeats enemy elements encountered.
b. Isolates the objective.
   (1) Seizes terrain that dominates the area so that the enemy cannot supply, reinforce, or withdraw its defenders.
   (2) Uses terrain that provides the ability to place suppression on the objective.
   (3) Controls avenues of approach into and away from the objective.
   (4) Uses direct and indirect fire support to suppress and kill the enemy, screen the assault element, protect breaching actions, and isolate the enemy by blocking reinforcements and counterattacks.
c. Assaults to gain a foothold on the objective.
Note: A foothold is normally one to two city blocks and is usually a company intermediate objective.
   (1) Creates an entry point that provides cover from enemy fire and a location for attacking troops to enter the urban area.
   (2) Fixes the defense and or enemy.
   (3) Assaults the objective.
     (a) Uses supporting fires to suppress enemy elements that can place effective fires on the assaulting force and or breach force.
     (b) Uses obscuration to cover breach and assault force actions.
     (c) Breaches obstacles that can not be bypassed.
     (d) Continues reconnaissance in support of the attack.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Uses maneuver, mobility, shock action, and massed firepower to secure a foothold and rupture established defenses.		
(f) Kills, captures, destroys, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy on objectives as required by the commander's intent.		
(g) Attempts to minimize collateral damage and noncombatant casualties.		
(4) Clears the built-up area using the appropriate technique based on commander's intent.		
* 6. BN/TF commander commits the reserve to accomplish one or more of the following: a. Exploit success or an enemy weakness. b. Support a forward element with fire or maneuver. c. Assume the mission of another element (building clearance). d. Maintain the momentum of the attack (seize a key building). e. Hold buildings seized by another element. f. Defeat or block enemy counterattacks.		
* 7. BN/TF commander reports the situation to the higher headquarters commander as necessary.		
8. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.		
9. BN/TF consolidates, as necessary.		
10. BN/TF reorganizes, as necessary.		
11. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
12. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
13. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
14. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1225.07-IOTE	Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5171.07-IOTE	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6072.07-IOTE	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend a Battle Position (07-OPFOR-0032)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is in a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes the advancing enemy or is alerted to the enemy in the area by a spot report from higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations not later than (NLT) the time specified IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The enemy does not surprise the OPFOR main body. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy when they enter the engagement area. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The OPFOR prevents destruction of obstacles.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend a Building (07-OPFOR-0022)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has received an order to defend a building. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect fire support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends the building IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR prevents the enemy from isolating and entering the building. The OPFOR blocks or canalizes the enemy to destroy them or force them to withdraw. The OPFOR retains control of the designated building or counterattacks to regain and maintain control.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct an Infiltration and or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1189)

(<u>FM 71-2</u>)	(FM 100-34)	(FM 100-34-1)
(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an infiltration and/or exfiltration. The purpose of the infiltration and/or exfiltration (gather information, attack an enemy position from the rear, conduct a raid or ambush, capture prisoners, seize key terrain, or aid the main attack) is identified in the order. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the infiltration and exfiltration in IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF employs reconnaissance patrols to find routes, gaps, and weaknesses in enemy positions, and moves through the enemy area without being detected. The BN/TF accomplishes the purpose of the mission, and complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
        (1) Mark rally points that are easily identifiable.
        (2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach.
        (3) Identify routes to and from rally points.
        (4) Identify a linkup point and or assembly area (AA).
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
        (4) Evaluate the enemy.
        (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
    d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
        (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
g. Conduct risk management.		
h. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Plan fires and effects to provide immediate responsive fires.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires as required. (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC] dependent).		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) (if available) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.		
i. Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(1) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of infiltration or exfiltration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(2) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements.		
(3) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(4) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(5) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
j. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(1) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan.		
(2) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(3) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(4) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke based on METT-TC. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(5) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
k. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(1) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective.		
(2) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
l. Plan CSS.		
(1) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(2) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(3) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
m. Develop contingency plans for chance enemy contact.		
n. Designate rally points to prepare for attack or to assemble after the mission is complete.		
o. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary.		
p. Assign lanes and release points (RP) to subordinate elements.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive ISR operations.		
c. Conducts precombat checks.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparation efforts are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent.		
e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
f. Positions forces as per the plan.		
5. BN/TF executes the plan.		
a. INFILTRATES.		
(1) Conducts forward passage of lines.		
(2) Maintains communications during movement.		
(3) Separates into infiltrating elements at designated rally points.		
(4) Takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions as well as limited visibility, adverse weather, and broken terrain affording cover and concealment.		
(5) Avoids enemy contact if possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: If contact is made, avoids becoming decisively engaged, breaks contact, and continues movement to the rally point.		
(6) Maintains dispersion and strict noise, light, and camouflage discipline.		
(7) Infiltrates by entire company or by separate platoons as specified during planning.		
(8) Uses battlefield noise (including artillery) to mask movement.		
(9) Engages the enemy as necessary using support by fire and or indirect fires.		
b. Conducts linkup.		
(1) Conducts long range (far) recognition.		
(a) Establishes communications before entering direct fire weapons range.		
(b) Authenticates correctly and or responds to challenges IAW the signal operating instructions (SOI), as necessary.		
(c) Confirms short range recognition signals.		
(2) Completes linkup.		
(a) Conducts short range (near) recognition.		
(b) Completes movement to assembly area.		
c. Completes actions at the linkup point or assembly area.		
(1) Consolidates and reorganizes.		
(2) Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
(3) Reports completion of linkup to the higher commander.		
(4) Treats and evacuates casualties.		
(5) Secures captured documents and or equipment as required.		
(6) Continues operations as directed.		
(7) Sends updated situation reports (SITREPs) to the higher commander as necessary.		
d. EXFILTRATES.		
Note: Planning and performance steps for exfiltration generally mirror those for infiltration. A rearward passage of lines would be conducted.		
(1) Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.		
(2) Secures EPW as required.		
(3) Conducts movement to designated area following rearward passage of lines.		
(4) Reports completion of exfiltration to higher commander.		
(5) Treats and evacuates casualties.		
(6) Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
6. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1063.07-IOTE	Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1081.07-IOTE	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5207.07-IOTE	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
              HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1198)

(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-85)		

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a dismounted tactical movement at a specified time and location. The battalion has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts dismounted tactical movement IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF crosses the line of departure (LD) at the designated time. The BN/TF moves using the route or axis of advance, formations, and techniques of movement, as specified. The BN/TF adjusts routes or axis, formation, and/or movement technique(s) in response to the changing probability of enemy contact, and/or to changes in the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Usually the BN/TF does not move as a unit using one movement technique. However, when moving as a unit along a single avenue, the BN/TF commander designates the movement technique to be used by the lead unit(s) based on the likelihood of enemy contact.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
        (1) Identify routes that provide protection from direct and indirect fires.
            (a) Offer concealment from ground and air.
            (b) Avoid skylining.
            (c) Avoid open areas and potential kill zones.
            (d) Avoid obvious enemy avenues of approach.
            (e) Select routes that provide for mutual support if multiple routes are selected.
        (2) Identify coordination points, passage points, and boundaries.
        (3) Identify adjacent units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Plot waypoints on easily recognizable terrain and on significant turns on the route for ease in navigation.		
c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).		
(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		
(2) Define the battlefield environment.		
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the battalion.		
f. Organize the task force (TF) to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate elements to provide forward, flank, and rear security.		
(2) Designate advance guard for each axis.		
g. Plan to make initial contact with the smallest forces possible if contact is the intent.		
h. Develop control measures.		
(1) Designate sufficient control and coordination measures to facilitate reporting and FRAGOs.		
(2) Develop limited visibility marking to aid in command and control at night.		
(3) Develop graphics.		
(4) Designate guides.		
(5) Plan to use night vision devices and thermal devices.		
i. Develop a movement plan.		
(1) Select a tentative formation based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(2) Coordinate formation with subordinate elements if using a different formation than the main body.		
(3) Select the tentative movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(4) Designate danger areas and contingencies for likely danger areas or locations where lead elements must switch (formations change).		
(5) Position mortars and engineers forward in the column.		
(6) Position air defense (AD), if available, forward for security and for covering movement across exposed areas, coordinating for additional coverage with the brigade.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(7) Position combat trains to provide protection and rapid combat service support (CSS).		
j. Develop graphic control measures using the higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide.		
k. Develop a security plan.		
(1) Assign each subordinate element a sector of responsibility. (They are responsible for their sector during movement and at the halt.)		
l. Coordinate passage of lines as necessary.		
m. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.		
n. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Integrate indirect fire support.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Assign direct fire responsibilities.		
(d) Plan obscuration fires as required.		
(e) Plan deception fires as necessary.		
(f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions and to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Include engineers in the reconnaissance effort if possible.		
(b) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements.		
(e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the battalion zone or axis.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the battalion.		
(d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective.		
(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the battalion is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the battalion reaches its objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
o. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for tactical movement.		
a. Briefs movement plan.		
(1) Specifies conditions under which the battalion will change movement techniques and or formations.		
(2) Designates bounding and overwatch elements based on factors of METT-TC.		
(3) Briefs waypoints for checkpoints, boundaries, and so forth.		
(4) Briefs signals and or FM commands used for command and control.		
b. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparation efforts are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent.		
c. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
5. Battalion executes tactical movement.		
a. Initiates movement from the assembly area to the line of departure (LD).		
Note: Command group is positioned where it can best control the operation.		
(1) Conducts passage of lines if required.		
(2) Moves using the following fundamentals:		
(a) Moves as fast as the situation allows.		
(b) Positions weapons platoons, squads, or teams where they can provide responsive fires in the event of enemy contact (i.e. mortars).		
(c) Moves undetected to the designated point specified in the OPORD.		
(d) Positions advance guards so that they can maneuver to support each other when two companies are used.		
(e) Positions lead elements of the main body so they can move to positions to support the advance guard.		
6. BN/TF crosses the LD and moves using the appropriate formation based on METT-TC.		
a. Reports crossing to higher headquarters.		
b. Uses the formation that provides the proper control, security, and speed.		
c. Adjusts formation during limited visibility to maintain visual contact between elements and to maintain the rate of movement.		
d. Executes the movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(1) Adjust the movement technique to provide greater security as the probability of enemy contact increases.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

Note: Movement techniques are used when not in contact with the enemy. In effect, once contact is made, movement techniques end and fire and maneuver are used to eliminate the enemy threat.
     (2) Employs traveling technique as directed. (lead unit[s]).
         (a) Maintains separation.
         (b) Maintains integrity as much as possible and organizes the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission.
     (3) Employs traveling overwatch technique as directed. (lead unit[s]).
         (a) Moves in a column or wedge formation.
         (b) Positions an element as lead and elements as trail.
         (c) Maintains 360 degree security.
     (4) Employs bounding overwatch technique as directed. (lead unit[s]).
         (a) Designates the initial bounding and initial overwatch element(s) and specify either the alternate or successive bounding method. (commander).
 	
 7. BN/TF elements maintain formation with correct interval, speed, and or lateral dispersion IAW commander's guidance or TSOP.
 	
 8. BN/TF elements maintain security.
     a. Maintain security forward, to flanks, and rear.
     b. Avoid gaps between the main body and security elements.
     c. Keep all likely high-speed approaches into the main body under observation.
     d. Locate and warn of approaching enemy forces in time to deploy.
 	
 9. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.
     a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
     b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
 	
 10. BN/TF takes actions at halts IAW TSOP.
 	
 11. BN/TF transitions to fire and maneuver if enemy contact is made.
 	
 12. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.
 	
 13. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.
 	
 14. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
 	
 15. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.
 	
 16. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
 17. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-2-1604.07-C222	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
17-1-0005.07-C222	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
17-1-0005.07-C720	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion)	
17-1-2651.07-C222	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
17-1-2651.07-C720	Integrate Engineer Support (Infantry Battalion)	
17-1-6465.07-C222	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
71-6-0190.07-C222	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
71-6-0307.07-C222	Integrate Close Air Support (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
71-6-1080.07-C222	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
71-6-3002.07-C222	Integrate Fires and Effects (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.   Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes actions on contact IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts fire and maneuver to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
　　　　　　HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1207)

(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))		

ITERATION:　　　　　　1　2　3　4　5　M　(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:　　T　P　U　　(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct mounted tactical movement at a specified time and place. The TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW)) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Enemy contact is likely. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts mounted tactical movement IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF crosses the line of departure (LD) at the designated time. The BN/TF moves using the route or axis of advance, formations, and techniques of movement as specified in the order. The BN/TF adjusts routes or axis, formation and/or movement technique(s) in response to the changing probability of enemy contact, and/or to changes in the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Usually the BN/TF will not move as a unit using one movement technique. However, when moving as a unit along a single avenue, the BN/TF commander designates the movement technique to be used by the lead unit(s) based on the likelihood of enemy contact.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). 　　a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. 　　b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. 　　　(1) Identify routes that provide protection from direct and indirect fires. 　　　　(a) Offer concealment from ground and air. 　　　　(b) Avoid skylining. 　　　　(c) Avoid open areas and potential kill zones. 　　　　(d) Avoid obvious enemy avenues of approach. 　　　　(e) Select routes that provide for mutual support if multiple routes are selected. 　　　(2) Identify coordination points, passage points, and boundaries. 　　　(3) Identify adjacent units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Plot waypoints on easily recognizable terrain and on significant turns on the route for ease in navigation.		
(5) Mark tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps as appropriate.		
c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).		
(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		
(2) Define the battlefield environment.		
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the BN/TF.		
f. Organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate elements to provide forward, flank, and rear security.		
(2) Designate advance guard for each axis.		
g. Plan to make initial contact with the smallest forces possible if contact is the intent.		
h. Develop control measures.		
(1) Designate sufficient control and coordination measures to facilitate reporting and FRAGOs.		
(2) Develop limited visibility marking to aid in command and control at night.		
(3) Develop graphics.		
(4) Designate guides.		
(5) Plan to use night vision devices and thermal devices.		
i. Develop a movement plan.		
(1) Select a tentative formation based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(2) Coordinate formation with subordinate elements if using a different formation than the main body.		
(3) Select the tentative movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(4) Designate danger areas and contingencies for likely danger areas or locations where lead elements must switch. (formations change).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Position mortars and engineers forward in the column.		
(6) Position air defense (AD), if available, forward for security and for covering movement across exposed areas, coordinating for additional coverage with the higher headquarters.		
(7) Position combat trains to provide protection and rapid combat service support (CSS).		
j. Develop graphic control measures using the higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide.		
k. Plan the use of dismounts when any of the following conditions apply.		
(1) Detailed reconnaissance is required.		
(2) Stealth is required.		
(3) Enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made.		
(4) Vehicle movement is restricted by terrain.		
(5) Time is not limited.		
(6) Security is the primary concern.		
l. Develop a security plan.		
(1) Assign each subordinate element a sector of responsibility. (They are responsible for their sector during movement and at the halt.)		
m. Coordinate passage of lines as necessary.		
n. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.		
o. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Integrate indirect fire support for mounted and dismounted tactical movement.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Assign direct fire responsibilities.		
(d) Plan obscuration fires as required.		
(e) Plan deception fires as necessary.		
(f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions and to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Include engineers in the reconnaissance effort if possible.		
(b) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements.		
(e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the TF zone or axis.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the TF.		
(d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.		
(a) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective.		
(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the BN/TF is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Plan recovery operations.		
(b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (such as refueling).		
(c) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(d) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(e) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the TF reaches its objective. (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)		
(f) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
p. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for tactical movement.		
a. Performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles before movement and identifies all non-mission capable (NMC) vehicles.		
b. Loads all vehicles IAW load plans and CSS plan.		
c. Briefs movement plan.		
(1) Specifies conditions under which the BN/TF will change movement techniques and or formations.		
(2) Designates bounding and overwatch elements based on factors of METT-TC.		
(3) Briefs waypoints for checkpoints, boundaries, and so forth.		
(4) Briefs signals and or FM commands used for command and control.		
d. Verifies communications in all vehicles prior to movement.		
e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent.		
f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
g. Positions elements for the movement.		
5. BN/TF executes tactical movement.		
a. Initiates movement from the assembly area to the line of departure (LD).		
Note: Command group is positioned where it can best control the operation.		
(1) Conducts passage of lines if required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Moves using the following fundamentals.		
(a) Moves as fast as the situation allows.		
(b) Positions weapons platoons, squads, or teams where they can provide responsive fires in the event of enemy contact. (for example, mortars).		
(c) Moves undetected to the designated point specified in the OPORD.		
(d) Positions advance guards so that they can maneuver to support each other when two companies are used.		
(e) Positions lead elements of the main body so they can move to positions to support the advance guard.		
6. BN/TF crosses the LD and moves using the appropriate formation based on the factors of METT-TC.		
a. Reports crossing to higher headquarters.		
b. Uses the formation that provides the proper control, security, and speed.		
c. Selects column formation.		
(1) Selected when speed is critical, when the BN/TF is moving through restricted terrain on a specific route, and when enemy contact is not likely.		
(2) Integrates traveling overwatch movement for its lead element and traveling movement for its following companies/company teams.		
(3) Requires flank security.		
d. Selects wedge formation.		
(1) Selected when contact is possible or the enemy situation is unclear.		
e. Selects vee formation.		
(1) Selected when enemy contact is possible.		
f. Selects echelon formation.		
(1) Selected to maintain security and observation of one flank and enemy contact is not likely.		
g. Select line formation.		
(1) Selected when assaulting a weakly defended objective or crossing danger areas and maximum firepower is needed to the front.		
h. Selects box formation.		
(1) Selected if the commander wants to arrange the BN/TF with two companies forward and two companies trailing		
(2) Selected when speed of movement ease of control is desired or required.		
i. Adjusts formation during limited visibility to maintain visual contact between elements and to maintain the rate of movement.		
j. Executes the movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC.		
(1) Adjusts the movement technique to provide greater security as the probability of enemy contact increases.		
Note: Movement techniques are used when not in contact with the enemy. In effect, once contact is made, movement techniques end and fire and maneuver are used to eliminate the enemy threat.		
(2) Employs traveling technique as directed. (lead unit[s]).		
(a) Maintains separation.		
(b) Maintains integrity as much as possible and organizes the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission.		
(3) Employs traveling overwatch technique as directed. (lead unit[s]).		
(a) Moves in a column or wedge formation.		
(b) Positions an element as lead and elements as trail.		
(c) Maintains 360 degree security.		
(4) Employs bounding overwatch technique as directed. (lead unit[s]).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Designates the initial bounding and initial overwatch element(s) and specify either the alternate or successive bounding method. (commander).		
7. BN/TF elements maintain formation with correct interval, speed, and or lateral dispersion IAW commander's guidance or TSOP.		

8. BN/TF elements maintain security.
    a. Maintain security forward, to flanks, and rear.
    b. Avoid gaps between the main body and security elements.
    c. Keep all likely high-speed approaches into the main body under observation.
    d. Locate and warn of approaching enemy forces in time to deploy.		

* 9. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.
    a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
    b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		

10. BN/TF elements take actions at halts IAW TSOP.		
11. BN/TF transitions to fire and maneuver if enemy contact is made.		
12. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.		
13. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.		
14. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
15. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
16. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
17. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009.07-IOTE	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.   Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes actions on contact IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts fire and maneuver to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1216)

(FM 100-14)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-10(HTF))	(FM 90-10-1)
(FM 90-7)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend in the forward portion of an urban main battle area (MBA) to defeat the enemy forward and prevent penetration of the MBA. Higher headquarters has positioned a security force forward of the BN/TF to delay the enemy and give early warning of the enemy's approach. The security force withdraws and conducts battle handover to the BN/TF. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF defends a built-up area IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF assists the rearward passage of lines for security forces. The BN/TF occupies and prepares defensive positions. The BN/TF engages and defeats the enemy forward, and prevents penetration of the MBA. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The BN/TF can conduct the full range of defensive operations within a single built-up area (BUA) or in an area of operations (AO) that contains several small towns or villages. However, there are special considerations that the commander and staff must consider when defending in a BUA.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Express the commander's visualization of anticipated enemy actions integrated with the staff's intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
    b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    c. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
    d. Conduct IPB.
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).
        (3) Conduct a detailed analysis of the enemy and civilian population. Include the following as a minimum.
            (a) Determine size and capability of enemy within the BUA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(b) Determine known and potential tactics of enemy forces operating outside and within the BUA.
      (c) Determine nature and makeup of local civil population.
   (4) Conduct a detailed terrain analysis including the following as a minimum.
      (a) Analyze current intelligence and aerial photographs.
      (b) Analyze civilian maps and diagrams.
      (c) Analyze natural defensive characteristics of the terrain considering three-dimensional environment of urban areas: airspace, surface, and subsurface.
      (d) Analyze subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes.
      (e) Analyze underground water, sewer, and utility systems.
      (f) Analyze electrical power stations and emergency services.
      (g) Analyze fuel supply and storage facilities.
      (h) Analyze mass communications facilities.
      (i) Analyze areas and facilities restricted by current ROE.
      (j) Determine mobility restrictions for both mounted and dismounted operations.
      (k) Coordinate with the brigade to obtain information update on civil population.
 e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
   (1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs).
   (2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.
   (3) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve.
   (4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.
   (5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.
   (6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.
   (7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).
   (8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.
   (9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).
 f. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.
   (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.
   (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.
   (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.
   (4) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.
   (5) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (intelligence officer [S2]).
   (6) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force.
   (7) Determine enemy vulnerabilities.
 g. Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning.
 h. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Determine how to array forces based on higher commander's guidance and factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(2) Determine the task organization and command and control (C2) arrangement of subordinate headquarters.		
i. Develop a defensive scheme of maneuver.		
(1) Define how the commander intends to mass the effects of direct and indirect fires with obstacles and use of terrain to shape the battlefield and defeat or destroy the enemy.		
(2) Develop a plan that focuses on a defeat mechanism.		
(3) Analyze forces and available assets with particular attention to obstacle assets and fire support assets.		
(4) Define the engineer and fire support allocation in terms of capability.		
(5) Determine what effect forces, fires, and obstacles must achieve on enemy formations by avenue of approach and how these effects will support the defeat mechanism.		
(6) Define the task(s) and purpose for subordinate units.		
(7) Establish priorities for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS).		
(8) Develop obstacle and fire support plans concurrently with the defensive force array, again defining a task and purpose for each obstacle and target in keeping with the commander's stated essential fire support tasks (EFSTs) and intended obstacle effects.		
(9) Identify where and when the commander will accept risk.		
(10) Identify critical events and, if required, phases of the operation.		
(11) Designate the main effort with associated task(s) and purpose(s), by phase.		
(12) Designate supporting efforts with associated task(s) and purpose(s), defining how they support the main effort.		
(13) Designate reserve planning priorities if a reserve has been designated.		
(14) Define ISR and unit security operations.		
(15) Outline the movement and positioning of forces.		
(16) Describe the concept of fires.		
(17) Integrate obstacle effects with maneuver and fires.		
(18) Identify the maneuver options that may develop during execution.		
(19) Identify means and mechanisms for exploiting defensive success.		
j. Coordinate the battle handover and a rearward passage of lines by the security force.		
k. Develop a communications plan giving special consideration to:		
(1) Address communications restrictions in urban terrain.		
(2) Address antenna positioning.		
(3) Address fire direction and air defense nets.		
(4) Address supplementary signals.		
l. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Designate priority of fires.		
(b) Plan targets along enemy reconnaissance avenues of approach.		
(c) Plan to engage approaching enemy formations at maximum range with indirect fires and close air support (CAS) if available.		
(d) Develop clear triggers to adjust fire support coordinating measures (FSCMs) and priority of fires.		
(e) Coordinate the movement of indirect fire assets to support the EFSTs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(f) Ensure movement of indirect fire assets is coordinated with the scheme of maneuver.		
(g) Develop and rehearse the observation plan to ensure all targets are adequately observed.		
(h) Ensure integration of fires in support of critical obstacle effects.		
(i) Plan fires to support actions in the rear as required.		
(j) Plan final protective fires (FPF).		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.)		
(a) Plan the transition to countermobility and survivability efforts in detail.		
(b) Plan to site situational obstacles early.		
(c) Plan multiple locations for situational obstacles to support depth and flexibility.		
(d) Plan and coordinate adequate security for obstacle emplacement.		
(e) Integrate triggers for obstacles in the decision support template (DST).		
(f) Coordinate obstacle effort along unit and adjacent unit boundaries.		
(g) Plan the countermobility effort to shape the enemy's maneuver into positions of vulnerability.		
(h) Plan adequate mobility support for the reserve and repositioning of MBA forces.		
(i) Develop obstacle plans that are synchronized with maneuver and fires and maximize all resources.		
(3) Plan and or coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support if available.		
(a) Plan to position ADA assets and radar along air avenues of approach to provide early detection and engagement of enemy aircraft.		
(b) Plan for radar masking and degraded communications.		
(c) Plan all-around air defense protection to the unit with mutual supporting and over lapping fires. (Weight fires toward likely air avenues of approach.)		
(d) Plan primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions to support defensive positions in depth, delays, and counterattacks.		
(e) Establish priorities of air defense protection based on the criticality, vulnerability, and recuperability of units and the enemy.		
(4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Position NBC R&S assets (if available) forward and at likely locations for enemy employment of chemical agents. (Support to counterattacking forces is especially important.)		
(c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities.		
(d) Establish decontamination priorities of support and effort.		
(e) Integrate the employment of smoke to support the defense.		
(f) Ensure all subordinate elements clearly understand changes in the priority of support, task organization, and positioning of NBC assets.		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Address casualty evacuation, equipment recovery, and resupply for security forces.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Plan the resupply of critical classes of supply for security forces to support a quick transition from their security mission to follow-on missions.		
(c) Plan prepositioned stocks of critical supplies.		
(d) Determine and or plan primary and alternate main supply routes (MSRs) to support the full depth of the defense.		
(e) Coordinate MSRs to avoid interfering with maneuver or obstacle plans.		
(f) Stockpile limited amounts of class III and class V supplies in centrally located battle positions (BPs) or locations.		
(g) Institute a C2 plan for CSS vehicles in the unit area.		
(h) Plan to send forward push packages of critically needed supplies on a scheduled basis.		
(i) Plan resupply during limited visibility to reduce the chances of enemy interference.		
(j) Plan to dispatch maintenance assets forward to reduce the need to evacuate equipment.		
(k) Plan for the use of aviation assets (if available) to resupply critical supplies.		
(l) Plan for the increased demand on decontaminants and mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear.		
(m) Plan for high expenditure of class V and increased demand of class IV (barrier materials).		
(n) Plan casualty evacuation.		
(o) Coordinate with higher headquarters' civil affairs (CA) teams concerning refugee control and CSS requirements.		
m. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive ISR operations.		
c. Conducts precombat checks and inspections.		
(1) Inspects and monitors the progress of defensive preparations to ensure they met the commander's timeline.		
(2) Seeks to identify shortfalls early enough to shift resources.		
(3) Pays special attention to the array of forces, fires, and obstacles along flanks, seams between subordinate elements, or other areas that enemy will likely try to penetrate.		
(4) Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
(5) Use the preparation time prior to the enemy's attack to build the strongest defense possible.		
(6) Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
(7) Positions forces IAW the plan.		
5. BN/TF occupies and improves defensive positions.		
a. Initiates occupation of defensive positions.		
(1) Issues a FRAGO and graphics to subordinate elements. At a minimum, the FRAGO includes the following:		
(a) Includes changes in friendly and enemy situations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Includes changes to unit tasks and purpose and general changes to the scheme of maneuver that facilitate occupation of the defensive position.		
(2) Enters defensive positions from the flank or rear.		
(3) Ensures that subordinate element sectors of fire and observation overlap and connect with adjacent units.		
(4) Designates defensive control measures and disseminates the information to subordinate commanders.		
(a) Identifies tentative locations for each company's primary defensive position.		
(b) Identifies target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas (EAs) and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions.		
(c) Identifies tentative locations for the subordinate unit's supplementary defensive position.		
(d) Identifies TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for supplementary defensive position.		
(5) Adjusts positions as necessary to cover TRPs, EAs, and or sectors of fire.		
(a) Verifies direct fire plans and proofs positions.		
(b) Adjusts primary positions as required.		
(c) Adjusts alternate and supplementary positions as required.		
(d) Selects covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions as necessary.		
(6) Completes occupation of the defensive positions.		
(a) Reports progress of the fight to higher headquarters.		
(b) Implements changes based on guidance from higher headquarters.		
(c) Refines direct fire plan including trigger lines, engagement criteria, fire patterns, breakpoints, and disengagement criteria as time permits.		
(d) Directs the unit to continue improvement of the defensive position with additional steps of a deliberate occupation as time permits.		
(7) Maintains security by employing scout platoon, observation posts (OPs), and so forth.		
(8) Provides security for elements working forward in sector such as engineers emplacing obstacles.		
(9) Secures obstacles.		
(10) Observes templated enemy landing zones (LZs).		
(11) Clears possible enemy OP locations.		
b. Continues to prepare and or upgrade defensive		
(1) Marks vehicle positions.		
(2) Marks fire control measures in the engagement area.		
(3) Digs survivability positions within the unit's capability.		
(4) Position ammunition caches.		
(5) Emplaces protective obstacles.		
(6) Reports progress to higher headquarters.		
c. Conducts ISR in front of defensive positions.		
(1) Designates reconnaissance group.		
(2) Designates overwatch elements for the reconnaissance group.		
(3) Moves to a vantage point to view defensive position from enemy's perspective if possible.		
(4) Uses covered and concealed routes.		
(5) Moves through engagement area and identifies all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and defensive terrain.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Evaluates any lateral routes.		
(7) Determines how the enemy will attack.		
(a) Considers how the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets.		
(b) Considers where and when the enemy will change formations or establish support by fire positions.		
(c) Considers where and when the enemy will conduct a breach and or assault.		
(d) Considers where and when the enemy will commit follow-on forces.		
(e) Considers effects of the enemy's combat multipliers.		
(f) Considers enemy's rate of movement		
(8) Updates fire plans and sector sketches and annotates graphic control measures.		
(9) Marks TRPs that match the enemy's scheme of maneuver through the depth of the sector.		
(10) Identifies terrain that corresponds to the unit's control measures.		
(11) Identifies alternate, supplementary, and or successive defensive positions.		
(12) Identifies covered and concealed routes between alternate, supplementary, and or successive defensive positions.		
(13) Identifies possible OP locations for indirect fire observation.		
d. Reports occupation of defensive positions to higher headquarters.		
e. Submits the completed fire plan to higher headquarters.		
6. BN/TF integrates obstacles into the defense.		
a. Identifies obstacles assigned to the unit by higher headquarters if any.		
b. Directs obstacle emplacement.		
c. Provides security during emplacement.		
d. Identifies locations for massing direct and indirect fires.		
e. Identifies and marks the necessary control measures on the ground.		
f. Identifies tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage.		
g. Sites obstacle group(s).		
(1) Ensures that obstacles are covered by direct and indirect fires.		
(2) Identifies dead space.		
(3) Marks general limits and orientation of obstacle group(s).		
(4) Sites and reports obstacles.		
(a) Reports completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover or transfer.		
(b) Reports grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures.		
7. BN/TF elements continue to improve defensive positions and conducts defensive priorities of work as time allows.		
a. Improve primary positions.		
b. Improve camouflage.		
c. Maintain security.		
d. Conduct rehearsals based on time available.		
e. Clear fields of fire.		
f. Establish thermal TRPs IAW TSOP.		
g. Establish wire communications.		
h. Emplace other early warning systems.		
i. Emplace chemical alarms.		
j. Improve alternate, supplementary, and or successive defensive positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

8. BN/TF executes the defense.
  a. Withdraws OPs and unit security elements.
  b. Assists the rearward passage of lines for higher headquarters' security forces.
  c. Engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.
    (1) Employs and focuses direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability. (subordinate elements).
    (2) Shifts, refocuses, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements. (unit commander and company commanders).
    (3) Employs indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan to achieve desired effects on the enemy force. (unit commander, fire support officer [FSO], and or company commanders).
    (4) Directs the lifting and shifting of indirect fires. (unit commander, FSO, and or company commanders).
      (a) Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements.
      (b) Lifts indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved.
    (5) Issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required. (unit commander).
    (6) Issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the specified displacement criteria.
      (a) Moves to alternate, supplementary, or successive defensive positions as required to maintain flexibility and survivability. (subordinate units).
    (7) Sends spot reports (SPOTREPs), SITREPs, and makes recommendations to higher headquarters. (unit commander).
  d. Consolidates and reorganizes to continue the defense or transitions to the attack.
  e. Complies with ROE and ROI.		

* 9. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.
  a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
 	
  b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		

*10. BN/TF commander commits reserves for counterattack IAW the higher commander's intent.
  a. Recognizes enemy deception efforts aimed at causing the premature or indecisive commitment of the reserve.
  b. Uses decision points and named areas of interest (NAIs) developed during construction of the decision support template to trigger execution of a counterattack.
  c. Defeats the targeted enemy force before being attacked by subsequent enemy forces.
  d. Seeks to avoid the enemy's strength. (The most effective attacks are against exposed enemy flanks and or rear).
  e. Takes advantage of the protection and concealment offered by the terrain and or limited visibility.
  f. Attacks with long-range direct fires from concealed positions synchronized with all available fire support.
  g. Launches counterattacks around other committed units rather than through them when feasible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Provides for the removal of the reserve or the integration of the reserve into the defense after the counterattack.		
11. BN/TF defeats the enemy forward and prevents his penetration of the MBA.		
12. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		
13. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
14. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
15. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5171	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5171.07-IOTE	Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6009.07-IOTE	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6072.07-IOTE	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6081.07-IOTE	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to enemy's location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
                HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1225)

(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 21-60)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend. The order requires the unit commander to designate a reserve force. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, and, an air defense platoon in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF employs a reserve force IAW TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander designates the reserve force, incorporates the force into the defensive plan, designates on-call missions, and commits the reserve at the decisive place and time. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Designate the reserve.
    b. Develop criteria for the commitment of the reserve.
    c. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.
    d. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).
        (1) Plan fire support for anticipated reserve missions.
        (2) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy.
    e. Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.)
        (1) Consider mobility requirements for the reserve.
        (2) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.
        (3) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.
    f. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
        (1) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
        (2) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(3) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
 g. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.
   (1) Ensure adequate AD of the reserve during movement to and actions on the objective.
   (2) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.
 h. Plan combat service support (CSS).
   (1) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
   (2) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as assaults by forward positioning of support assets.
   (3) Include reserves in the casualty evacuation plan.
 i. Conduct risk management.
 j. Prepare for the reserve operation.
   (1) Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
   (2) Provide the reserve planning priority.
     (a) Conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
   (3) Incorporate reserve force in rehearsal.
   (4) Conduct precombat checks.
   (5) Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		

* 3. BN/TF commander or designated staff positions reserve force.
   a. Position to weight the main effort.
   b. Position to allow the unit commander to react to unanticipated events.		

* 4. BN/TF commander or designated staff coordinates and synchronizes actions of the reserve force and other unit elements.		
* 5. BN/TF commander uses FRAGOs to direct the actions of the reserve force.		

* 6. BN/TF commander commits the reserve at the decisive place and time.
   a. Exploits success.
   b. Reinforces or maintains the momentum.
   c. Deals with enemy counterattacks.
   d. Provides security.
   e. Preserves the commander's flexibility.
   f. Reinforces fires.
   g. Adds depth.
   h. Blocks penetrations.
   i. Restores positions.
   j. Counterattack to destroy enemy forces and seize the initiative.
Note: When the reserve conducts the counterattack, it normally becomes the main effort and is given priority of fires.		

7. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.		
8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.		
9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.		
10. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		
12. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.		
13. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1234)

(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 34-130)	(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)
(FM 90-10-1)		

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) has conducted entry operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to establish a base of operation within its assigned area of operations (AO). The order includes environmental, construction, and restoration constraints. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes a base camp IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF organizes itself into contiguous or noncontiguous subunit sectors and base(s) with a defined, defensible perimeter. The BN/TF clears and/or marks minefields or booby traps before occupation. The BN/TF establishes and maintains local security on a 24-hour basis. The BN/TF constructs and/or restores base camp installations and facilities within environmental, fiscal, and legal constraints. The BN/TF determines security and/or force protection assets and needs. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The following are several techniques the BN/TF can use in the establishment of a base area: a base cluster; a single unit base with a defined, defensible perimeter; or several smaller bases, each with a defined, defensible perimeter.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). 　　a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. 　　b. Determines availability of installations, facilities, terrain sites, and civilian labor force if information is not provided by higher headquarters. (This task may be completed by the civil affairs team.) 　　c. Conduct a map reconnaissance. 　　　　(1) Selects base camp site if not assigned by higher. 　　d. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). 　　　　(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. 　　　　(3) Research intelligence database(s) and determine the following.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Determine nature, makeup, and urban concentrations of local civil and or military population.		
(5) Determine natural defensive characteristics of terrain.		
(6) Determine movement corridors throughout area of operations (AO) for both mounted and dismounted operations.		
(7) Determine conditions of existing roads, railways, pipelines, and waterways for use as military lines of communication (LOCs) and local civil and or military movement.		
(8) Determine potential base camp installations and or facilities or suitable terrain.		
(9) Determine proximity of threat to potential civil and or military facilities and installations.		
(10) Conduct analysis of security vulnerabilities.		
(11) Address human intelligence (HUMINT).		
(12) Define the battlefield environment.		
(13) Describe battlefield effects.		
(14) Evaluate the enemy. (Enemy refers to any belligerent force, faction, individual, or group that can impact negatively on unit operations.)		
(15) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems if applicable.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets if applicable.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets if applicable.		
(5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs) if applicable.		
(6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs) if applicable.		
f. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
g. Address security of main supply routes (MSRs).		
h. Identify other forces and or organizations operating in area.		
(1) Address coordination with other organizations.		
(2) Identify possible civil affairs (CA) and or civil military operations (CMO) activities.		
i. Develop a communications plan.		
(1) Determine proximity to lines of communications (LOCs).		
(2) Address communication architecture.		
(3) Designate location of command post (CP).		
j. Determine distances from urban areas.		
k. Determine location of possible landing zones and pickup zones.		
l. Designate priorities for protection of civil and or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
m. Determine security and or force protection assets and needs.		
n. Determine availability of host nation (HN) support.		
o. Plan fire support based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(1) Plan fires to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that affect the unit's mission.		
(2) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(3) Plan obscuration fires as required.		
(4) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(5) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(6) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(7) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.		
p. Plan engineer support.		
(1) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(2) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(3) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate BN/TF-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(4) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(5) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(6) Plan construction of CPs, bunkers, and observation posts (OPs).		
(7) Plan construction of force-protection structures such as earth revetments, wire obstacles, and defensive positions.		
(8) Plan the clearing or marking of minefields. (including minefield-fence maintenance).		
(9) Plan the clearing of booby traps.		
(10) Plan to provide backup support for identifying, marking, removing, or destroying explosive ordnance.		
q. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(1) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(2) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(3) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(4) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(5) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
r. Plan air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(1) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.		
(3) Plan coverage for base camp defense.		
s. Develop a combat service support (CSS) plan.		
(1) Determine existing facilities and or services.		
(a) Identify storage bunkers.		
(b) Identify maintenance and refueling areas.		
(c) Identify mess areas, showers, and latrines.		
(d) Identify aid stations.		
(e) Identify and or verify contracted services.		
(2) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(3) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(4) Coordinate with higher headquarter's logistics officer (S4) and requests assistance in planning contract requirements for logistics and base camp development.		
(5) Coordinate with higher headquarter's S4 for construction of additional facilities and installations.		
(6) Coordinate procurement and contracting within the unit.		
(7) Develop a health and morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) plan.		
(8) Determine environmental concerns, constraints, waste disposal, and so forth.		
(9) Develop an administrative support plan for non-United States (US) civilian augmentees.		
(10) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.		
(11) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.		
t. Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable).		
u. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate a quartering and or advance party as required.		
(2) Assign subunit sectors.		
v. Plan for integrating other forces operating in the AO.		
w. Plan for integration of fixed or rotary wing assets if available.		
x. Identify and request additional assets required from higher headquarters.		
y. Develop site recommendations and control measures. (additional ground or aerial reconnaissance may be required).		
(1) Obtain information concerning availability of civil and military sites and terrain.		
z. Conduct risk management.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for mission.		
a. Dispatches quartering party and or advance party.		
b. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
c. Conducts extensive ISR operations.		
d. Conducts precombat checks if required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
g. Coordinates with higher headquarter's operations officer (S3) and deconflicts proposed terrain and site assignments.		
h. Obtains clearance for use of site if required.		
5. Unit executes the plan. (occupies base camp).		
a. Moves IAW the controlling headquarters' order.		
Note: The BN/TF may initially move to an assembly area in the AO or it may begin to occupy the base camp directly from the march.		
b. Establishes local security.		
c. Clears and or marks minefields or booby traps before occupation.		
d. Establishes communications across the AO.		
e. Refuels vehicles and recovers any inoperable equipment.		
f. Establishes logistical facilities and medical aid stations.		
g. Continues ISR efforts in the area.		
h. Adjusts fire support plan and repositions fire support assets as necessary.		
i. Constructs protective shelters for key facilities.		
j. Emplaces vehicle barriers.		
k. Clears standoff zones around facilities.		
l. Erects pre-detonation screens to protect units and installations.		
m. Constructs or coordinates for construction of secure Class IV and V supply points and CPs.		
n. Rebuilds or coordinates for rebuilding LOCs if required.		
o. Repairs and clears airfields and helicopter landing zones for use in air evacuation and other operations if required.		
* 6. Commander and staff provide command and control (C2).		
a. Position headquarters to provide constant monitoring of subordinate units.		
b. Updates communications support plan.		
c. Refine area security plan.		
d. Ensure base development timelines are met.		
e. Plan contingencies and rehearse employment of quick reaction force (QRF).		
f. Identify shortfalls.		
g. Cross-level assets.		
7. BN/TF coordinates construction of temporary facilities and structures for displaced persons if required.		
* 8. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.		
a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.		
b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		
* 9. BN/TF commander vigorously engages in making personal contacts with supported groups, partners in the operation, and community representatives.		
10. BN/TF force complies with peace agreement guidelines, higher headquarters directives, and environmental constraints.		
11. BN/TF and subordinate elements comply with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1126	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1126.07-IOTE	Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5180	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5180.07-IOTE	Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to enemy's location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. The OPFOR destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts combat service support operations, and or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying an objective rally point with orders to conduct a raid against the enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. The OPFOR avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtains all required priority intelligence requirements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1243)
          (FM 71-2)   (FM 7-20)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. A lack of situational understanding (SU) has caused the advance guard of the BN/TF to unexpectedly encounter an enemy force. Time is available for the BN/TF commander to decide on a course of action (COA) and for the main body to fully deploy in support of the COA. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF fights the meeting engagement IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander and staff evaluate the situation and decide on a course of action (COA). The BN/TF deploys, redeploys, or redirects reconnaissance assets to gain information. The BN/TF executes the selected COA IAW the higher commander's intent. The BN/TF maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. BN/TF advance guard performs actions on contact and develops the situation.
     a. Deploys, reports, and determines the enemy's dispositions and intentions.
     b. Avoids a decisive engagement IAW commander's intent.
     c. Prevents a defending enemy from improving forward defenses.		

* 3. BN/TF commander reports contact to the higher headquarters.		
* 4. BN/TF commander or designated representative requests indirect fire and close air support (CAS) from the higher headquarters.		

* 5. BN/TF commander decides on a COA.
Note: BN/TF operations officer (S3) may forward time-critical details of the FRAGO to higher headquarters.
     a. Evaluates the situation. (BN/TF commander and designated staff).
     b. Deploys, redeploys, and or redirects reconnaissance assets to gain information.
     c. Considers a bypass.
     d. Considers a hasty ambush.
     e. Considers a force-orientated attack.
     f. Considers an attack by fire (ABF).
     g. Considers a hasty defense.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

h. Issues a FRAGO and graphics for the selected COA to subordinate elements.
       (1) Includes changes in friendly and enemy situations.
       (2) Includes changes to unit tasks and purpose and general changes to the scheme of maneuver.
    i. Considers a retrograde.
 	
6. BN/TF bypasses the enemy using one or both of the following bypasses techniques.
    a. Avoids the enemy and bypasses.
    b. Fixes the enemy by fire and bypasses.
       (1) Fixes the enemy with part of the maneuver elements and bypasses with the balance of the force using one of the following:
          (a) Directs the fixing element to fix and maintain contact with the enemy until relieved by follow-and-support forces.
          (b) Directs the fixing element to block the enemy by employing defensive, delaying, limited offensive action, and all available fire support until ordered to rejoin the bypassing force.
       (2) Reports status to higher headquarters.
 	
7. BN/TF executes a hasty ambush.
    a. Directs companies and or subordinate elements to occupy hasty firing positions.
    b. Maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react.
    c. Assigns companies and or subordinate elements sectors of fire into an engagement area.
    d. Masses fire upon enemy targets once the majority of the enemy formation is in the engagement area IAW the commander's intent.
    e. Reports status to higher headquarters.
 	
8. BN/TF executes a force-orientated attack.
    a. Deploys and engages the enemy to develop the situation quickly. (element in contact).
       (1) Maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react.
    b. Suppresses known and suspected positions. (designated overwatch element).
    c. Pushes forward and observes likely enemy counterattack routes. (scouts). (BN/TF commander maintains constant communication with scouts.)
    d. Requests indirect fires to block enemy routes of reinforcement and withdrawal and or to provide smoke to screen or deceive. (fire support officer [FSO]).
    e. Directs engineers (if available) to be prepared to conduct a breach of hasty protective and delaying obstacles. (BN/TF commander or designated staff).
    f. Directs employment of situational obstacles to protect the Unit's flanks and to help isolate enemy forces. (BN/TF commander or designated staff).
    g. Attacks a stationary force.
       (1) Destroys the enemy in position.
    h. Attacks a moving force.
       (1) Destroys the enemy in a designated engagement area.
    i. Attacks a withdrawing force.
       (1) Destroys the enemy by pursuit by fire, movement, or both.
    j. Reports status to higher headquarters.
 	
9. BN/TF executes an attack by fire (ABF).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Selects ABF positions that allow the unit to effectively engage the enemy and provide adequate cover and concealment. (BN/TF commander and designated staff).		
b. Directs companies and or subordinate elements to occupy designated ABF positions. (BN/TF commander).		
(1) Uses covered and concealed routs if available to prevent the enemy force from effectively engaging the unit. (CO/TM).		
(2) Secures the ABF position prior to occupation if time permits. (CO/TM).		
c. Determines location of enemy elements using reconnaissance, and surveillance (R&S) assets and updated common operational picture (COP). (BN/TF commander and designated staff).		
d. Places a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy positions. (CO/TM).		
(1) Calls for and adjusts indirect fires to suppress, destroy, or obscure the enemy force. (BN/TF commander or FSO).		
(2) Directs the shifting, refocusing, and redistribution of fires as necessary to destroy enemy forces. (BN/TF commander or designated staff).		
(3) Directs the lifting of fires to facilitate the movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved. (BN/TF commander or designated staff).		
e. Alternates firing positions as necessary. (Unit commander, designated staff, or subordinate commander).		
f. Reports status to higher headquarters.		
10. BN/TF executes a defense.		
a. Selects defensive positions that allow the BN/TF to effectively engage the enemy and provide adequate cover and concealment. (BN/TF commander and designated staff).		
b. Designates and distributes defensive control measures and disseminates the information to subordinate commanders.		
c. Designates target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas, and direct fire responsibilities.		
d. Occupies defensive positions. (companies and or subordinate elements).		
e. Engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met.		
(1) Employs and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability. (subordinate leaders).		
(2) Directs the shifting, refocusing, and redistribution of direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements. (Unit commander and company commanders).		
(3) Employs indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan or OPORD and or FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force. (Unit commander, FSE, and or company commanders).		
(4) Directs the lifting and shifting of indirect fires. (BN/TF commander, FSE, and or company commanders).		
(a) Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements.		
(b) Lifts indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved.		
(5) Unit commander issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required.		
(6) Issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified.		
(7) Reports status to higher headquarters.		
f. Defeats the enemy or conducts battle handover with follow-on forces IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

11. BN/TF executes a retrograde. (The BN/TF commander directs a retrograde when the BN/TF lacks the combat power to attack or defend, improve a tactical situation, or prevent a worse one from developing.)
    a. Establishes initial defensive positions. (lead elements).
    b. Repositions to the rear. (nonessential combat support [CS] and combat service support [CSS]).
    c. Employs indirect fires, obstacles, and smoke to assist forward elements with disengagement and displacement.
    d. Avoids becoming decisively engaged.
    e. Disengages and displaces to the rear. (forward elements).
    f. Reports status to higher headquarters.
 	
12. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.
 	
13. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.
 	
14. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.
 	
15. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
 	
16. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.
 	
17. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
18. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1009.07-IOTE	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1027	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1027.07-IOTE	Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1072	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1072.07-IOTE	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1135.07-IOTE	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1135A	Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1162	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1162.07-IOTE	Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1171	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1171.07-IOTE	Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.   Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1252)

(FM 3-34.2)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 20-32)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to immediately breach an obstacle that cannot be bypassed. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the breach IAW tactical TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF incorporates the breach tenets (intelligence, breach organization, breach fundamentals, mass, and synchronization) throughout its planning and execution. The BN/TF breaches the obstacles using the fundamentals of suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA). The BN/TF provides security (near and far side), reduces the obstacle, marks lanes, and passes through the obstacle. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). 　　a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. 　　b. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). 　　　(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. 　　　(2) Define the battlefield environment. 　　　(3) Describe battlefield effects. 　　　(4) Evaluate the enemy. 　　　(5) Develop the situation template (SITEMP). 　　　　(a) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs). 　　　　(b) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. 　　　　(c) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve 　　　　(d) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. 　　　　(e) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. 　　　　(f) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. 　　　　(g) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(h) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(i) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
c. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) of the obstacle system.		
(1) Determine the width, depth, and composition of the obstacle system.		
(2) Locate the following during reconnaissance of the obstacle:		
(a) Locate overwatch and or support-by-fire (SBF) positions to support the breach.		
(b) Locate all vehicle positions, antiarmor weapons, and enemy positions covering the obstacles.		
(c) Locate all reinforcing and existing obstacles.		
(d) Locate covered and concealed routes to overwatch or SBF positions.		
(e) Locate covered and concealed routes to the initial breach points.		
(f) Locate tentative initial breach points.		
(3) Prevent reconnaissance from disclosing the time, location, or plan for the breach by using unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) and other overhead platforms if available.		
(4) Provide early warning of changes in the obstacle system through continuous surveillance of the obstacle system and supporting positions.		
d. Use the detailed reverse planning process, SITEMP, and terrain products produced during mission analysis to determine the size and composition of support, breach, and assault elements.		
(1) Designate a support element.		
(2) Designate a breach element.		
(3) Designate an assault element.		
e. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Plan direct and indirect fires on the breach site to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces.		
(b) Plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations.		
(c) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the breach.		
(d) Plan fire support to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(e) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(f) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect the force from fratricide.		
(g) Integrate snipers.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions and or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions if available.		
(b) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force.		
(c) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(d) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)		
(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Coordinate air defense (AD) to cover the breach and passage of units through the obstacles.		
(5) Plan combat service support (CSS).		
(a) Coordinate additional resources as required.		
(b) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.		
(c) Coordinate casualty evacuation.		
(d) Plan and coordinate recovery and evacuation of vehicles and or equipment.		
f. Develop course of action (COA) using suppress, observe, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA).		
(1) Develop COA using suppress.		
(a) Identify the support element's axis of advance to support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Establish SBF positions that will allow the support element to fire simultaneously from different directions.		
(c) Establish target reference points (TRPs) to control the support and breach elements' direct fires.		
(d) Determine the location and size of critical friendly zones (CFZs) to protect the support element.		
(e) Plan essential indirect fire targets to assist in suppressing the enemy.		
(f) Develop a plan for lifting and shifting fires.		
(2) Develop COA using obscure.		
(a) Determine the location of smoke targets.		
(b) Identify terrain features that mask the company's point of breach and limit the number of enemy forces that can effectively observe and fire on the breach element.		
(c) Consider conducting the breach during limited visibility conditions, such as fog or darkness.		
(d) Determine smoke requirements.		
(3) Develop COA using secure.		
(a) Plan direct fire control measures as necessary.		
(b) Use terrain and the positioning of near-side and far-side security SBF near the point of breach to facilitate the survivability of the breach element.		
(c) Plan local security at the breach site to suppress overwatching enemy forces that are close to the obstacle.		
(4) Develop COA using reduce.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Identify primary and alternate reduction technique, such as explosive, mechanical, electronic, and manual.		
(b) Determine tentative location of lane(s) and the separation between the lanes, if applicable.		
(c) Identify tentative positions and routes for the breach element as it maneuvers toward the obstacle.		
(5) Develop COA using assault.		
(a) Develop objectives for the assault element.		
(b) Identify SBF positions to be occupied by the assault element to facilitate passage of follow-on elements.		
(c) Plan direct and indirect fire control measures that support the seizure of the far-side objective(s).		
(d) Develop SBF positions to be occupied by the assault element to facilitate passage of follow-on forces.		
(e) Determine if the assault element requires engineer support to reduce enemy protective obstacles and fortifications.		
g. Develop graphic control measures using higher headquarters' order overlay as a guide.		
h. Develop commitment criteria for the breach element.		
i. Conduct risk management.		
3. BN/TF prepares for the breach.		
a. Continues to collect intelligence throughout preparations for the breaching operation.		
b. Updates and revises SITEMP and ISR plan.		
c. Supervises subordinate element preparations.		
d. Conducts rehearsals.		
Note: At a minimum, rehearsals should include a leader and key personnel walk-through by support, breach, and assault elements.		
e. Issues the order and graphics to subordinate units.		
4. BN/TF command group is positioned where it can best control and synchronize the operation and react to changes in mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
5. Each element accomplishes its assigned tasks as the unit executes the breach.		
6. Support element moves to and occupies assigned overwatch or SBF positions.		
a. Uses available cover and concealment during movement.		
b. Suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the point of breach to protect the breach element.		
c. Suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the assault element.		
d. Adjusts SBF positions as necessary to continue to provide effective supporting fires.		
e. Calls for and adjusts indirect fires, including obscuration. (An airborne laser designator or Striker will be required for Copperhead munitions.)		
f. Maintains all-round security.		
g. Fixes enemy forces that are capable of repositioning. (if not being fixed by higher headquarters).		
7. Breach element moves to breach site and reduces obstacle.		
a. Reduces lanes in the obstacle.		
b. Provides local security. (farside and near-side).		
c. Provides additional suppression of enemy forces overwatching the obstacle.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Marks and reports the location of created lanes.
    e. Assists the passage of the assault force through created lanes.
 	
  8. Assault element passes through cleared lanes and assaults the objective.
    a. Seizes the farside objective.
    b. Reduces protective obstacles.
    c. Assaults the enemy's position.
    d. Prevents enemy direct fire from interfering with follow-on forces.
    e. Provides clear routes to the battle handover line (BHL) for follow-on forces.
      (1) Secures terrain that is essential to the passage of the follow-on force.
    f. Conducts battle handover with follow-on forces.
 	
  9. All subordinate elements continually update the unit commander and or staff during mission execution.
 	
10. BN/TF creates more lanes as necessary to speed the passage of follow-on forces.
 	
11. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.
 	
12. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.
 	
13. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.
 	
14. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
 	
15. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.
 	
16. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
17. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009.07-IOTE	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1198	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1198.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1TRE.07-C720	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion)	
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
17-1-0007.07-C720	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion)	
17-1-2651.07-C720	Integrate Engineer Support (Infantry Battalion)	

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
              RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1261)
          (FM 90-4)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The infantry battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to perform an air assault at a specified location and time. The latest extended weather forecast, up-to-date intelligence (with emphasis on known or suspected enemy air defense systems), and initial fire planning is provided by higher headquarters. The BN/TF commander is designated as the air assault task force (AATF) commander. The pickup zone(s) (PZ) and landing zone(s) (LZ) are adequate to support the air assault. The LZs and objective area are lightly defended. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped.   All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the air assault IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF elements arrive at the LZ with sufficient personnel, equipment, and time to accomplish the assigned mission. The BN/TF secures the LZ and repulses enemy attacks and/or counterattacks. The BN/TF completes consolidation and reorganization, moves to objective as directed in the order, or moves to PZs for extraction. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Air assault task force (AATF) leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. AATF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
        (1) Identify tentative primary and alternate pickup zone (PZ).
        (2) Identify tentative primary and alternate landing zone (LZ).
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
Note: When an infantry unit is given an air assault mission, the assigning echelon provides the latest extended weather forecast, up-to-date intelligence (with emphasis on known or suspected enemy air defense systems), initial fire planning, and many of the terrain considerations relevant to the operation.
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(5) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the BN/TF.		
f. Develop ground tactical plan.		
(1) Task-organize for combat.		
(a) Maximize combat power.		
(b) Ensure main effort element can mass forces on the LZ.		
(c) Ensure air assault force has sufficient assets for sustainment.		
(d) Ensure air assault force has general ground scheme of maneuver.		
(e) Ensure air assault force has Army aviation support to the ground maneuver plan.		
(f) Ensure air assault force has fire support (FS) plan.		
g. Develop a landing plan.		
(1) Include landing times, distribution, sequence and formations into the LZ.		
(2) Ensure fighting unit integrity during the air assault.		
(3) Address reconnaissance and overwatch and or screening instructions for attack helicopter forces during the landing phase.		
(4) Identify location of LZs (primary and alternate) based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(5) Identify troops, equipment, and supplies to be used in the air assault and sequence.		
(6) Include fire support during the landing phase that covers LZ preparation, lifting of supporting fires, and shifting the support to attack helicopters.		
h. Develop air movement plan in coordination with the air mission commander (AMC).		
(1) Provide instructions for air movement of troops, equipment, and supplies required for the mission, from the pickup zones (PZs) to the LZ.		
(2) Include start points (SPs), passage points (PPs), checkpoints (CPs), and release points (RPs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Address coordination of flight routes with adjacent and or forward units. (to avoid potential fratricide).		
(4) Address airspace management (air speeds, altitudes, and formations) if applicable.		
(5) Address actions en route, suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD), close air support (CAS) operations, reconnaissance and air assault security en route, and downed aircraft or abort procedures.		
(a) Designate an element(s) to guard downed aircraft as a result of the air-assault.		
(6) Include known or suspected enemy locations.		
3. AATF prepares for airlift.		
a. Performs final coordination and briefing between air mission commander (AMC), staff, and the helicopter unit commander.		
b. Formulates and disseminates finalized plan to all units involved with the air assault.		
c. Performs rehearsals of actions at the PZ, LZ, as well as loading, unloading, and staging.		
d. Annotates graphic control measures in Maneuver Control System (MCS) overlays. (digital equipped units).		
e. Builds essential information into MCS report and text files. (digital equipped units).		
f. Coordinates passage of lines if applicable.		
g. Coordinates fire support.		
4. AATF stages for airlift.		
a. Begins movement to arrive at the PZ at the designated time.		
b. Performs reconnaissance and establishes security.		
c. Task-organizes IAW the plan.		
5. AATF performs PZ operations.		
a. Loads aircraft in accordance with (IAW) load plan and task organization.		
b. Adjusts to changes in aircraft types and numbers.		
Note: Bump plan- for movement, a plan that describes, in detail, which individuals and equipment in each designated load or chalk has priority over others. This (bump) plan is used when means of transportation cannot carry all of a particular load.		
c. Implements bump plan.		
d. Controls stragglers.		
e. Maintains local security during loading.		
f. Loads all personnel supplies and equipment.		
g. Releases available attack and reconnaissance assets from PZ security as soon as the PZ has been secured by ground security elements.		
h. Dispatches attack and reconnaissance assets to perform air route reconnaissance and establish mobile flank screens for air movement to LZs.		
i. Uses aviation assets to provide overwatch during ground movement to and on the objective.		
6. AATF arrives at and secures LZs.		
a. Establishes an aerial overwatch and or screen of LZs for insertion of BN/TF.		
b. Establishes perimeter security to complete LZ activities and prevent surprise by the enemy.		
c. Establishes blocking positions on all high speed or high threat avenues of approach into the LZs.		
d. Repulses enemy attacks and or counterattacks.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Consolidates and reorganizes if necessary. f. Arrives at the objective area with sufficient combat power to perform the specified mission. g. Uses aviation assets to provide overwatch during ground movement to and on the objective.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009.07-IOTE	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5009.07-IOTE	Employ Army Aviation Assets (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5135.07-IOTE	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-1270)

(FM 100-5)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 19-15)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 3-4)
(FM 34-130)	(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)
(FM 90-10(HTF))	(FM 90-10-1)	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct security operations at a specified location and time. The order requires the BN/TF to establish a reserve force. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Local populace and factions may or may not be cooperative.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts security operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF maintains stability and reacts to hostile actions. The commander and staff establish priorities for protection of civil and or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the area of operations (AO). The commander designates a reserve force. The commander and staff enforce the rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The term "enemy" is used, in this outline, to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, and or an individual or group that is or may become hostile to US forces. The term "battlefield", when used in this outline, is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP) with emphasis on the following.
   a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
   b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
   c. Clarify any questions on the ROE and ROI.
   d. Determine documentation to be presented by persons passing through a checkpoint, roadblock, and so forth. (may be addressed in higher headquarters order).
   e. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
      (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Determine current intelligence gained through civil affairs and civil-military operations (CMO) activities.		
(2) Define the battlefield environment.		
(a) Identify locations of population centers.		
(b) Identify contentious issues between factions and ethnic groups.		
(c) Identify extent of authority and effectiveness of local governments throughout the AO.		
(d) Identify key leaders and centers of influence. (local government, factional, religious, business, and so forth).		
(e) Identify US units, foreign military elements operating in areas adjacent to the unit's AO.		
(f) Identify areas where US forces should not go (for example religious shrines, areas where the peace mandate or other agreement restrict US access).		
(3) Describe battlefield effects and how they may affect unit operations.		
(a) Evaluate infrastructure.		
(b) Evaluate terrain and weather.		
(c) Evaluate factors such as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics.		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(a) Identify factions that are active in the AO, to include strengths and weaknesses of each.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
(a) Determine what the enemy is capable of and what he prefers to do in like situations if unconstrained by the battlefield environment.		
g. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(5) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
h. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
i. Identify force requirements to execute the mission.		
(1) Establish a reserve.		
(a) Designate the reserve element.		
(b) Designate control measures.		
(c) Define linkup procedures.		
(d) Identify conditions for employment.		
j. Identify special equipment requirements.		
j. Identify force protection requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Establish performance criteria for continuous patrolling and reconnaissance.		
l. Established route clearance and control measures.		
m. Plan checkpoints and or roadblocks.		
n. Plan for conventional rear area security.		
o. Plan CMO activities.		
p. Established priorities for protection of civil and or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the AO.		
q. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). (based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC]).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Plan for use of smoke and other nonlethal munitions.		
(b) Plan triggers for suppression and smoke.		
(c) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(d) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(e) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical assets and to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support.		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(b) Identify survivability tasks.		
(c) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(d) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(e) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements.		
(f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. (based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis).		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions.		
(e) Develop decontamination plans and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by brigade.		
(a) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movement through restrictive terrain.		
(5) Plan combat service support (CSS).		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (c) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. (d) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.		
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		

4. BN/TF prepares for security operations.
  a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
  b. Conducts extensive ISR operations.
  c. Provides intelligence requirements to patrols, observation posts (OPs) and other US elements operating in the AO.
  d. Coordinates for liaison officers, local guides, and interpreters as required.
  e. Coordinates fire support plans with adjacent or supported units.
  f. Coordinates for augmentations such as civil military detachments, military police teams, military working dogs, and so forth.
  g. Conducts precombat checks as required.
  h. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
  i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. (includes TCF).		

5. BN/TF executes security operations.
  a. Assigns sub element AOs.
 	
  b. Establishes zones of separation if necessary.
  c. Conducts CMO activities as required.
  d. Implements plans to protect civil and or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain.
  e. Provides the following to subordinate elements that will accomplish security missions.
    (1) Provides purposes of mission.
    (2) Provides special constraints.
    (3) Provides unique tasks associated with the mission.
    (4) Provides updates to local situation.
    (5) Provides additional guidance as required.
    (6) Provides necessary attachments and special equipment.
  f. Assigns security missions to subordinate elements.
    (1) Assigns mission to patrol.
    (2) Assigns mission to establish and operate checkpoint and or roadblock operations.
    (3) Assigns mission to open and secure routes.
    (4) Assigns mission to establish observation posts (OPs).
    (5) Assigns mission to conduct weapons site inspections.
    (6) Assigns mission to provide escorts for military or civilian movements.
    (7) Assigns mission to plan and conduct civil disturbance operations.
    (8) Assigns mission to conduct a cordon and a search.
    (9) Assigns mission to secure selected sites. (voting sites, refugee camps, schools, churches, and so forth).
    (10) Assigns mission to enforce curfews.
    (11) Assigns mission to stabilize areas that have escalating tension.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

6. BN/TF headquarters controls stability operations.
    a. Enforces ROE and ROI.
    b. Maintains communications with higher headquarters and subordinate units.
    c. Conducts and or monitors meetings with community and factional leaders.
    d. Debriefs subordinates involved in operations as necessary.
    e. Demonstrates resolve, confidence, commitment, and sensitivity for local customs and people living in the AO by attending local events.
    f. Coordinates for disposition of detained personnel, documents, equipment, and weapons.
    g. Commits the reserve as required.
    h. Submits reports IAW higher headquarters order, TSOP, and or commander's guidance.
 	
7. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.
    a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
    b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
 	
8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.
 	
9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.
 	
10. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
 	
11. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.
 	
12. BN/TF processes captured documents and or equipment as required.
 	
13. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5036	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5036.07-IOTE	Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5081	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5081.07-IOTE	Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. The OPFOR destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts combat service support operations, and or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance.

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying an objective rally point with orders to conduct a raid against the enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. The OPFOR avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtains all required priority intelligence requirements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
　　　　　　　RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-3000)

(<u>FM 6-20-20</u>)	(FM 100-103)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 44-1)	(FM 6-20-10)	(FM 6-30)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)	(FM 7-90)	(FM 7-91)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a specified time and location. The BN/TF has direct support (DS) priority of fires and has been allocated close air support (CAS) sorties. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF employs fire support (FS) IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Fire support element (FSE) and TF Air Liaison Officer (ALO)/Tactical Air Control Party (TACP) participate in the targeting process. BN/TF FSE conducts battle tracking to maintain situational understanding (SU). BN/TF FSE executes lethal and non-lethal FS operations in support of the close battle, and for units in the security area. BN/TF FSE ensures fires are observed to determine whether attack objectives have been achieved. BN/TF FSE expedites immediate FS requests. BN/TF FSE executes immediate CAS. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. Fire support element (FSE) participates in the targeting process.		
3. FSE updates situation boards and charts.		
4. FSE conducts battle tracking, monitors maneuver, enemy, and fire support situation. 　　a. Stays abreast of the current branches and sequels. 　　b. Maintains ability to recommend implementation of a branch or sequel based on the probable outcome of the current operation.		
5. FSE executes lethal and nonlethal fire support (FS) operations in support of the close battle and for units in the security area. 　　a. Resolves any outstanding conflicts between the scheme of maneuver and the scheme of fires. 　　b. Assesses target intelligence information and target production to facilitate timely and accurate engagements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Coordinates and synchronizes the timely detection and attack of high-payoff target (HPTs) with the targeting team.
 	
 6. FSE tracks pre-planned fires in the FS plan.
    a. Monitor the process and execution of pre-planned fires.
       (1) Monitors on-call targets.
       (2) Monitors scheduled targets.
       (3) Monitors counterfire programs coordinated with the intelligence (S2) to identify and attack enemy indirect fire assets.
       (4) Monitors localized joint suppression of enemy air defenses (JSEAD), as required.
       (5) Monitors joint air attack team (JAAT) operations.
       (6) Monitors other indirect fires for example, naval gunfire, close air support (CAS), and intelligence and electronic warfare (IEW).
       (7) Monitors deep targets attack during current battle.
 	
 7. FSE ensures planned fires are updated based on the evolving tactical situation.
    a. Recommends changes to existing attack guidance if warranted.
    b. Confirms continued validity of permissive and restrictive FSCM.
    c. Updates geometries and FSCMs IAW current fight.
 	
 8. FSE ensures fires are observed to determine whether attack objectives have been achieved.
 	
 9. FSE conducts the following upon receipt of target nominations.
    a. Validates continued compliance with current ROE and troop safety guidelines through adherence to FS coordination procedures.
    b. Coordinates as required with higher, lower, and adjacent units, other services, allies, and host nation to clear fires for engagements across unit boundaries and to prevent potential fratricide situations.
    c. Issues fire mission request.
    d. Provides attack system manager with the following information.
       (1) Provide selected time of attack.
       (2) Provide confirmation of effects desired.
       (3) Provide any special restraints or requests for particular munitions types.
 	
 10. FSE expedites immediate FS requests.
    a. Processes request(s) for immediate FS to ensure:
       (1) Ensures request is consistent with force commander's guidance.
       (2) Ensures most effective means of fire support is requested.
       (3) Ensures airspace corridors are in effect for fixed and rotary wing aircraft.
       (4) Ensures timely fire support is provided.
 	
 *11. FSE monitors battle damage assessment (BDA) requirements and results.
    a. Requests BDA from executing units and or collection managers in coordination with the S2.
    b. Confirms availability of BDA support.
    c. Makes a recommendation to reengage if deemed appropriate.
    d. Provides mission fired roll-up as required.
 	
 *12. FSE executes immediate CAS.
    a. Communicates to higher headquarters if a request has been initiated already.
    b. Initiates immediate CAS requests on approved targets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Engages targets not approved for CAS by other fire support assets.
d. Transmits requests to the tactical air effects coordinator and targets to forward air controller (FAC) via tactical air effects coordinator.
e. Coordinates and uses artillery support until CAS arrives.
f. Uses unit fires and smoke to suppress observed enemy air defense (AD) weapons within range.
 	
*13. FSE updates the direct support (DS) FA unit.
    a. Uses Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS) to maximize information management.
    b. Relays unit element locations to DS FA unit.
    c. Coordinates new missions.
    d. Annotates appropriate AFATDS overlays and data files to reflect changes.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-3009A)

(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 6-20-40)	(FM 71-123)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. A targeting team has been designated (normally the fire support officer [FSO], S2, and the S3 or designated representative as a minimum). The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit has a field artillery battery, an engineer company, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit executes the targeting process in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and unit commanders and or higher commander's guidance. The targeting team identifies high payoff targets (HPTs) and or high value targets (HVTs) and determines how to locate, to track, and to engage them. The targeting team develops and incorporates targeting products into the OPORD. The unit complies with the ROE and or ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. Unit commander provides guidance for the targeting effort.
    a. What essential tasks fires must accomplish.
    b. Includes essential fires support tasks (EFSTs).
    c. Includes how he intends to shape the battlefield with collaborative lethal and nonlethal assets.
    d. Includes critical enemy formation, function, or facility that, if attacked will lead most directly to mission accomplishment.
    e. Includes targeting assessment requirements.		

3. Unit targeting team determines surface targets to be attacked while participating in the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Obtain EFSTs from higher headquarters order.
    b. Analyzes relative combat power.
       (1) Focuses on arranging specified and implied tasks on the battlefield in time and space.
       (2) Focuses on analyzing necessary combat power needed to achieve the tasks.
       (3) Focuses on friendly capabilities pertaining to the operation. (combat, combat support [CS], and combat service support [CSS]).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Focuses on what type operations may be possible from both friendly and enemy perspectives.		
(5) Focuses on how and where the enemy may be vulnerable.		
c. Analyzes relative force FS ratios (friendly versus enemy) and compares strengths and weaknesses of each.		
d. Establishes the HPTs and or HVTs list.		
(1) Ensures targeting members have HVTs list for each enemy course of action (COA) (from intelligence preparation of the battlefield [IPB]).(S2 section)		
(a) Portrays the HVTs in time and space on a map background with respect to a situation template (SITEMP).		
(b) Portrays the HVTs in time phase lines using common tactical picture (CTP) notional overlays. (digital equipped units).		
(2) Ensures targeting members have CTP notional overlay file name of the friendly COA sketch(es) (from MDMP). (S3 section). (digital equipped units).		
(a) Reviews choke points or areas favorable to engaging forces. (This step is accomplished by the staff engineer, if available.)		
(3) Establishes the initial target notional overlay using CTP. (Fire support element [FSE], with input from the S2, S3, and staff engineer [if available]).		
(4) Analyze HVTs against friendly mission and assets to develop an initial HPT list by phase for each COA. (FSE and S2 section).		
(5) Refines the HPT list and the target overlay(s) as part of COA analysis (war gaming). (targeting team)		
e. Determines time and method to engage the HPTs and or HVTs and incorporates conclusions into the attack guidance matrix (AGM).		
Note: At a minimum, AGM will specify desired effects and systems used and addresses lethal and nonlethal attack.		
(1) Develops targeting objectives; for example, the effects of target attack on the enemy's capabilities (limit, disrupt, delay, divert, destroy, and damage) for each COA. (FSE, S2 section, and S3 section).		
(2) Describes the desired effects on targets by establishing attack guidance criteria; for example destroy, neutralize, suppress, and harass. (targeting team).		
(a) Establishes initial attack guidance criteria during COA development. (FSE).		
(b) Refines the attack guidance criteria during war gaming. (targeting team).		
(3) Identifies assets available to engage HPTs and or HVTs by phase of each COA. (attack managers such as the fire support officer [FSO], air liaison officer [ALO], S2, and S3).		
(4) Develops a concept of fires for each COA scheme of maneuver. (targeting team, led by the FSO).		
(5) Establishes the initial AGM, identifying which attack assets will engage the HPTs for each friendly COA. (FSE).		
(6) Develops target selection standards (TSS) for each option during COA development. (attack managers).		
(7) Establishes the initial target area of interest (TAI) overlay. (FSE, with input from the S2 section).		
(a) Ties TAIs to the DPs for execution of the attack.		
(8) Conducts line of sight analysis to support observation post planning. (staff engineer [if available]).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(9) Identifies assets available to the S2 to locate and track HPTs and or HVTs. (targeting team).		
(10) Considers HPT and or HVT signature and determine which ISR assets are best suited to locate particular HPTs. (S2 section and FSE).		
(a) Specifies the NAIs and TAIs that the assets will collect against.		
(11) Refines the TAIs as part of COA analysis. (targeting team).		
(a) Submits TSS to the FSE in order to develop the target selection matrix (TSM).		
(b) Submits TSS to the S2 in order to develop the sensor or attack system matrix.		
(12) Refine the AGM, TSS, and TSM for each COA as part of COA analysis. (attack managers).		
(13) Drafts the initial ISR plan for each friendly COA. (S2 section).		
(14) Identifies decision points (DPs) and triggers for target engagement during war gaming. (targeting team).		
(15) Refines the ISR plan, as part of COA analysis. (staff).		
(16) Develops target criteria (TCRIT) and target intelligence data (TIDAT) requirements. (FSE and S2 section).		
f. Determines how to locate and track HPTs and or HVTs by developing the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S). (See task: Plan Reconnaissance and Surveillance).		
g. Determines if, when, and how target assessment will be accomplished by developing the combat assessment (CA) guidelines.		
(1) Refines the initial named area of interest (NAI) notional overlay. (S2 section).		
(2) Establishes the battle damage assessment (BDA) criteria to determine whether target restrike may be necessary. (S2 section)		
(3) Identifies assets best capable of getting BDA and adds CA guidelines and BDA criteria to the ISR plan. (S2 section).		
(4) Refines the CA guidelines and the BDA criteria as part of COA analysis. (Staff).		
4. Unit FSE consolidates the HPT and or HVT list, AGM, and TSS in order to produce the fire support execution matrix (FSEM).		
5. Unit S2 section presents the weather, current and projected enemy set, and scheme of maneuver.		
a. Presents the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and enemy decision points.		
6. Unit S3 section presents the current and projected friendly set and scheme of maneuver.		
7. Unit FSE presents the concept of fires, HPTL, AGM, TSS, and CA guidelines for approval.		
8. Unit commander approves the concept of fires, HPT and or HVT list, AGM, TSS, and CA guidelines or provides further guidance.		
9. Unit targeting team produces and disseminates FRAGO or incorporates targeting products (fire support plan) into the OPORD.		
10. Unit targeting team updates the targeting products based upon battle update briefs, changes to friendly or enemy situation, FRAGO, and or unplanned events.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-6000)
(FM 44-8)   (FM 44-80)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The command post (CP) receives early warning of hostile aerial platform(s) in the area of operations (AO). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped.   All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.
  Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF CP and/or trains personnel conduct active air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms IAW the (TSOP), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. CP and/or trains personnel visually identify hostile platforms. CP and/or trains personnel take cover and destroy attacking hostile platforms, or force them away from friendly positions. CP and/or trains personnel engage non-attacking hostile platforms, as directed. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. CP and or trains personnel employ preparatory air defense measures. (CP is stationary).
    a. Sound air attack alarm to alert all personnel of the presence of hostile aircraft.
        (1) Alert all unit elements if situation permits.
    b. Seek cover.
        (1) Occupy predesignated fighting positions and field fortifications.
        (2) Mount vehicles if possible.
        (3) Employ available camouflage.
    c. Search assigned sector for approaching aircraft.
        (1) Visually identify enemy aerial platforms.
        (2) Alert the unit with a contact report containing the following information:
           (a) CONTACT or BANDIT(S). (Use cardinal direction, such as NORTH, EAST, and so forth.)
    d. Prepare personnel to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire if fired upon by aircraft.
    e. Make engagement decision.
    f. Report all aerial platform actions to higher headquarters.		

3. CP and or trains personnel employ preparatory air defense measures. (CP is moving). a. Alert vehicle commanders of the presence of hostile aircraft.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Alert all unit elements if situation permits.
  b. Seek covered and concealed positions or routes.
    (1) Disperse vehicles laterally and in-depth or vehicle operators continue to move unit.
    (2) Move vehicles to covered, concealed positions.
  c. Visually identify enemy aerial platforms.
    (1) Alert the unit with a contact report containing the following information:
      (a) CONTACT or BANDIT(S). (Use cardinal direction, such as NORTH, EAST, and so forth.)
  d. Prepare personnel to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire if fired upon by aircraft.
  e. Make engagement decision.
  f. Report all aerial platform actions to higher headquarters.
 	
 4. CP and or trains personnel engage hostile aircraft.
  a. Engage non-attacking aircraft only as directed.
  b. Engage attacking aircraft with all available small arms until destroyed or warded off.
    (1) Place weapon on highest rate of fire.
    (2) Select proper aim point for type of aircraft and direction of flight.
 	
* 5. Leaders supervise post attack activities.
  a. Give "All Clear" signal when hostile aircraft have departed the area.
  b. Forward damage report and personnel status report to higher headquarters.
  c. Coordinate casualty treatment and evacuation.
  d. Direct clearing of mission-hindering destroyed supplies and equipment.
  e. Coordinate replacement of equipment with higher headquarters.
 	
 6. CP and or trains personnel perform post-attack activities.
  a. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary.
  b. Secure enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) if any.
  c. Treat and evacuate casualties.
  d. Reconstruct damaged positions and field fortifications.
 	
 7. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
             HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-6009)

(AR 380-19)	(AR 380-19-1)	(AR 380-5)
(FM 100-34)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger task-organized force, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. All information systems are accredited to process and store SECRET data. Security guidelines and procedures for all information systems are distributed down to user level. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts information assurance (IA) IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF S2 section verifies and updates the unit access roster to ensure that all new and replacement users and operators possess the minimum security clearance required for operations. The S6 section uses IA tools to identify and neutralize possible threats to the BN/TF communications network. Staff sections monitor operations to detect security breaches and suspicious activities. Staff sections account for all communications security (COMSEC) equipment and classified material. All command post (CP) personnel understand the established emergency destruction procedures and continuity of operations plan (COOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF signal officer (S6), in coordination with other task force (TF) staff, develop the IA plan.
    a. Conduct mission analysis to determine specific issues for all information systems.
        (1) Determine systems operational concepts.
        (2) Determine risk assessments for operating these information systems.
    b. Identify possible threat factors to command assets, vulnerabilities, and personnel security issues.
    c. Determine what security architecture will be utilized to protect systems, networks, and information from attacks and intrusion.
        (1) Determine configuration of fire walls and guards for protection of enclave boundaries if available.
        (2) Plan the use of network intrusion detection system if available.
        (3) Ensure host computer protection through use of properly configured secure operating systems.
        (4) Establish password management procedures.
        (5) Establish access rosters and security clearances.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Plan the use secure protocols for identification, authentication, and privacy.		
(7) Establish procedures for information managers to maintain situational understanding (SU) of information warfare (IW).		
(8) Plan the use multiple security levels with hard separation between the levels.		
d. Determine information assurance management. (for example, security manager, security officer, and communications security [COMSEC]).		
e. Identify the main areas of concern for information assurance.		
f. Design security architecture to ensure data integrity, confidentiality, authentication, and availability of network resources.		
g. Develop emergency destruction procedures when information systems are subject to imminent danger or capture.		
* 3. BN/TF commander, with staff input, monitors and implements changes to IA security level.		
a. Changes IA security level based on reassessment of risks in current and future operating environment.		
b. Directs changes in CP security measures. (operations sergeant).		
c. Implements changes in section security, computer system security, and network security. (staff sections).		
(1) Ensures that all automation system access restrictions and IA tool kit are properly configured and initialized. (staff section information assurance security officer).		
(2) Verifies that all network access restrictions and tactical internet manager IA security tools are properly configured and initialized. (CP Network Security Officer [NSO]).		
d. Verifies that changes in CP security have been accomplished. (operations sergeant).		
4. BN/TF staff sections update CP access roster.		
a. Notify intelligence (S2) section of changes in personnel requiring access to the CP. (staff sections).		
b. Verifies that all unit personnel with access to classified systems and networks have the appropriate security clearance level. (S2 section).		
c. Updates CP access roster to reflect changes. (S2 section).		
d. Provides operations sergeant with updated access roster. (S2 section).		
5. BN/TF staff sections maintain control of information systems within their area of responsibility.		
a. Supervise maintenance of control measures. (section noncommissioned officer in charge [NCOIC]).		
6. BN/TF staff section computer system operators accomplish the following:		
a. Notify section information assurance security officer when changes are made to computer system hardware and or software.		
b. Update their computer system with latest virus definition update.		
c. Periodically run anti-virus software scanner IAW TSOP to ensure that computer system is virus free.		
d. Report all incidents of virus infections to the staff section information assurance security officer IAW TSOP or guidance from higher headquarters and or appropriate Army Regulation (AR).		
e. Secure computer system classified material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.		
f. Report all suspicious activities or suspected computer system or network compromises to the section information assurance security officer .		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

7. Section information assurance security officer accomplishes the following:
   a. Maintains accreditation packets for all automation systems assigned to the section IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
     (1) Updates each packet when changes to the automation system hardware and software occur.
     (2) Provides updated accreditation packet to S6.
   b. Ensures all systems are updated with the latest virus definitions and are virus free.
   c. Reports all incidents of virus infections to the S6 IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
   d. Briefs all new and replacement personnel on unit information security procedures, emergency destruction plan and COOP.
   e. Ensures that computer system classified material is secured IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
   f. Reports all suspicious activities or suspected computer system or network compromises to the section Network Security Officer (NSO).
 	
8. BN/TF S6 NSO maintains control of information systems within the unit area of responsibility.
   a. Monitors the security integrity of the network.
   b. Takes action to neutralize any threat to the network.
     (1) Disables selected network systems or device ports to deny the threat access to the unit network.
     (2) Reports breaches in security to unit commander and S2 or S6.
   c. Reviews and changes access control procedures.
   d. Changes network passwords IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
   e. Verifies all replacement and repaired systems are properly accredited to operate at the SECRET level in the systems high mode of operation IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
   f. Ensures all incidents of virus infections and network or computer system compromises are reported to higher headquarters S6 or G6.
 	
9. BN/TF staff sections control COMSEC material.
   a. Maintains control of COMSEC material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
   b. Updates cryptographic (CRYPTO) material at designated times.
   c. Destroys COMSEC material as directed by COMSEC custodian.
   d. Reports all suspected compromises to the COMSEC custodian.
   e. Documents the destruction of COMSEC material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
   f. Initiates emergency destruction plan on direction of COMSEC custodian or other emergency circumstance detailed in the unit TSOP.
 	
10. BN/TF COMSEC custodian accomplishes the following:
   a. Operates COMSEC field account IAW TSOP or guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
   b. Provides COMSEC support to the unit.
   c. Issues new COMSEC material.
   d. Directs the change of CRYPTO variables and or material at designated or directed times.
   e. Accounts for the issue, turn-in, or destruction of COMSEC material.
   f. Reports all suspected COMSEC compromises to higher headquarters S6 or G6.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Directs the initiation of the emergency destruction plan.		

11. BN/TF staff sections control classified material. (other than automation or COMSEC).
    a. Maintains control of classified material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
    b. Destroys classified material as directed by S2 security manager.
    c. Reports all suspected compromises to the S2 security manager.
    d. Documents the destruction of classified material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
    e. Initiates emergency destruction plan on direction of S2 security manager or other emergency circumstance detailed in the unit TSOP.		

12. BN/TF S2 security manager accomplishes the following.
    a. Establishes classified document field account IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, and or appropriate AR.
    b. Provides classified document support to the unit.
    c. Distributes new classified material.
    d. Accounts for the issue, turn-in, or destruction of classified material.
    e. Reports all suspected classified document compromises to the division G2.
    f. Directs the initiation of the emergency destruction plan.		

13. BN/TF S6 prepares the information assurance annex to the unit operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
                RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-6018)

(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-100)	(FM 3-3-1)
(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 3-7)

ITERATION:		1M	2M	3M	4M 5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The enemy effectively employs chemical weapons against the BN/TF resulting in contamination. The power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) is available for augmentation upon request. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts operational decontamination (IAW) TSOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF performs task 07-1-6054, React to Chemical Attack, prior to conducting decontamination. The BN/TF coordinates for operational decontamination support. The BN/TF moves to the decontamination site and conducts operational decontamination while maintaining security.
.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Task steps and performance measures preceded by (D) indicate requirements that digitized units should execute using the referenced digital system or by other digital means, as appropriate. Non-digitized units will achieve the established standards IAW analog procedures when executing these requirements.		
* 1. (D) BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other information available through ABCS.		
2. BN/TF reacts to chemical attack.		
3. BN/TF reports contamination to higher headquarters. (chemical officer [CHEMO]). a. (D) Submits NBC1 report via FBCB2. b. Reports time the unit became contaminated. c. Reports number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated. d. Reports type of contamination. e. Coordinates with higher headquarters commander for relief from current mission.		
4. BN/TF commander and staff determine the extent of contamination and establish decontamination priorities.		
5. BN/TF commander or designated staff coordinates operational decontamination support from higher headquarters. a. Coordinates decontamination site.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Ensures site has good overhead concealment.
        (2) Ensures site has good drainage.
        (3) Ensures site is off the main route, but within easy access for vehicles.
        (4) Ensures site is large enough to handle vehicle wash-down and mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear exchange.
        (5) Ensures site has adequate available water source.
   b. (D) Transmits location, overlay, and specific instructions via FBCB2 and voice communications.
 	
 6. BN/TF establishes communications with supporting power-driven decontaminating equipment (PDDE) team.
 	
 7. BN/TF dispatches nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel and advance party (including logistics support) to prepare decontamination site.
   a. Establishes communications with higher headquarters NBC staff and PDDE team as necessary.
   b. Establishes site security.
   c. Links up with higher headquarters NBC staff and PDDE team at decontamination site.
   d. Establishes vehicle washdown site, in coordination with higher headquarters NBC staff and PDDE team.
   e. Prepares MOPP gear exchange site at a clean area upwind from vehicle washdown.
   f. Ensures the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required.
 	
 8. BN/TF elements conduct tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepare for operational decontamination.
   a. Establish and maintain local security IAW TSOP or commander's guidance.
   b. Prepare vehicles for washdown.
 	
 9. BN/TF performs vehicle decontamination.
   a. Ensures vehicle hatches are closed and secured.
   b. Follows guidance of site officer, noncommissioned officer (NCO) in charge, or PDDE crew in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.
   c. Assists PDDE crew in decontaminating vehicles as required.
   d. Moves vehicles, if applicable, to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by the officer or noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).
   e. Prevents spread of NBC contamination.
 	
 10. Under supervision of the BN/TF chemical officer and NBC NCO, site officer or NCOIC, or decontamination team, BN/TF conducts MOPP gear exchange.
   a. Completes the following steps in sequence, using the buddy system.
        (1) Decontaminates and drops gear (weapon, helmet, load bearing equipment (LBE), mask carrier, and personal items).
        (2) Decontaminates hood and gloves, and rolls up hood.
        (3) Removes overgarment and overshoes.
        (4) Puts on clean overgarment.
        (5) Puts on clean overboots and gloves.
        (6) Secures hood.
        (7) Secures gear.
 	
 11. BN/TF completes decontamination activities.
   a. Mounts vehicles in designated holding area and moves to post decontamination assembly area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.		
b. Follows additional guidance of officer in charge (OIC) or NCOIC as required.		
c. Ensures that the higher headquarters PDDE crew covers, marks, and departs contaminated area.		
*12. (D) BN/TF commander reports completion of decontamination to higher headquarters via FBCB2 or voice communication.		
13. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
                  HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-6027)

(FM 100-5)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 100-6)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 19-30)	(FM 20-3)
(FM 21-60)	(FM 24-33)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 34-1)	(FM 34-40-7)
(FM 34-60)	(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)
(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	(FM 7-85)	(FM 90-2)

           ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

           COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently, or as part of a higher headquarters, and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities. The enemy has the capability to detect the BN/TF visually, audibly, and electronically. Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGOs), private organizations (PVOs), organizations of the international community (IC), and news media may be present in the area. The main command post (CP) is operational. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is providing information to higher headquarters and subordinate units in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters and BN/TF tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF maintains OPSEC measures IAW TSOP, the operations order (OPORD), and or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF denies the enemy critical information regarding current and future operations and status by: analyzing OPSEC considerations during conduct of mission analysis; identifying OPSEC measures during course of action (COA) development; developing essential elements of friendly information (EEFI); and implementing signal, information, and physical security measures. The BN/TF monitors and refines OPSEC measures during operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF develops an OPSEC plan that addresses active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.
    a. Identifies indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.
    b. Develops a deception plan when planning missions.		

3. BN/TF prepares for OPSEC.
    a. Briefs subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success.
    b. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
    c. Conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR).		

4. BN/TF executes the OPSEC plan. a. Enforces measures that protect friendly information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Prohibits fraternization with local civilians.		
(2) Makes sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle.		
(3) Conducts inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials. (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs).		
(4) Enforces safeguards for weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.		
(5) Ensures all planning areas and positions are sanitized after use or before unit elements depart their areas.		
b. Mans and performs surveillance from observation posts (OPs).		
c. Conducts counter reconnaissance patrols if possible.		
d. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered.		
e. Conducts stand-to procedures.		
f. Establishes local security.		
g. Establishes specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
h. Uses camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions.		
(1) Covers all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.		
(2) Uses terrain and vegetation for concealment.		
i. Avoids footpaths, trails, and or roads where possible.		
j. Erases tracks leading into positions.		
k. Controls movement.		
l. Uses the proper movement formation and movement technique.		
(1) Moves as fast as the situation permits.		
(2) Moves along covered and concealed routes.		
m. Enforces radio discipline.		
(1) Enforces the use of proper radio procedures.		
(a) Ensures subordinate elements change frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) and or TSOP.		
(b) Ensures subordinate elements use varied transmission schedules and lengths.		
(c) Ensures subordinate elements use established formats to expedite transmissions.		
(d) Ensures subordinate elements use encoded messages or use secure voice.		
(e) Ensures subordinate elements use brevity codes when possible.		
(f) Ensures subordinate elements use the lowest power settings possible.		
(g) Ensures subordinate elements avoid transmission patterns.		
(h) Ensures subordinate elements use and maintain radio silence as directed.		
(2) Ensures subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected.		
(a) Continues to operate.		
(b) Disconnects the antenna.		
(c) Switches to the highest power.		
(d) Relocates the radio.		
(e) Uses directional antennas.		
(f) Turns the squelch off.		
(g) Uses messenger and wire whenever possible, especially in static positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(h) Uses the radio in the quiet, message mode. Transmits an arranged number of taps or use the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner.
n. Enforces litter discipline.
    (1) Collects and back-hauls trash during logistics runs during stationary periods.
    (2) Carries trash until it can be disposed of securely.
o. Enforces light discipline.
    (1) Ensures subordinate elements conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map. (A poncho can be used for this purpose.)
        (a) Ensure all flashlights have filters.
    (2) Ensure subordinate elements remove or tape personal items that may reflect light. (identification tags, rings, and watches).
    (3) Ensure subordinate elements prohibit use of cigarettes and open fires during darkness or when smoke and or fire may be observed by the enemy.
    (4) Ensure subordinate elements use only passive night observation equipment if possible.
p. Enforces noise discipline.
    (1) Identifies shortcomings in noise discipline during inspections.
    (2) Ensures subordinate elements tape down or remove items that make noise.
    (3) Ensures subordinate elements use normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible.
    (4) Ensures subordinate elements prohibit talking except as required to conduct or plan operations.
    (5) Ensures subordinate elements use hand and arm signals to the fullest extent possible during daylight hours or with night vision devices.
q. Enforces information assurance.
 	
* 5. BN/TF leaders assess OPSEC measures.
    a. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan.
    b. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan.
    c. Direct adjustments as necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to enemy's location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-6036)

      (FM 3-4)   (FM 3-100)   (FM 3-5)

                    ITERATION: 1M   2M   3M   4M   5M   (Circle)

                    COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to take immediate actions necessary to establish a protective posture against a chemical attack in the area of operation (AO). All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF prepares for a chemical attack IAW TSOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF constructs and/or reinforces positions, briefs and/or inspects personnel, positions alarms upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. BN/TF receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to unit elements.
    a. Directs implementation of defensive preparations consistent with the mission and threat.
    b. Directs members to assume MOPP level 4.
    c. Ensures companies inspect personnel for proper fit of protective masks and clothing.
    d. Implements procedures to prevent contamination of equipment and supplies IAW the TSOP.
    e. Ensures designated personnel conduct monitoring.
       (1) Operates the chemical agent alarm continuously and upwind when the unit is stationary.		

3. BN/TF personnel take additional actions consistent with mission.
    a. Employ proper field sanitation measures and personal hygiene.
    b. Check operation of detection equipment as directed by leaders and supervisors.
    c. Identify or construct protective shelters.
    d. Use the buddy team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit.
    e. Cover all exposed equipment and supplies.
    f. Monitor area by testing with detector kits and or paper to determine level of contamination.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

g. Cover equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated.
    h. Attach M8 or M9 chemical detection paper to overgarments, equipment, and supplies.
 	
* 4. Leaders brief and inspect personnel.
 	
  5. Vehicle commanders and drivers prepare vehicles.
    a. Store water, rations, and equipment, not being used, in the vehicle.
    b. Close all hatches.
Note: Dependent on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
    c. Place covers on crew-served weapons. (dependent on the tactical situation).
 	
  6. BN/TF conducts a rehearsal time permitting.
 	
  7. BN/TF takes cover.
 	
* 8. BN/TF commander reports the results of monitoring IAW TSOP and guidance from higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-6045)
(FM 3-4)   (FM 3-3)   (FM 3-3-1)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to take immediate action necessary to establish a protective posture against a nuclear attack (friendly or enemy) in its area of operations (AO). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF prepares for a nuclear attack IAW TSOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF constructs and/or reinforces positions, briefs and inspects personnel, covers and/or hardens or otherwise protects equipment, positions alarms to monitor upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain and situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to unit elements.		
* 3. BN/TF commander establishes and checks backup command and control procedures. a. Coordinates and synchronizes actions of subordinate elements. b. Uses FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.		
* 4. BN/TF commander or designated representative supervises preparations. a. Ensures elements deploy for the best dispersion the tactical situation will permit. b. Ensures companies position alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions as required. c. Ensures individuals assume the appropriate MOPP. d. Ensures individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs. e. Ensures dosimeters are zeroed and initiates periodic monitoring. f. Ensures equipment is shielded or otherwise protected within the unit's capability. g. Ensures defensive positions or shelters are shielded or hardened within the unit's capability. Note: BN/TF leaders locate and select existing or reinforceable facilities, such as caves, ditches, ravines, culverts, overpasses, tunnels, and empty ammunition storage bunkers, for use as defensive positions or for protective shelters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Ensures platoons accomplish task steps in company task "Prepare for a nuclear attack."		
6. BN/TF conducts a rehearsal time permitting.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-2-6099	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Company)	ARTEP 7-10-MTP
		ARTEP 7-12-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Employ Nuclear Weapons (07-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: All available OPFOR conventional weapons and forces have been unable stop the enemy's forward progress. The majority of OPFOR units have been destroyed. Nuclear weapons are the only alternative for the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs nuclear weapons to destroy the enemy's advance. Measures are taken to ensure the enemy is unaware of the impending nuclear strike. The OPFOR is warned of a friendly strike and prepares accordingly.

ELEMENT:

TASK: React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-6054)
(FM 3-4)

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and must react immediately to a chemical attack. The unit headquarters is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Automatic alarm(s) sound or detector paper changes color. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF reacts to a chemical attack in accordance with IAW TSOP, and/or the appropriate field manual(s). The BN/TF sounds the alarm (vocal or non-vocal), assumes the appropriate MOPP level, takes cover, and notifies higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements prior to conducting decontamination procedures as the tactical situation permits.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander, staff, and subordinate leaders ensure soldiers react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical attack.
    a. Ensure soldiers spread the chemical alarm to all unit elements IAW the TSOP.
    b. Ensure soldiers put on protective masks with hoods within time standards.
    c. Ensure soldiers give the alarm: vocal or nonvocal.
    d. Ensure soldiers use collective protective shelters and cover (if available) or any other suitable shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination.
    e. Ensure soldiers decontaminate exposed skin within one minute of contact and before going into MOPP level 4.
    f. Assume MOPP4 as soon as possible.
    g. Check soldiers to ensure protective measures are followed.
    h. Determine extent of and disseminate information on the area of contamination.
    i. Ensure contaminated elements do not move through uncontaminated elements if applicable.		

3. Nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel initiate chemical monitoring IAW TSOP.
    a. Determine the type(s) of chemical(s) employed.
    b. Determine the extent of contamination.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. BN/TF headquarters takes additional protective measures.
    a. Conducts skin decontamination.
    b. Ensures soldiers monitor their buddies for signs of chemical poisoning IAW the TSOP.
    c. Ensures soldiers administer a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning, if applicable.
    d. Ensures soldiers administer self-aid with nerve agent antidote if applicable.
    e. Ensures soldiers or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within minutes or when the tactical situation permits.
    f. Conducts wipe down and performs spray down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination (DECON) kits within 15 minutes of attack.
    g. Protects exposed equipment and supplies.
    h. Uses prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.		

* 5. Designated leader initiates unmasking procedures WITH THE CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT (kit indicates negative results.)
    a. Chooses two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area if possible.
    b. Ensures test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear their masks.
    c. Observes test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes.
       (1) If no symptoms of illness are detected, reports "ALL CLEAR".
    d. Directs the subordinate elements in the area to unmask (continues to watch for delayed symptoms).
    e. Ensures casualties are provided medical care.
    f. Reports casualties.		

* 6. Designated leader initiates unmasking procedures WITHOUT THE CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT, using M8 or M9 chemical detector paper.
    a. Chooses two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area, if possible.
    b. Ensures test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear their masks.
    c. Observes test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes.
       (1) If no symptoms of illness are detected, reports "ALL CLEAR".
    d. Directs the subordinate elements in the area to unmask.
    e. Ensures casualties are provided medical care.
    f. Reports casualties.		

* 7. BN/TF commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) situation dictates.
    a. Ensures individuals remain at the directed MOPP level.
    b. Ensures periodic chemical monitoring.		

8. BN/TF submits NBC 1 report to higher headquarters immediately. Note: The NBC-1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date-time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of agent and or burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).		
9. BN/TF consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.		
10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. BN/TF coordinates operational decontamination, resupply of replacements, and MOPP exchange for all contaminated elements within six hours of being contaminated.		
12. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-6063)

(FM 3-3)	(FM 33-1)	(FM 3-3-1)
(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 3-6)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. BN/TF elements observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud, a monitoring device detects a nuclear hazard, or the unit receives a strike warning (STRIKEWARN). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF command post (CP) takes immediate protective actions, reports the attack, and treats casualties. MOPP level specified by the commander is reached, and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions.
    a. Takes action without receiving a warning.
        (1) Closes eyes immediately.
        (2) Drops to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately drops down inside the vehicle).
        (3) Keeps head and face down and helmet on.
        (4) Remains prone until the blast wave passes and all debris stops falling.
    b. Takes action after receiving a warning.
        (1) Identifies the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside shelters).
        (2) Moves to the shelter.
        (3) Takes actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. Assume the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level.
        (4) Keeps clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.
        (5) Protects eyes and minimize exposed skin areas.
 	
* 2. Leaders consolidate and reorganize the unit.
    a. Reestablish chain of command.
    b. Reestablish communications within unit and with higher headquarters.
    c. Submit NBC 1 (Nuclear) report to higher headquarters.
Note: The NBC-1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).
    d. Treat casualties.
    e. Report casualties.
    f. Evacuate casualties.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

g. Evaluate facilities for protection from residual radiation.
h. Implement continuous monitoring.
   (1) Monitors buddies for signs of radiation sickness (individual soldiers).
i. Reports personnel total dose daily to higher headquarters IAW the TSOP.
j. Requests guidance from higher headquarters on the operation exposure guidance (OEG) established by the higher headquarters commander.
Note: If the BN/TF receives fallout, the higher headquarters commander determines whether the unit should remain in position or move based on the mission, tactical situation, radiation dosage received, and or current dosage rate.
k. Submit damage assessment to higher headquarters.
l. Initiate area damage control plan as required.
m. Sends updated situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters as necessary.
 	
3. Soldiers extinguish all fires before they spread out of control.
 	
* 4. Leaders ensure weapon systems are operational.
 	
5. BN/TF conducts immediate decontamination and coordinates operational decontamination (as soon as the tactical situation permits).
 	
6. Soldiers right overturned vehicles if possible.
   a. Check loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.
   b. Perform operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.
 	
7. Soldiers improve cover if applicable.
 	
8. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Employ Nuclear Weapons (07-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: All available OPFOR conventional weapons and forces have been unable stop the enemy's forward progress. The majority of OPFOR units have been destroyed. Nuclear weapons are the only alternative for the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs nuclear weapons to destroy the enemy's advance. Measures are taken to ensure the enemy is unaware of the impending nuclear strike. The OPFOR is warned of a friendly strike and prepares accordingly.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-6072)
            (FM 100-14)   (FM 19-15)   (FM 19-40)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure civilians to protect them from injuries that could be incurred during BN/TF combat operations. The civilians may be refugees and some may be inhabitants of the area in which the BN/TF is operating. Some civilians may be openly hostile toward friendly forces. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and non-combatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF secures civilians during operations in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF identifies and segregates combatants and non-combatants, searches them, safeguards them, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations (AO). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The term "enemy" is used, in this outline, to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, and or an individual or group that is or may become hostile to United States (US) forces. The term "battlefield", when used in this outline, is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and develop a plan for securing the civilians.
     a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
     b. Conduct a map reconnaissance if not familiar with the AO.
     c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets required to support the mission.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
        (4) Evaluate the enemy.
        (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
     d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) based on the factors of METT-TC.
        (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.
        (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Request interpreters to help interface with the local populace if necessary.		
f. Develop control measures for expected or unexpected situations.		
g. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Identify security elements.		
(2) Identify search elements.		
(3) Identify guard elements.		
h. Designate an intermediate collection point to deal with large numbers of civilians.		
i. Coordinate for additional combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets as required.		
j. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis .		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(2) Plan engineer support.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(4) Plan air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(5) Plan CSS.		
k. Select and designate methods of communications.		
l. Plan casualty evacuation.		
m. Develop a media plan.		
3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) IAW the commander's intent.		
c. Conducts precombat checks IAW the commander's intent.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
e. Conducts rehearsals if possible.		
f. Positions forces IAW the plan.		
5. BN/TF executes the mission.		
a. Establishes and maintains 360 degree and three-dimensional security in the AO in which civilians are gathered.		
b. Segregates civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treats them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
c. Searches civilians.		
(1) Keeps identification papers with civilians under all circumstances, regardless of status.		
d. Restrains and detains noncombatants who do not follow instructions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Safeguards noncombatants and provides humane but firm treatment at all times.
(2) Moves noncombatants away from fire fights and the immediate combat area.
e. Provides food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical ROE for civilian medical treatment.
 f. Assigns guards to escort civilians out of the immediate AO.
 (1) Evacuates civilians to a processing and reception station or to an intermediate collection point.
g. Reports this situation and status in a timely manner to higher headquarters.
h. Gives proper consideration to the situation of the press and local officials.
 (1) Follows ROE and ROI guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain.
 	
* 6. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.
  a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
  b. Ensure civilians are treated with respect.
  c. Enforce ROE and ROI.
  d. Ensure elements understand procedures for dealing with news media.
  e. Use FRAGOs as necessary to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
 	
7. BN/TF intelligence (S2) section processes combatants and or suspected war criminals as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, TSOP, or other guidance.
  a. Inspects and processes captured documents.
  b. Inspects and processes captured material and equipment.
  c. Coordinates with the unit logistics officer (S4) to evacuate captured material equipment and EPWs.
  d. Identifies and reports time sensitive information to higher headquarters immediately using a SPOTREP with at least an IMMEDIATE precedence.
 	
8. BN/TF continues operations as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2000.07-IOTE	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-4000	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-4000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-4009.07-IOTE	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6009.07-IOTE	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-6081)

(DA FORM 1355-1-R)	(DA FORM 5032-R)	(FM 100-14)
(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 3-34.2)
(FM 5-100)	(FM 5-101)	(FM 5-102)
(FM 5-103)	(FM 5-170)	(FM 5-20)
(FM 5-34)	(FM 5-35)	(FM 5-71-2)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission (offensive or defensive) at a specified time and location. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts mobility, countermobility, and/or survivability operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF integrates and synchronizes battlefield operating systems (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The BN/TF conducts extensive reconnaissance of enemy and friendly approaches, routes, and terrain. The BN/TF executes engineer tasks IAW the commander's intent. The BN/TF sites obstacles to provide force protection or breaches obstacles to provide freedom of maneuver. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF engineer and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and plan using the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
    c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
        (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets.
        (2) Define the battlefield environment.
        (3) Describe battlefield effects.
        (4) Evaluate the enemy.
        (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).
    d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).
        (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.
        (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems.		
(8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct a physical reconnaissance throughout the MDMP.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Develop an ISR plan that ensures friendly obstacles are observed.		
(4) Sustain the ISR effort throughout planning and preparation phases, updating the plan and orders as required.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Designate the main effort as required.		
(2) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS).		
(3) Designate the supporting effort.		
(4) Designate a breach element as required.		
(5) Designate an assault element as required.		
(6) Designate a reserve as necessary and or as directed.		
g. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Synchronize fires to suppress, neutralize, or destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's mission.		
(b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(c) Plan obscuration fires as required.		
(d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(f) Plan fires to cover friendly obstacles.		
(g) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(h) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and or friendly support by fire (SBF) positions.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and R&S plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(g) Develop a scheme-of-obstacle overlay and obstacle-execution matrix IAW the mission.		
(3) Plan to support DEFENSIVE operations.		
(a) Develop a plan that focuses on maintaining the unit's freedom of maneuver.		
(b) Plan an obstacle system that not only attacks the enemy where desired but also assists counterattacks and facilitates future operations IAW the commander's intent.		
(c) Identify critical engineer tasks early.		
(d) Develop operations security (OPSEC) measures and a specific counterreconnaissance plan. (both prevent premature disclosure of the defense and are essential).		
(e) Task organization engineers so they can support a rapid transition to the offense.		
(f) Designate engineers to support the reserve.		
(g) Plan obstacles that allow spoiling and counterattacks to succeed.		
(h) Designate engineers that are not held in reserve but remain committed and work on the commander's priority tasks.		
(i) Plan obstacles for forward deployed forces.		
(j) Clear counterattack routes of obstacles.		
(k) Prepare breaches through friendly obstacles.		
(l) Construct combat roads and trails for counterattacks and lateral movement between fighting positions.		
(m) Plan to conduct breaching and assault-bridging operations for reserves or the counterattack force.		
(4) Plan to support OFFENSIVE operations.		
(a) Develop a plan that focuses on sustaining the offense's momentum.		
(b) Plan for a highly mobile engineer force well forward and integrated into maneuver formations.		
(c) Designate engineers or maneuver elements that are responsible for reporting and marking lanes or bypasses through or around obstacles.		
(d) Identify special considerations for engineer equipment such as replacement bridges for armored launchers, follow-on tactical bridging, lift capability for mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC) reloading, and lane-marking materials to replenish marking systems.		
(e) Plan for combined-arms obstacle-breaching rehearsals to ensure that all elements involved are synchronized.		
(f) Identify general-engineering requirements that will increase during offensive combat since lines of communications (LOCs) will lengthen.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(g) Plan for an on-call rapid-mining and rapid-obstacle emplacement capability that is essential for flank security.
(h) Designate engineers to emplace obstacles rapidly to protect attacking forces from enemy counterattacks once on the objective.
(i) Plan for a transition to the defense. (This is essential because of the long lead time needed to obtain and move engineer Class IV and Class V materials.)
(5) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.
   (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan.
   (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.
   (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.
   (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)
   (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.
(6) Plan air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).
   (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement.
   (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.
   (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain.
(7) Plan CSS.
   (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.
   (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort. (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)
   (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.
   (d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.
   (e) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.
   (f) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.
   (g) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable).
h. Conduct risk management.
 	
* 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
 	
  4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.
    a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
    b. Conducts extensive ISR of enemy and friendly approaches, routes, and terrain.
      (1) Locates all obstacles.
      (2) Determines size and boundaries.
      (3) Determines composition and breaching requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Determines gaps and bypass routes.		
(5) Detects enemy weapons covering each obstacle.		
(6) Determines available amount of cover and concealment on routes and approaches.		
(7) Determines best terrain for sighting friendly obstacles.		
c. Conducts pre-combat checks.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
f. Positions forces IAW the plan.		
5. BN/TF executes defensive tasks.		
a. Executes mobile defense tasks IAW the commander's intent.		
(1) Constructs combat roads and trails to allow friendly forces in defensive positions to reposition from one position to another.		
(2) Sites tactical obstacles to disrupt and delay enemy forces, to assist in the separation of echelons, and to turn the enemy into engagement and objective areas .		
(3) Sites fixed obstacles to support the enemy's destruction by fires.		
(4) Assists in developing survivability positions in depth.		
(5) Breach friendly obstacles to allow freedom of maneuver for the unit.		
(6) Breach enemy obstacles emplaced by air, artillery, or ground means.		
b. Executes area defense tasks IAW the commander's intent.		
(1) Retains centralized control over engineer elements and their resources.		
(2) Withdraws engineers to work on subsequent defenses in depth. (once the battle is underway).		
(3) Sites tactical obstacles to-		
(a) Force the enemy into engagement areas (EAs).		
(b) Block his further advance.		
(c) Block the enemy from using avenues of approach that will allow him to avoid the main defense.		
(d) Fragment the enemy force and allow the defender to deal with only a small portion of the enemy at a time. (disrupting obstacles used just forward of EAs).		
6. BN/TF breaches obstacles.		
a. Reports obstacles and or breaches.		
(1) Reports all friendly obstacles and existing or enemy obstacles that impact on friendly maneuver and or movement and locations of breaches are reported to the higher headquarters.		
b. Makes the breach quickly considering the size and coverage of the obstacle.		
c. Marks lanes and distributes information within unit.		
d. Guides follow-on elements through the breach without any losses due to mines.		
7. BN/TF conducts survivability actions whenever the unit stops for more than one hour.		
a. Positions all vehicles in full defilade positions and uses available concealment and camouflage.		
b. Protects all dismounted soldiers against indirect fire.		
c. Ensures elements are not positioned on obvious terrain. (terrain that would be picked by the enemy on a map reconnaissance).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Ensures all vehicles have alternate and supplementary positions and covered routes. (natural or prepared).		
8. BN/TF conducts survivability actions whenever the unit stops for longer than eight hours. a. Ensures all soldiers have positions with 18 inches of overhead cover.		
9. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1009	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1009.07-IOTE	Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1207	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1207.07-IOTE	Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1252.07-IOTE	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009.07-IOTE	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Counterattack (07-OPFOR-0028)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted enemy penetration attempt or while the enemy is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire and engineer support available. The OPFOR has gained air superiority.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses short, intense artillery and air preparation, attacks the enemy flanks or rear, and or exploits gaps and ruptures in the enemy formations. The OPFOR prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded enemy personnel. The OPFOR gains or regains terrain and destroys or captures the remaining enemy personnel and equipment.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leaders should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend a Trench Line (07-OPFOR-0031)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying a defensive trench. The enemy attempts to enter and clear the trench line. The opfor has all necessary personnel and equipment. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends the trench line IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR kills, captures, or forces the attacking enemy to withdraw. The OPFOR counterattacks, as necessary, to regain control of the trench line.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
　　　　　 HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)　(07-1-4000)

(FM 100-23)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 19-15)
(FM 19-40)	(FM 41-10)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-85)	

　　　　　　　ITERATION:　　　　　　1　　2　　3　　4　　5　　　　(Circle)

　　　　　　　COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:　　　T　　P　　U　　　　(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified time and location that will require cooperation and coordination with civilian authorities. The BN/TF commander's obligation to civil and military authority is defined. The BN/TF has been augmented with a S5 and a civil affairs detachment support team (CADST).　All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available.　The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped.　All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and non-combatants may be present in the operational environment.　 This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts a civil military operation IAW the TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF identifies mission-essential tasks and/or mission requirements. The BN/TF analyzes the impact of the operation on the civilian populace, and the impact of the civilian populace on the operation. The BN/TF plans operations security (OPSEC). The BN/TF establishes and maintains close and continuing relations with local civil authorities, and US government and nongovernmental agencies in the area of operations (AO). The BN/TF develops a dislocated civilian (DC) plan. Force protection measures are applied to all phases of the operation. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The term "enemy" is used, in this outline, to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, and or an individual or group that is or may become hostile to United States (US) forces.　The term "battlefield", when used in this outline, is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).		
*　1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
*　2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). 　　　a. Identify mission-essential tasks and or mission requirements required for mission accomplishment. 　　　　　(1) Issues warning order (WARNO) to civil affairs direct support team (CADST). 　　　b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. 　　　c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). 　　　　　(1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. 　　　　　(2) Define the battlefield environment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Describe battlefield effects.		
(4) Evaluate the enemy.		
(5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).		
d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).		
(1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces.		
(2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems.		
(3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets.		
(4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets.		
(5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs).		
(6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs).		
e. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.		
(1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.		
(2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		
(3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.		
(4) Include ingress and egress routes for positions, limits of fire, and obstacles.		
f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission.		
(1) Coordinate with higher headquarters and requests further civil affairs (CA) assets such as specialty teams.		
g. Analyze the impact of the mission on the civilian populace.		
h. Analyze the impact of the civilian populace on military operations.		
i. Provides staff assistance and guidance on command policy to subordinate units.		
j. Determines CA activities to assist in the accomplishment of the mission.		
k. Determine the location of critical environmental resources, assets, and facilities such as nuclear power plants, water and or sewage treatment facilities, and oil refineries.		
(1) Indicate which resources might be afforded special protection.		
(2) Determine value of asset to the mission.		
(3) Determine effects on public health if the asset is destroyed.		
(4) Determine danger of significant regional or global contamination.		
(5) Determine potential post-conflict clean-up costs.		
(6) Determine economic viability of the area.		
l. Identify cultural considerations within the operational area, to include religious, social, political, and economical elements.		
m. Determine location and site of joint commissions, local government and nongovernment meetings, and civilian gatherings that should be attended by unit representative.		
n. Plan operations security (OPSEC).		
(1) Ensure leaders have proper clearances to review plans. (Little time exists to request clearances and background investigations.)		
(2) Plan redundancy of systems, capabilities and plans in every aspect of a contingency operation. (Overlapping forces or time sequencing provided backup without requiring more forces to be committed to the overall operation.)		
(3) Develop procedures for decentralized operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Ensure subordinates understand the commander's intent two levels up.		
(b) Ensure subordinates understand complex ROE.		
(c) Ensure subordinates understand the maneuver plan.		
o. Develop force protection measures.		
p. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.		
(d) Identify required mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(4) Plan air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations if any are identified.		
(d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
(e) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.		
(f) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.		
(g) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable).		
(h) Determine host nation and or area resources available for the mission.		
(i) Organize resources in accordance with (IAW) the classes of supply.		
q. Develop a DC plan to minimize civilian interference with military operations and to provide care for DCs.		
(1) Estimate the number of DCs, their points of origin, and anticipated direction of movement.		
(2) Identify requirements for care of civilians. (medical, food, and water).		
(3) Assess the ability of foreign nation and or host nation to solve DC situation.		
(4) Identify need for additional CA assets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Coordinate with the S4 for DC routes.		
(6) Coordinate for military police (MP) support along DC routes within the AO.		
(7) Coordinate requirement for military intelligence (MI) screening and integration support.		
(8) Design a plan with control measures.		
(a) Establish collection points and assembly areas.		
(b) Establish routes away from main supply routes (MSR).		
(c) Establish food, water, and medical needs of DCs.		
(d) Establish maximum foreign nation, host nation, non-governmental organization (NGO), and or private voluntary organization (PVO) support.		
(9) Disseminate DC plan and route overlays to US and allied military, and to the local government and populace.		
(10) Monitors process to completion.		
r. Conduct risk management.		
3. Civil affairs officer (S5) and CA team prepares CA annex and portions of the operation plan (OPLAN) for the unit.		
a. Assigns aspects of the preparation to S5 section providing guidance, editing, and validation of the end product.		
b. Issues and or writes plans IAW the COAs selected by the unit commander and the planning guidance issued.		
c. Includes primary, alternate, contingency plans (CONPLAN), and emergency plans based on the criticality of the task.		
d. Includes in appropriate CONPLANs any reasonable or anticipated changes to the civil-military operations (CMOs) mission such as follow-on missions or other missions to be executed on order from the tasking headquarters.		
e. Presents the complete plan to the unit commander for review as part of the OPORD and or operations plan (OPLAN).		
* 4. S5 or CA team and or staff judge advocate (SJA) advises the commander of legal obligations and moral considerations.		
a. Identifies civilian casualty figures, property destruction, and infrastructure dislocation.		
* 5. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
6. BN/TF prepares for the mission.		
a. Establishes liaison with local officials.		
(1) Coordinates for linguist support.		
(2) Identifies local officials.		
(3) Contacts local officials.		
b. Establishes and maintains close and continuing relations with other US government agencies with a responsibility toward the civilian community in the AO.		
(1) Secures list of agencies operating in AO.		
(2) Identifies contact persons within the agencies.		
(3) Determines mission and area of responsibility (AOR) of agencies.		
(4) Establishes contact with agencies.		
c. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
d. Conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).		
e. Conducts precombat checks as necessary.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
g. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		
h. Establishes medical civic action programs (MEDCAPs) to provide health care to noncombatants, incorporating US doctors and local host nation medical personnel.		
i. Briefs subordinates on the danger of unmapped mine fields and or booby traps in the AO.		
j. Positions forces.		
k. Completes host-nation resource estimate.		
7. BN/TF executes the CMO.		
a. Conducts combat, stability, support, enabling, combat support (CS), and CSS operations as directed. (Operations may be conducted in an urban environment.)		
b. Concentrates engineers on both battle-damage repair and the upgrading of utilities to improve local infrastructure.		
c. Maintains an information field. (CMO database).		
(1) Maintains area assessment and study and resource file database input from CADST.		
Note: An area study is normally a filed document that contains information obtained in advance of the need. Area assessment begins upon receipt of the mission and supplements the study.		
(2) Maintains copies and working knowledge of existing treaties, status of forces agreement and international law and agreements applicable to the AO.		
(3) Requests information necessary to satisfy the priority intelligence requirement (PIR) from applicable sources, to include foreign nation information.		
(4) Routes intelligence information requests through the unit S2.		
(5) Identifies information received that satisfies PIR.		
(6) Modifies previously developed estimates and plans IAW the latest information available.		
(7) Notifies CADST leader of modified estimates and plans.		
(8) Notifies other concerned (higher, lower, or adjacent) staff sections of information that satisfies intelligence requirements (IR).		
(9) Updates, in conjunction with the unit S2, the commander's PIR list IAW the latest information available and requirements for additional commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) that arise from modified estimate and-plans.		
d. Maintains liaison with local civil authorities and nongovernmental organizations.		
(1) Makes face-to-face contact with key officials.		
(2) Determines degree of support and trust of officials.		
9. BN/TF public affairs office (PAO) and or personnel officer (S1) supervises media support, control, and briefings.		
10. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.		
a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.		
b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		
11. BN/TF complies with ROE and or ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1216	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1216.07-IOTE	Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1234	Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1234.07-IOTE	Establish a Base Camp (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-1270	Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1270.07-IOTE	Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5063	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5063.07-IOTE	Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5108.07-IOTE	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5135.07-IOTE	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6009.07-IOTE	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6072.07-IOTE	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
71-1-2324.07-C712	Plan Checkpoints and or Roadblocks (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to enemy's location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Counterreconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to deny information to the enemy reconnaissance elements by active and passive means. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the counterreconnaissance IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conceals friendly information through operational security measures and engages and destroys the enemy reconnaissance elements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes actions on contact IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts fire and maneuver to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. The OPFOR destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts combat service support operations, and or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Employ Deception Measures (07-OPFOR-0030)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to employ deception measures to confuse the enemy and to prevent the enemy from determining the OPFOR intentions or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs deception measures IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as the use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; and or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Evade/Resist Capture (07-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR soldiers are being overrun or conducting covert operations against the enemy, which makes them susceptible to capture.

STANDARD: The OPFOR evades/resists capture. If captured, the OPFOR personnel refrains from divulging information about their operations/unit and attempts to escape using every means available.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order and or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
             HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-4009)
        (<u>FM 12-6</u>)   (DA FORM 1155)   (DA FORM 1156)
        (FM 100-14)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Command posts (CPs) are established and functioning. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts S1 operations IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The S1 plans, coordinates, and participates in course of action (COA) development and orders generation/publication. The S1 section prepares, updates, and maintains the personnel estimate, and processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The S1 monitors the execution of decisions, and tracks the current battle. The S1 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems, and performs personnel readiness management. The S1 section conducts personnel accounting and strength reporting, and performs casualty operations management and replacement management operations. The S1 section considers ROE and ROI during planning. The S1 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF personnel (S1) section maintains the personnel database using Standard Installation Division Personnel System (SIDPERS). (Digital equipped units may use Combat Service Support Control System [CSSCS] and Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below [FBCB2] with SIDPERS.)		
3. BN/TF S1 section coordinates all aspects of personnel management, individual finance services, chaplain activities, public affairs, and legal services.		
4. BN/TF S1 section ensures activities support tactical plans, their branches and sequels, and the commander's desired end-state.		
5. BN/TF S1 section establishes unit-unique personnel policies and procedures.		
6. BN/TF S1 section assists the unit commander to influence and evaluate the command climate.		
7. BN/TF S1 section coordinates for law enforcement, civil and or military operational requirements, stress management, straggler information, and family support activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
8. BN/TF S1 section coordinates legal support of certain personnel activities to include service transfers and discharges, line of duty investigations, conscientious objectors processing, and military justice.		
9. BN/TF S1 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.		
10. BN/TF S1 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems.		

11. BN/TF S1 section directs the unit's critical personnel systems.
    a. Performs personnel readiness management.
        (1) Conducts personnel requirements reporting.
            (a) Completes the task force personnel summary and personnel requirements report.
        (2) Conducts personnel readiness activities.
            (a) Evaluates strength levels and determines replacement personnel availability.
            (b) Coordinates replacement requirements based on equipment and weapon system availability.
            (c) Distributes personnel replacements IAW the commander's priorities.
            (d) Anticipates and coordinates transportation requirements for replacement personnel.
            (e) Coordinates the processing of soldiers and civilians returning to duty from medical facilities with medical and logistics units.
            (f) Advises commanders on the impact of reclassification actions, or assignments without regard to military occupational specialty (MOS), in response to reconstitution needs.
            (g) Anticipates increased requirements for battlefield promotions and decorations.
            (h) Updates personnel requirements data in the personnel data base continuously and coordinates with higher headquarters for replacement allocation.
    b. Conducts personnel accounting and strength reporting .
        (1) Includes the Personnel Summary (PS).
        (2) Includes the personnel requirements report (PRR).
        (3) Includes battle roster
Note: This report can serve as a personnel accounting and strength reporting tool. It contains a personnel file extract on every soldier in the unit, and it can reflect task organization by company, platoon, squad, crew or gun section, and so forth.
        (4) Includes personnel status report (PSR)
    c. Performs casualty operations management.
Note: Casualty operations management requires information from the following from witness statement and or casualty feeder reports (Department of the Army [DA] Forms 1155 and 1156), individual personnel information from the servicing personnel services battalion (PSB), patient accountability status and individual diagnosis and prognosis reports from medical facilities, status of remains from mortuary affairs (MA) collection points and mortuary sites, and straggler information from provost marshal channels.
        (1) Ensures that all soldiers and civilians carry and are trained on DA Forms 1155 and 1156.
        (2) Collects DA Forms 1155 and 1156 from units.
        (3) Submits reports to the PSB.
        (4) Sends information copy to the higher headquarters S1.
        (5) Seeks additional information from the medical support system on evacuated soldiers and Army civilians.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Uses all available information sources to determine the status of evacuated and missing soldiers and Army civilians; follows up continually on open cases to determine final status.		
(7) Maintains a casualty log.		
(8) Prepares letters of sympathy and forwards them to the division Personnel Management Center (PMC) IAW with TSOP and or guidance from higher headquarters.		
(9) Accepts and reports changes to emergency data information.		
(10) Coordinates information on mortuary affairs and personal effects disposition with unit S4.		
d. Performs replacement management operations.		
(1) Coordinates unit orientation requirements.		
(2) Ensures that replacements have essential equipment.		
(3) Coordinates equipment requirements with unit logistics officer (S4).		
(4) Coordinates meals and lodging requirements for replacements.		
e. Performs personnel information management.		
(1) Uses SIDPERS to update personnel databases as applicable.		
(2) Manages the command personnel database.		
(3) Receives personnel data from subordinate elements and the higher headquarters and transmits data to subordinate elements and higher headquarters.		
(4) Duplicates critical data files.		
(5) Plans for contingency operations.		
(6) Forwards critical data with skill changes, physical limitations, promotions, awards, and reassignments to higher headquarters.		
(7) Disposes of files prior to deployment IAW the governing regulation.		
(8) Maintains a record set of critical documents.		
f. Performs postal operations management.		
(1) Supervises all unit mail operations.		
(2) Provides the higher headquarters S1 and S4 with grid coordinates of the preferred and most efficient daily mail drop points and alternate mail drop points.		
(3) Collects and routes daily outgoing mail to the postal services platoon.		
(4) Coordinates with the S4 for delivery of mail to soldiers.		
(5) Ensures that mail clerks are properly trained and certified and can handle all mail IAW Department of Defense (DoD) postal regulations.		
(6) Collects and sorts incoming mail.		
(7) Informs the postal services platoon through the higher headquarters S1of all unit additions and deletions as well as requested mail drop point location changes.		
(8) Coordinates with the higher headquarters S1 to assist whenever possible with mail service to soldiers in units under operational control (OPCON) of the unit.		
(9) Ensures proper marking and redirect of mail for wounded, deceased, or missing soldiers and civilians to the postal services platoon.		
(10) Coordinates with the higher headquarters signal officer and higher headquarters S1 for handling of official mail.		
(11) Investigates and coordinates to reconcile any problems within the unit hindering the delivery of mail to soldiers.		
g. Performs essential personnel services.		
(1) Processes recommendations for awards.		
(2) Processes officer and noncommissioned officer evaluations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: During periods of mobilization changes in policy and procedures governing officer and noncommissioned officer evaluation reports processing may take effect. These changes affect rating periods, reasons for submission, preparation and forwarding requirements, support form use, appeals procedures, and filing centers. These changes are not automatic. Headquarters Department of the Army (HQDA) announces changes as they are to go into effect.		

(3) Processes officer and enlisted promotions.
(4) Processes transfers and discharges.
(5) Processes identification documents requests.

Note: PSBs issue and replace identification for soldiers, civilians, and noncombatants on request or as soon as battlefield conditions permit.

(6) Processes leaves and passes.

Note: Upon declaration of a national emergency by Executive Order of the President or upon declaration of war by the Congress, the Secretary of the Army may suspend all leave for soldiers. Commanders may allow soldiers on emergency leave to remain on short periods of leave unless HQDA directs otherwise. Commanders may grant soldiers short periods of leave for temporary personal emergencies after appropriate verification. Mobilized soldiers report for duty before departing on such leave.

(7) Processes line of duty investigations.
(8) Conducts officer procurement operations.
(9) Coordinates the unit retention program.
(10) Processes reclassification requests.

12. BN/TF S1 section coordinates morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) activities (if an MWR coordinator is not appointed).
    a. Coordinates with unit S4 to ensure that soldiers and civilians deploy with a 30-day supply of health and comfort packs (HCPs).
    b. Determines the type and quantity of HCPs carried by individual soldiers.
    c. Prepares an equipment and supply list, and plan for unit MWR activities prior to deployment.
    d. Prepares pre-positioned requisitions for MWR athletic and recreation (A&R) equipment through home station supply channels.
    e. Prepares requisitions for book kits at the sustaining base or mobilization station.
    f. Ensures units include MWR equipment and book kits in their basic load plans.
    g. Appoints unit MWR coordinators (military) to coordinate activities and maintain equipment.
    h. Uses Army master fitness trainers (when available) to plan and conduct unit physical fitness programs.
    i. Schedules soldiers and civilians for rest and recuperation (R&R) periods.
    j. Coordinates establishment and operation of soldier activity centers, recreation activities, exchanges, and unit lounges.
    k. Coordinates unit athletic and recreation programs to include acquisition, use, and maintenance of equipment and supplies.

13. BN/TF S1 develops a media plan in conjunction with the commander and executive officer.
    a. Develops security controls.
        (1) Briefs soldiers so they understand what is classified or sensitive information and cannot be discussed.

Note: If someone accidentally reveals classified information, the reporter should be informed and asked not to use the information and explain why.

        (2) Requires all such incidents (accidental revelation of classified information) to be reported to the unit immediately.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(3) Does not allow the media to televise or videotape nearby recognizable landmarks, sensitive equipment, or operational or classified information products.
  b. Develops media controls.
      (1) Develops plan to place personnel at arrival area to verify credentials and issue press badges.
      (2) Develops instructions on how to handle media personnel who did not receive advance clearance.
      (3) Provides a military escort at all times for media safety.
  c. Develops guidelines for interviews.
      (1) Includes maintaining a professional attitude. (Soldier should remain in control even when the media seem aggressive or ask silly questions. Be polite but firm. Be brief and concise; use simple language. Do not use jargon or acronyms; the public does not know what they mean. Tell the Army story.)
      (2) Instructs soldiers to make a good impression. (Soldiers should relax and be themselves. Ignore the cameras and talk directly to the reporter. Remove sunglasses so the audience can see their eyes. Use appropriate posture and gestures.)
      (3) Instructs soldiers to think before they speak. (Soldiers should stop and think before answering; questions need not be answered instantly. Answer only one question at a time. Do not allow the media to badger or harass. Do not get angry. Correct answers are more important than deadlines.)
      (4) Instructs soldiers to not answer a question they do not understand. (Soldiers who do not understand the question, should ask the reporter to rephrase it. Know the question before you answer. Do not answer "what if" questions or render opinions. Reporters often ask the same question in different ways--stay consistent.)
      (5) Instructs soldiers that everything they say is "on the record".
      (6) Instructs soldiers to not discuss political or foreign policy matters.
      (7) Instructs soldiers to not discuss matters about which they do not have direct knowledge. (Do not guess or speculate.)
      (8) Instructs soldiers to not discuss operational capabilities, including exact numbers or troop strengths, numbers or types of casualties, types of weapons systems, and future plans.
  d. Develops a media card, if one is not provided by higher headquarters, that includes the following
      (1) Includes whom to contact and how to contact him or her if a reporter arrives in the unit's area.
      (2) Includes responsibilities of a media escort.
      (3) Includes what information can or cannot be discussed.
      (4) Includes when to allow a media interview.
      (5) Includes how to treat reporters.
      (6) Includes how to conduct an interview.
      (7) Includes the best techniques to use in telling the Army's story.
  e. Anticipates, prepares, and responds within 24 hours to breaking news events.
  f. Establishes advance arrangements of interviews and photography shooting sessions.
  g. Prepares press kits if time and resources allow.
  h. Prepares plans for establishment of a press center facility if possible.
  i. Plans transportation and support requirements.
  j. Develops procedures for debriefing personnel after a media visit.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

14. BN/TF S1 section participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP) after receiving a copy of higher headquarters' operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.
    a. Conducts mission analysis.
        (1) Identifies specified and implied tasks.
        (2) Verifies personnel status.
        (3) Forecasts personnel status.
        (4) Verifies status of critical military occupational skill (MOS).
        (5) Identifies constraints and limitations and the acceptable level of risk that may have an impact on the unit mission.
        (6) Identifies essential personnel tasks necessary to accomplish the mission.
        (7) Receives commander's planning guidance after briefing mission analysis.
        (8) Provides commander with input on personnel and administrative operations that affect the unit mission.
    b. Develops a support course of action (COA) for each maneuver COA.
        (1) Consults with unit legal personnel and higher headquarters Bolt Operational Law Team (BOLT) concerning any operational law issues.
        (2) Consults with unit ministry team (UMT) concerning religious support issues.
        (3) Addresses continuity of logistics command and control systems.
        (4) Addresses personnel support and replacement operations.
    c. Participates in COA briefing to commander (optional).
    d. Updates the personnel estimate.
        (1) Drafts paragraph 2 of the personnel estimate. (situation and considerations).
    e. Analyzes the supporting COA with each maneuver COA.
        (1) Verifies combat service support (CSS) plan supports the commander's intent.
        (2) Refines the concept of support, if needed based, upon understanding gained from the action, reaction, and counteraction drill.
        (3) Determines the supportability of each COA based upon the evaluation criteria.
    f. Compares COAs from a personnel perspective.
        (1) Records the advantages and disadvantages of each COA with emphasis on supportability.
        (2) completes COA comparison by rank ordering each COA based upon supportability.
    g. Updates the personnel estimate.
        (1) Drafts paragraph 3 of the personnel estimate. (analysis).
        (2) Drafts paragraph 4 of the personnel estimate. (comparison).
        (3) Drafts paragraph 5 of the personnel estimate. (conclusions).
    h. Recommends the COA that best supports the unit operation from a personnel point of view.
    i. Completes and distributes the personnel estimate.
    j. Provides input to the unit order including annexes and appendices.		

15. BN/TF S1 section monitors the tactical situation.
    a. Monitors available digital and analog communications and or nets and the common operational picture (COP) to track the current battle.
    b. Receives personnel status reports from supporting and supported units.
    c. Provides information on battle situation and changing priorities to the unit commander and staff.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Communicates personnel requirements to the unit executive officer (XO) and higher headquarters. e. Identifies changes in the personnel situation that could have an impact on the unit operation. f. Recommends adjustments to unit personnel operations based on changes of the tactical situation.		
16. BN/TF S1 section records actions taken in staff journals.		
17. BN/TF S1 section advises the operations officer (S3) on the personnel implications of rear area protection operations.		
18. BN/TF S1 provides battle updates and shift change briefings.		
19. BN/TF S1 section monitors the execution of decisions.		
20. BN/TF S1 section considers ROE and ROI during planning.		
*21. BN/TF S1 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-4018)

(FM 100-10)　　　　　　　　　(FM 10-27-4)　　　　　　　　　(FM 10-500-2)
(FM 701-58)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.

   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts S4 operations IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The S4 establishes the combat trains command post (CTCP) as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S1. The S4 plans, coordinates, and participates in developing courses of action (COAs) and creating orders. The S4 section prepares, updates, and maintains the logistics estimate, and disseminates combat service support (CSS) information. The S4 monitors the execution of decisions for supportability. The S4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to the BN/TF. The S4 section considers ROE and ROI during planning and enforces ROE and ROI during execution of operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF logistics (S4) section establishes the combat trains command post (CTCP) in conjunction with the personnel officer (S1).		
Note: Support battalions provide different CSS augmentation to infantry battalions. In the limited conversion division, maneuver battalions receive a forward support company from the forward support battalion (FSB). In the Stryker brigade combat team (SBCT), the infantry battalion receives a combat repair team from the brigade support battalion (BSB). Legacy infantry battalions retain their maintenance and support platoons, and thus receive no augmentation from their support battalion.		
a. Identifies staff working areas that facilitate immediate access of staff personnel to all required information.		
b. Establishes local area network (LAN) connections as appropriate.		
c. Sets up conventional and or digital maps, map overlays, and informational displays which show the current tactical situations of all friendly and enemy forces affecting the unit's mission in accordance with (IAW) TSOP.		
d. Sets up conventional and or digital status boards.		
e. Prepares sleep plan that allows support of tactical operations.		
f. Establishes policy file, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

3. BN/TF S4 identifies both continuous and mission-support CSS requirements of the unit to the FSB / BSB commander and his support operations officer (SPO).
 	
4. BN/TF S4 section participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Conducts mission analysis.
       (1) Retrieves a copy of higher headquarters operations plan (OPLAN) or OPORD and service support annex.
          (a) Identifies specified and implied logistics tasks from the base order, annexes, and overlays.
          (b) Identifies constraints and limitations and the acceptable level of risk that may have an impact on the brigade mission.
          (c) Identifies essential logistic tasks necessary to accomplish the mission.
       (2) Forecasts vehicle and or weapon status.
       (3) Identifies available transportation assets.
       (4) Determines supply status of classes I, II, III, IV, V, and IX.
       (5) Determines maintenance status.
    b. Provides commander with input on CSS and supply operations that affect the unit mission.
    c. Receives commander's planning guidance after briefing mission analysis.
    d. Prepares and or updates the logistics estimate.
       (1) Establishes a CSS planning cell at the unit main CP to participate in staff planning.
       (2) Prepares and briefs the logistics estimate and recommends a course of action that supports the maneuver plan logistically.
       (3) Coordinates estimate with other affected staff sections. (higher, lower, and adjacent).
       (4) Submits logistics estimate to operations officer (S3), executive officer (XO), and FSB / BSB SPO.
 	
5. BN/TF S4 section conducts planning.
    a. Reviews mission, task organization, and concept of operations for all subordinate elements in the unit.
    b. Reviews higher headquarters' CSS plans.
    c. Identifies branches and sequels.
    d. Determines density of equipment of each subordinate unit.
    e. Anticipates enemy CSS capabilities.
    f. Determines mission-related consumption rates.
       (1) Required varieties and quantities of classes of supply. (Classes I, II, III, IV, V, and IX).
    g. Plans for the following:
       (1) Plans for special equipment, supplies, and services.
       (2) Plans for assets to separate, disassemble, configure, uncrate, or transload supplies above normal requirements.
       (3) Plans for reconstitution.
       (4) Plans for reorganization.
       (5) Plans for support of reconnaissance forces, security operations, or deception efforts.
       (6) Plans for class IV/V obstacle material.
       (7) Plans for pre-positioning of supplies.
       (8) Plans for emergency resupply.
       (9) Plans for attrition.
       (10) Plans for Weapon System Replacement Operations (WSRO).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(11) Plans field sanitation in coordination with the battalion surgeon (medical platoon leader).		
(12) Plans for transportation of supplies, replacements, deceased, and enemy prisoners of war (EPW).		
Note: The responsibility for patient evacuation rests with the level of combat health support (CHS) to which the patient is to be evacuated. The S4 prepares plans for non-standard casualty evacuation for mass casualty situations.		
(13) Plans for construction of facilities except for fortifications.		
(14) Plans for clothing and equipment exchange.		
(15) Plans for food preparation and water purification.		
(16) Plans mortuary affairs.		
Note: The unit is responsible for unit level search, recovery, evacuation, and inventory of human remains and personal effects.		
(17) Plans for laundry and shower services.		
(18) Plans for battlefield procurement and contracting. (The S4 coordinates with higher headquarters and / or BSB contingency contracting officers for support.)		
(19) Plans for selection and for recommendation of main supply route(s) (MSRs) and logistical support areas to the S3.		
h. Identifies and analyzes current and future problems.		
6. BN/TF S4 section, in conjunction with the FSB / BSB SPO, maintains the current status of equipment readiness in the unit.		
a. Maintains consolidated unit weapons combat power status board.		
b. Monitors maintenance operations to evaluate the capability to support current operations.		
c. Provides the commander and staff with evaluation of maintenance conditions and their impact on current or future unit operations.		
d. Recommends maintenance priorities to the unit commander and S3.		
e. Coordinates with the FSB / BSB maintenance status and unit maintenance priorities.		
f. Coordinates with the XO and FSB / BSB for execution of WSRO.		
7. BN/TF S4 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.		
8. BN/TF S4 section compiles, authenticates, and distributes the administrative and logistics plan or order, paragraph 4 of the operation plan (OPLAN), OPORD, or CSS annex.		
a. Coordinates with personnel officer (S1) for preparation of plans and or orders.		
(1) Incorporates information from the S1 regarding unit strength reporting, personnel management, enemy prisoners of war (EPW) status, and unit discipline, law, and order.		
(2) Coordinates with the unit S1, the support battalion SPO, the G1, and G4 to provide input to the weapons system replacement operations (WSRO) plan.		
(3) Confirms and lists logistics support requirements for unit intelligence operations with the unit S2.		
(4) Electronic warfare (EW) equipment and supplies.		
(5) Psychological operations (PSYOP) equipment and supplies.		
(6) Confirms host nation support (HNS) and lists logistics support requirements for unit civil and military operations based on the unit civil affairs or PSYOPS officer determination of mission to support civilian population.		
(a) Other civilian support requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Coordinates with the unit civil affairs or PSYOPS officer to plan for control of civilian refugees with the unit S3.		
(c) Coordinates with the FSB / BSB SPO to complete plans for support of tactical operations, based on war gaming and the unit commander's decisions. Incorporates relevant information in unit service support annex.		
(7) Number of civilian refugees and internees in each collection camp, assembly area, and dislocated civilian camp requiring logistical support from the unit.		
b. Coordinates with the battalion surgeon to incorporate health services support into the service support paragraph and or annex.		
c. Coordinates with the battalion chaplain to incorporate the religious support into the service support paragraph and or annex.		
d. Coordinates with the battalion S6 to identify signal maintenance support into the service support paragraph and or annex.		
e. Issues CSS annex to OPORD or OPLAN.		
f. Approves and distributes administrative/logistics annex.		
g. Prepares paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD and the CSS annex.		
h. Submits paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD to S3.		
i. Develops administrative movement plans, as required.		
j. Prepares CSS overlay.		
k. Prepares logistics execution matrix.		
l. Recommends support and supply priorities and controlled supply rates (CSR).		
m. Determines required supply rates (RSR).		
9. BN/TF S4 section tracks tactical operations to provide the appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to the unit, based on current and anticipated logistics requirement.		
a. Plans transportation and movement.		
(1) Reviews and analyzes all unit plans and orders for transportation impact.		
(2) Provides transportation input to all fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) issued subsequent to issue of OPORD or OPLAN.		
(3) Coordinates with higher elements for additional transportation assets, if required.		
(4) Assists the S3 plans element in planning and preparing tactical and administrative motor marches, and prepares administrative movement orders and march tables.		
(5) Selects MSRs and other supply routes.		
(a) Ensures route supports the heaviest vehicle in the unit.		
(b) Ensures refugees do not block routes.		
(c) Ensures route supports bi-directional traffic.		
(6) Assists the S3 in planning for logistical airlift.		
b. Coordinates transportation and movement.		
c. Identifies transportation assets available in the unit.		
d. Coordinates routes, traffic control, and timetables with the G4, support battalion SPO, and higher headquarter's support command staff.		
e. Coordinates with higher movement control elements when additional assets are required and organic assets are unavailable or inappropriate for use.		
f. Monitors and coordinates emergency resupply by air with the unit assistant operations officer (S3-Air).		
g. Coordinates administrative troop movement requirements with subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Coordinates with the intelligence (S2) section to determine enemy capabilities that may interrupt use of routes (such as air threat, partisan activity, and chemical use). i. Coordinates routes with the military police (MP) officer in the maneuver support cell or augmented highway traffic control.		

10. BN/TF S4 section supervises and facilitates transportation and movement.
    a. Maintains contact with higher, subordinate, and adjacent movement control elements.
    b. Provides technical assistance to all subordinate units on transportation requirements.
    c. Continuously monitors transportation assets and advises the S3 current operations element when additional assets are required.
    d. Provides the movement control officer with guidance, basic plans, and assistance.		

11. BN/TF S4 section tracks the status of supplies.
    a. Ensures accurate records of supplies on hand are maintained.
    b. Tracks the requisition, acquisition, storage, and distribution of supplies.
    c. Tracks the distribution of the CSR of ammunition.
    d. Performs coordination with higher headquarter's G4 and or BSB SPO for procurement of local civilian supplies.
    e. Coordinates with augmenting units to identify requirements for nonstandard supplies or repair parts such as those used in psychological operations.		

12. BN/TF S4 section coordinates reception of augmentations.
    a. Receives augmentations and meets logistics requirements without degradation in the support provided to the unit.
    b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for additional maintenance assets.
    c. Coordinates integration of augmentations into CSS plans.
    d. Establishes priorities for employment.
    e. Maintains CSS status of augmentations.		

13. BN/TF S4 monitors execution of command decisions.
    a. Monitors the execution of logistics instructions, plans, and orders.
    b. Formulates and supervises policies concerning logistics operations.
    c. Ensures that organic, assigned, and supporting units accomplish tactical level missions in support of the unit commander's scheme of maneuver in the area of logistics.		

14. BN/TF S4 analyzes and clearly articulates all logistical information that can affect the mission, particularly commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).
    a. Records actions taken in staff journals.
    b. Uses information to provide battle updates and shift change briefings.
        (1) Logistics overlay.
        (2) Logistics synch matrix.
        (3) MSR status.		

15. BN/TF S4 integrates risk management into CSS plans/operations.		
16. BN/TF S4 section considers ROE and ROI during planning.		
17. BN/TF S4 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-4027)
<table>
<tr><td>(FM 8-55)</td><td>(FM 101-5)</td><td>(FM 101-5-1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>(FM 8-10)</td><td>(FM 8-10-1)</td><td>(FM 8-10-7)</td></tr>
<tr><td>(FM 8-10-9)</td><td>(FM 8-230)</td><td>(FM 8-51)</td></tr>
</table>

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation at the location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available.   The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF plans health service support (HSS) activities IAW TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF surgeon plans HSS to support the commander's intent. The BN/TF surgeon monitors the health of the command in order to advise the commander on measures to counter disease and injury threats. The BN/TF surgeon provides input to paragraph 4 (service support), and prepares the HSS annex and/or appendix to the order. The BN/TF surgeon considers ROE and ROI, and medical rules of engagement (MROE) during planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF surgeon retrieves a copy of higher headquarters operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.
    a. Identifies HSS mission requirements by reviewing the order.
    b. Identifies specified, implied, and essential HSS tasks in the higher headquarters' OPORD.
    c. Assesses HSS constraints, restrictions, and limitations.		

* 3. BN/TF surgeon determines the HSS situation.
    a. Reviews friendly situation based on input from the operations officer (S3).
    b. Incorporates the enemy situation based on input from the intelligence officer (S2).
    c. Reviews the HSS issues that may effect the situation.
    d. Reviews the civil-military situation based on input from the civil affairs (S5) element. (Receives input from the S3 if an S5 is not available.)
    e. Provides status of sick and wounded soldiers in the medical system to the commander and or staff as required.		

* 4. BN/TF surgeon analyzes HSS assets available to the unit.
    a. Provides current status of assets and task organization to commander and or staff.
    b. Provides projected locations of supported units to the commander and staff.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. BN/TF surgeon prepares the HSS estimate and medical threat for inclusion in the commander's estimate.		
* 6. BN/TF surgeon develops a HSS course of action (COA) for each maneuver COA as an overlay.		

* 7. BN/TF surgeon analyzes the supporting HSS COA with each maneuver COA.
    a. Verifies HSS plan supports the commander's intent.
    b. Refines the concept of HSS if needed.
    c. Determines the supportability of each COA based upon the evaluation criteria.
    d. Records the advantages and disadvantages of each COA with emphasis on supportability.
    e. Completes COA comparison by rank ordering each COA based upon supportability.
    f. Recommends the COA that best supports the operation from the HSS point of view.		

* 8. BN/TF surgeon updates the HSS support estimate based on COA analysis and any new data received. a. Distributes the HSS estimate to commander, staff, supporting medical company, and others as required.		

* 9. BN/TF surgeon completes detailed planning needed for the selected HSS COA.
    a. Plans for HSS operations.
    b. Ensures that platoon is included in logistical information systems and medical communications for combat casualty care (MC4) if available.
    c. Ensures HSS request procedures are established.		

*10. BN/TF surgeon provides input to paragraph 4. (service support).
    a. Develops casualty estimate for area of operations (AO) in coordination with the personnel officer (S1).
    b. Determines augmentation support requirements for HSS from higher headquarters OPORD.
    c. Determines subordinate unit locations for effective HSS coverage.
    d. Tailors HSS assets to support the unit based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
    e. Determines medical material requirements for the unit.
    f. References higher headquarters service support paragraph when it is lengthy and the details are included in higher headquarters service support paragraph.		

*11. BN/TF surgeon prepares the HSS annex and or appendix to the OPORD.
    a. Includes medical personnel and material replacement plan.
    b. Includes locations of all unit medical elements for each phase of the operation.
    c. Includes on order and AO coverage requirements for all unit medical elements.
    d. Provides treatment guidelines to include evacuation policy and the location of Echelon III facilities.
    e. Develops policy for the treatment and evacuation of detained personnel, enemy prisoners of war (EPW) casualties.
    f. Provides casualty evacuation guidelines to include medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) frequencies, call signs, and evacuation routes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

g. Provides class VIII guidance.
    h. Coordinates with higher headquarters for the disposition of captured class VIII materials.
    i. Determines the higher headquarters' policy concerning the use of EPW medical personnel and captured class VIII supplies IAW the Geneva Conventions.
    j. Includes special instructions for each unit medical element as needed.
 	
*12. BN/TF surgeon performs staff coordination.
    a. Coordinates with higher headquarters for HSS operations.
    b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for combat health logistics and blood management requirements for the unit.
    c. Coordinates with the intelligence officer (S2) for medical health intelligence requirements IAW the appropriate field manual.
    d. Coordinates with supporting medical company for patient evacuation from forward areas to supporting medical treatment facilities (MTFs).
    e. Coordinates with the supporting veterinary element pertaining to subsistence and animal disease surveillance.
 	
*13. BN/TF surgeon supervises HSS activities.
    a. Monitors implementation of HSS annex of the tactical standard operating procedures (TSOP) for compliance with commander's intent and guidance.
    b. Determines the allocation of medical resources within the unit.
    c. Supervises technical training of medical personnel and the combat lifesaver program in the unit.
    d. Determines procedures, techniques, and limitations in conducting routine medical care and emergency medical treatment (EMT).
    e. Monitors the health of the command in order to advise the commander on measures to counter disease and injury threats.
      (1) Plans and prioritizes preventive medicine (PVNTMED) missions.
      (2) Plans and prioritizes combat stress control (CSC) missions.
    f. Monitors the implementation of automated medical systems for compliance with directives.
    g. Monitors aero medical and ground ambulance evacuation for timeliness and adequacy.
    h. Provides staff medical advice to unit medical squads and or section as required.
    i. Monitors sustainment training of medical and combat lifesaver personnel for continued proficiency.
    j. Provides daily update on the status of the HSS situation to the commander and higher headquarters.
    k. Requests patient evacuation operations from forward areas to supporting medical treatment facilities (MTFs).
 	
*14. BN/TF surgeon assists with tracking of patient disposition throughout the unit.
    a. Manages the automated medical systems available.
    b. Prepares required patient statistical reports IAW the TSOP.
    c. Forwards patient statistical reports to higher headquarters IAW the TSOP.
 	
*15. BN/TF surgeon considers ROE and ROI during planning HSS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-4036)

(DD FORM 1380)	(FM 8-10-1)	(FM 8-10-25)
(FM 8-10-6)	(FM 8-10-7)	(FM 8-10-9)
(FM 8-230)	(FM 8-55)	(FM 8-9)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Enemy contact has been broken. Wounded soldiers may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Simplified collective protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient, and natural shelters are available. . The unit aid station is operational. All command posts (CPs) are operational. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available   The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI).
  Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF provides combat health support (CHS) IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or the appropriate medical field manual. The BN/TF medical platoon provides emergency lifesaving measures, sick call services, combat stress control preventive measures, and casualty collection and evacuation to the BN/TF aid station. The BN/TF medical platoon complies with ROE and ROI, and medical rules of engagement (MROE).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF medical platoon provides Echelon I combat health support (CHS). (Echelon I includes immediate lifesaving measures, advanced trauma management, disease prevention, combat stress control prevention, casualty collection, and evacuation from supported unit to supporting medical treatment.) a. Decontaminates the casualty IAW the appropriate field manual and or the TSOP as far forward as the situation permits. b. Provides immediate lifesaving measures. (1) Surveys casualties. (a) Checks for responsiveness. (b) Checks for breathing. (c) Checks for bleeding. (d) Checks for head injury. (e) Checks for shock. (f) Checks for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures. (g) Checks for burns. (h) Wears protective devices surgical mask, gloves, and so on. (i) Clears all objects from throat of casualty. (j) Uses jaw thrust method to open the airway if cervical spine injury is suspected.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(k) Performs cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR) using the one or two rescuer method.		
(2) Controls hemorrhage.		
(a) Applies manual direct pressure to wound.		
(b) Elevates extremities.		
(c) Applies pressure dressing to wound.		
(d) Applies digital pressure-to-pressure points.		
(e) Applies tourniquet as last resort.		
(f) Initiates intravenous (IV) therapy when indicated (cannot be done in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level 4).		
(3) Prevents shock.		
(a) Positions casualty in the correct anti-shock position IAW appropriate medical field manual.		
(b) Loosens clothing and equipment.		
(c) Prevents casualty from chilling or overheating.		
(d) Calms casualty by reassuring him.		
c. Provides treatment for injuries.		
(1) Dresses wounds.		
(a) Applies occlusive dressing to an open chest wound if possible.		
(b) Applies dressing to an open abdominal wound.		
(c) Applies dressing to an open head wound.		
(d) Applies dressing to extremity wounds.		
(2) Splints suspected fractures.		
(a) Employs available materials to splint injury.		
(b) Splints fracture in position found.		
(c) Restricts movement of extremities.		
(d) Checks circulation for impairment.		
(3) Stabilizes suspected fractures of the neck and back.		
Note: When a cervical collar or spine board is not available, use field-expedient materials.		
(a) Applies cervical collar.		
(b) Applies a short spine board for suspected fractures of the neck.		
(c) Applies a long spine board for suspected fractures of the back and neck.		
(4) Treats casualties with burns.		
(a) Extinguishes thermal burn agent(s).		
(b) Removes chemical burn agent(s).		
(c) Eliminates electrical burn source.		
(d) Uncovers burn unless stuck to clothing or a chemical substance exists.		
(e) Applies field dressing.		
(f) Initiates fluid replacement as required.		
(g) Initiates IV therapy if indicated (cannot be done in MOPP4).		
(5) Treats environmental injuries.		
(a) Provides medical treatment for heat injuries.		
(b) Provides medical treatment for cold weather injuries.		
(6) Treats chemical casualties.		
(a) Takes immediate protective steps IAW appropriate medical field manual to protect self and warn others.		
(b) Protects casualty from further contamination.		
(c) Administers nerve agent antidote IAW appropriate medical field manual(s).		
(d) Decontaminates casualty IAW appropriate medical field manual if necessary.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Provides sick call services.		
(1) Processes patients for sick call.		
(a) Screens patients to prioritize treatment.		
(b) Performs patient treatment IAW physician's or physician's assistant (PA's) orders.		
(c) Provides patient instructions on self-care.		
(d) Assists in preparing patients for return to duty (RTD) or evacuation.		
(2) Provides patient administrative support.		
(a) Completes patient records IAW AR 40-66 (includes DD Form 1380 [Field Medical Card]).		
(b) Provides input to line of duty (LOD) determinations.		
(c) Manages medical records and reports.		
(d) Prepares patient records for RTD or evacuation.		
(3) Prepares medications for issue IAW physician's and or PA's orders.		
e. Advises BN/TF commander on combat stress control preventive measures.		
(1) Advises BN/TF commander to issue WARNOs, OPORDs, and FRAGOs to the lowest possible level.		
(2) Advises BN/TF commander to provide soldiers an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.		
(3) Advises BN/TF commander to encourage a positive attitude throughout the unit.		
(4) Advises BN/TF commander to implement and enforce a sleep plan.		
(5) Advises BN/TF commander to alternate cross-trained personnel on critical tasks.		
(6) Advises BN/TF commander to rotate personnel between demanding and non-demanding tasks.		
(7) Advises BN/TF commander to implement stress-coping and management techniques. For example:		
(a) Integrates new unit members into the unit immediately.		
(b) Implements a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue (BF) among the soldiers and leaders.		
(8) Advises BN/TF commander to implement combat stress control (CSC) treatment techniques. For example:		
(a) Implements a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.		
(b) Assigns soldiers who show signs of stress or BF to simple tasks.		
(c) Directs personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.		
(9) Advises BN/TF commander to ensure personnel employ stress prevention measures. For example:		
(a) Complies with commander's sleep plan.		
(b) Provides immediate buddy aid support.		
(c) Reports signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to immediate supervisor.		
(d) Practices relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.		
f. Provides casualty collection and evacuation to the unit aid station.		
(1) Prepares casualties for evacuation.		
(2) Identifies litter team(s).		
(3) Constructs improvised litter from available material as required.		
(4) Secures casualty on litter.		
(5) Employs appropriate manual carry if litter is not available.		
(6) Transports casualty without causing further injury, using medical or non-medical forms of transportation IAW appropriate medical field manual.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. BN/TF medical platoon complies with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
　　　　　　　RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5000)
　　　　(FM 101-5)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is preparing for a mission. Mission planning and coordination are accomplished. The BN/TF operations order (OPORD) has been developed and briefed. The commander has directed the executive officer (XO) and S3 to conduct a rehearsal. All commanders, staff members, and essential personnel, including those attached or under the operational control (OPCON) of the BN/TF, are present All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF plans, prepares for, and executes the rehearsal IAW appropriate manuals, TSOP, and/or commander's guidance. The rehearsal addresses key and/or critical aspects of the operation, and provides subordinate commanders and/or units with information necessary for executing the mission. The BN/TF commander and/or staff coordinate and allocate time for the events requiring rehearsal. BN/TF leaders direct adjustments to the rehearsal to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. The BN/TF commander and staff reinforce established ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF commander and staff plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule. 　　a. Select rehearsal criteria. (commander) 　　　　(1) Select one of the following rehearsal types. 　　　　　　(a) Select confirmation brief. 　　　　　　(b) Select back brief. 　　　　　　(c) Select combined arms rehearsal. 　　　　　　(d) Select support rehearsal (fire support [FS] or combat service support [CSS]). 　　　　　　(e) Select battle drill or TSOP rehearsal. 　　　　(2) Select one of the following rehearsal techniques. 　　　　　　(a) Select full dress. 　　　　　　(b) Select reduced force. 　　　　　　(c) Select terrain model. 　　　　　　(d) Select sketch map. 　　　　　　(e) Select map or Battlefield Planning & Visualization tool.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(f) Select white board.		
(g) Select radio.		
(3) Select place of rehearsal.		
(4) Select attendees.		
(5) Select enemy course of action (ECOA) to be portrayed during the rehearsal.		
b. Develop a rehearsal script that includes the following:		
(1) Include an agenda.		
(2) Include a response sequence.		
(3) Include an actions checklist. (friendly and enemy).		
(4) Include a sequence of events.		
c. Perform the following tasks. (executive officer [XO])		
(1) Ensure rehearsal time and location are published in the unit operations order (OPORD) or warning order (WARNO).		
(2) Complete any rehearsals with the staff.		
(3) Determine rehearsal products.		
(a) Base decision on type.		
(b) Base decision on technique.		
(c) Base decision on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(4) Coordinate liaison officer (LNO) attendance from adjacent units.		
* 3. BN/TF commander prepares for rehearsal.		
a. Identifies and prioritizes key events to be rehearsed.		
b. Allocates time.		
c. Reviews.		
(1) Ensures completeness of task organization.		
(2) Ensures readiness of personnel and material.		
(3) Ensures unit level of preparation for the assigned mission.		
* 4. XO prepares for rehearsal. (accomplishes the following tasks through war gaming and coordination with the commander).		
a. Coordinates and allocates time for the key events requiring rehearsal.		
b. Establishes rehearsal time limits according to the commander's guidance and factors of METT-TC.		
c. Verifies rehearsal site preparation.		
d. Determines the method for controlling the rehearsal and ensuring its logical flow.		
* 5. Subordinate leaders prepare for rehearsal		
a. Complete their planning process.		
(1) Complete unit order and plans.		
(2) Identify issues derived from the unit order.		
(3) Provide copy of their unit order with graphics to the unit.		
(4) Conduct personal preparation similar to that of the unit commander.		
* 6. BN/TF staff prepares for the rehearsal.		
a. Deconflicts subordinate unit graphics.		
b. Produces composite overlays.		
c. Publishes the following composite overlays at a minimum.		
(1) Publishes maneuver overlay.		
(2) Publishes fire support overlay.		
(3) Publishes engineer overlay.		
(4) Publishes combat service support (CSS) overlay.		
d. Appoints a recorder for the rehearsal.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
7. BN/TF moves to rehearsal site.		
8. BN/TF executes rehearsal.		
a. Briefs participants. (rehearsal leader).		
(1) Orients participants to the training aid and the terrain.		
(2) Defines the standard. (what the commander will accept as satisfactory performance for the rehearsal).		
(3) Visualizes and synchronizes the concept of operations.		
(4) Focuses on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy.		
(5) Addresses any points in the operation where the execution of branches or sequels is likely to occur.		
b. Directs the rehearsal. (XO)		
Note: If the operations officer (S3) directs the rehearsal, the XO will not sense the intricacies necessary to synchronize the combined arms team.		
(1) Conducts a formal roll call and ensures that necessary equipment is on hand.		
(2) Validates task organization for the mission.		
(3) Rehearses synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units.		
(4) Synchronizes the timing and contribution of each operating system.		
(5) Uses the OPORD, decision support template (DST), and synchronization matrix to accomplish the following:		
(a) Discipline leader movements.		
(b) Enforce brevity.		
(c) Ensure completeness.		
(6) Keeps the rehearsal within established time constraints.		
(7) Ensures selected events receive appropriate attention.		
(8) Ensures absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.		
c. Assists the commander in the fight forward. (S3)		
(1) Portrays his actions during the fight.		
(2) Ensures compliance with the plan.		
d. Bases his execution actions on the ECOA the commander has selected during the planning process. (intelligence officer [S2])		
(1) Portrays his best assessment of the ECOA.		
(2) Communicates the enemy commander's presumed concept of operation, desired effects, and intended end state.		
e. Uses an established format. (subordinate unit leaders).		
(1) Articulates their unit's actions and responsibilities effectively.		
(2) Records changes on their copies of the graphics or OPORD.		
9. BN/TF leaders assess the rehearsal.		
a. Monitor continuously the situation and progress.		
b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		
c. Rehearse again, if the standard is not met and time is available.		
10. Recorder accomplishes the following, after the rehearsal is complete.		
a. Restates any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the commander.		
b. Estimates the time that a written fragmentation order (FRAGO) codifying the changes will follow.		
11. BN/TF provides staff updates.		
a. Issues OPORD.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Issues DST. c. Issues synchronization matrix.		
12. Commander assembles participants to conduct an after-action review (AAR).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying an objective rally point with orders to conduct a raid against the enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. The OPFOR avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtains all required priority intelligence requirements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-5009)

(<u>FM 1-100</u>)	(FM 100-103)	(FM 100-14)
(FM 100-5)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 1-111)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a specified location and time. Aviation assets have been placed under operational control (OPCON) of the BN/TF. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF employs Army aviation assets IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF S3-Air and/or air liaison officer (ALO) coordinate aviation assets, and advise the BN/TF commander and staff on the employment of aviation assets. The BN/TF coordinates communications with supporting Army aviation elements. The BN/TF S3-Air, or other designated person, assists in the identification and resolution of airspace conflicts. The BN/TF employs aviation assets within its capabilities. The BN/TF monitors current operations of airspace users. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Integrates aviation support into the unit scheme of maneuver.		

3. Assistant operations officer (S3-Air) and or air liaison officer (ALO) coordinate aviation assets and advise the unit commander and staff on the employment of aviation.
  a. Understand the BN/TF commander's intent, scheme of maneuver, and how aviation assets are to be integrated into the scheme of maneuver.
  b. Coordinate with aviation unit. (alert the appropriate aviation units of mission).
  c. Inform the commander and or operations officer (S3) on the status of aviation assets OPCON to the unit.
  d. Advise the commander and or S3 on the proper employment and missions for Army aviation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Coordinate with the intelligence officer (S2) to obtain information pertinent to Army aviation planning.
        (1) Obtain target location(s), objective, or engagement area (EA) locations.
        (2) Obtain summary or synopsis of the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
        (3) Obtain priority intelligence requirements (PIR), essential elements of friendly information (EEFI), and friendly force information requirements (FFIR).
        (4) Obtain weather and terrain information.
 	
4. ALO advises the S3 on requesting additional aviation assets and supporting elements if required.
 	
5. S3 assisted by the ALO develops the aviation appendix to the OPORD.
    a. Addresses air corridors to and from the forward line of own troops (FLOT) to include penetration corridor.
    b. Addresses movement to the objective.
    c. Addresses suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) operations.
    d. Addresses actions on the objective.
    e. Addresses movement from the objective.
    f. Addresses deception plan.
    g. Addresses special instructions for Army aviation integration into the unit air defense effort.
    h. Addresses coordination instructions.
 	
6. ALO acts as liaison between air defense units and air control units.
 	
7. S3-Air or designated person coordinates Army aviation employment with the air defense officer if available.
    a. Receives, processes, and disseminates air defense information, intelligence, and control measures to subordinate units using secure communications.
    b. Disseminates air defense information to aviation assets OPCON to the unit.
        (1) Include early warning.
        (2) Include air defense artillery (ADA) unit locations.
        (3) Include identification, friend or foe (IFF) and or selective identification feature (SIF) procedures for Army aircraft to include location of IFF and or SIF line.
        (4) Include known enemy ADA locations.
        (5) Include minimum risk routes.
        (6) Include Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2) rules and procedures.
        (7) Include coordinating altitudes.
        (8) Include all known positive and procedural controls.
    c. Establishes coordination with high-to-medium-altitude air defense (HIMAD) units if applicable.
    d. Advises aviation unit commander of HIMAD locations and frequencies, if applicable.
    e. Advises ADA commander on types of aircraft and unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) use.
    f. Coordinates with the fire support element for fire support.
    g. Coordinates Army aviation communications requirements.
    h. Coordinates with higher headquarters and aviation battalion.
        (1) Relays area of operations (AO) information.
        (2) Relays air defense warnings.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(3) Relays ROE, weapons control status, and hostile engagement criteria.
 (4) Relays coordinating altitudes.
 (5) Relays weather.
 (6) Relays positive and procedural control measures.
 	
 * 8. S3-Air or designated person monitors Army aviation operations supporting the unit.
    a. Ensures aviation forces are properly employed and are in compliance with the unit commander's intent and overall scheme of maneuver.
    b. Ensures all aviation-related reports to higher headquarters are accurate and submitted in a timely manner.
    c. Maintains a current status of aviation assets.
 	
 9. S3-Air or designated person assists in the identification and resolution of airspace conflicts.
    a. Functions as a member of the unit A2C2 element.
    b. Monitors current operations of airspace users.
    c. Monitors intelligence reports.
    d. Disseminates unscheduled high-volume use of airspace.
    e. Informs airspace users at each echelon of any loss of communication affecting any airspace user.
    f. Identifies and correlates situations affecting airspace use for unscheduled events.
    g. Analyzes airspace use on the situation map (SITMAP) to determine and resolve conflicts.
    h. Recommends shifting or ending fires when affecting high priority aviation missions.
    i. Disseminates changes of control or restriction measures affecting airspace users.
    j. Analyzes future OPORD and or operations plans (OPLANs) for possible conflicts of flight control measures, field artillery (FA) and ADA locations, and flight obstructions.
      (1) Determines impact on unit operations.
      (2) Develops and recommends alternatives.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
　　　　　　HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)　(07-1-5027)
　　　　(FM 100-5)　　　　　　　　(FM 101-5)　　　　　　　　　　(FM 71-2)
　　　　(FM 7-20)　　　　　　　　(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))　　　　　　(FM 7-85)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The BN/TF staff is monitoring the operational situation. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and non-combatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts command and control of operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander and staff define and articulate the commander's intent and information requirements to eliminate confusion and potential information overload. The BN/TF commander and staff ensure the TSOP includes procedures for information prioritization and primary transmission means for information categories when in and out of enemy contact. The BN/TF commander and staff make timely decisions, and take appropriate actions to ensure mission accomplishment and to protect the force. BN/TF leaders employ command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (C4ISR). The BN/TF commander and staff allocate resources. The BN/TF commander and staff employ command posts (CPs). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*　1.　BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
*　2.　BN/TF leaders and staff accomplish the following: 　　　a.　Emphasize the need to include integration, use, and synchronization of digital systems into rehearsals and battle drills. 　　　b.　Define and articulate the commander's intent and commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) information requirements to eliminate confusion and potential information overload. 　　　c.　Establish clearly defined TSOPs for the operation of communication and digitized systems within the unit. 　　　　(1)　Ensure TSOPs include procedures for information prioritization, and primary transmission means for information categories when in and out of enemy contact. 　　　d.　Design CPs to maximize the capabilities of digitized systems in the analysis, formulation, and dissemination of information.		
*　3.　BN/TF leaders and staff plan operations using the military decision-making process (MDMP).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. BN/TF leaders and staff make timely decisions and take appropriate actions. Note: BN/TF leaders and staff must make timely decisions to ensure the unit maintains the initiative and dictates the tempo of operations and to allow subordinate echelons time to prepare for their missions.		
* 5. BN/TF leaders and staff task organize to obtain the optimum mix of subordinate elements to accomplish the mission. a. Coordinate linkup location, time, and responsible element.		

* 6. BN/TF leaders and staff delegate authority.
    a. Define specified tasks in orders.
    b. Use mission orders when feasible.		

* 7. BN/TF leaders and staff allocate resources.
    a. Prioritize allocation of resources based on mission analysis and staff input.
    b. Accept risks when allocating resources.		

* 8. BN/TF leaders and staff create and disseminate orders and graphic control measures.		

* 9. BN/TF leaders and staff conduct liaison operations.
    a. Appoint liaison officers early in the planning process.
        (1) Coordinate with subordinate, higher, supporting, and adjacent headquarters to gather information for planning.		

*10. BN/TF leaders and staff communicate with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units.
    a. Plan communications architectures including the use of retransmission means, digital network linkages, and command and control (C2) node placement.
    b. Follow proper signal and communications security procedures.
    c. Ensure subordinates understand the commander's intent so they know what to do when communications are lost.
    d. Provide redundancy in means of communications.
    e. Keep digital orders, overlays, and messages concise to avoid overloading the tactical internet and digital systems.		

*11. BN/TF leaders and staff prepare for the operation.
    a. Perform briefbacks with subordinate commanders, leaders, and key staff.
    b. Maintain status of preparations.
    c. Conduct rehearsals.
        (1) Supervise subordinate preparations and rehearsals.		

*12. BN/TF leaders and staff see the battlefield.
    a. Monitor digital and analog communications and or information transfer systems and SITREPs.
    b. Employ C4ISR infrastructure.		

*13. BN/TF leaders and staff employ C2 facilities.
    a. Employ the command group. (commander).
        (1) Directs C2 of the unit.
        (2) Formed anytime the commander goes forward to control an operation.
        (3) Positioned (normally) with the main effort headquarters.
    b. Employ the main CP. (executive officer [XO]).
        (1) Controls current operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Synchronizes combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) activities in support of the overall operation.		
(3) Provides a focal point for the development of intelligence.		
(4) Supports situational understanding (SU) for the commander and subordinates by monitoring, analyzing, and disseminating information using Army battle command systems (ABCS) and Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2).		
(5) Tracks the current battle.		
(a) Monitors and anticipates the commander's decision points.		
(6) Plans future operations.		
(7) Monitors rear operations.		
(8) Coordinates with higher headquarters and adjacent units.		
(9) Keeps the higher headquarters informed.		
(10) Provides net control station (NCS) for the operations and intelligence (O&I) radio net and backup NCS for the command radio net.		
(11) Provides terrain management and Army airspace command and control (A2C2).		
(12) Provides a stable, secure planning facility.		
(13) Produces and disseminates the commander's orders.		
(14) Plans and controls intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations.		
c. Employ the combat trains command post (CTCP).		
(1) Consists of the unit personnel officer (S1), logistics officer (S4), surgeon, and any attached military police elements.		
(2) Tracks the current battle.		
(3) Provides CSS representation to the main CP for planning and integration.		
(4) Sustains operations.		
(5) Forecasts and coordinates future requirements.		
(6) Serves as the entry point for units entering the unit rear area.		
(7) Monitors main supply routes (MSRs) and controls CSS traffic.		
(8) Coordinates the evacuation of casualties, equipment, and enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
*14. BN/TF leaders and staff execute the plan.		
a. Verify subordinate elements report enemy and friendly actions, change in status, and any other factors that would require change to the plan.		
b. Win the battle.		
(1) Direct the maneuver of units.		
(2) Control direct and indirect fires using Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS) and digital and or analog communications systems.		
(3) Direct other combat support (CS) actions to cope with changes in mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.		
c. Verify FRAGOs are clear, concise, and quickly executed by subordinates.		
d. Disseminate changes that affect the battle.		
e. Coordinate all battle actions between unit and higher elements as required.		
*15. BN/TF leaders and staff track the battle.		
a. Assess the operation.		
(1) Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.		
(2) Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*16. BN/TF leaders and staff report status to the higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2000.07-IOTE	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4009.07-IOTE	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4018.07-IOTE	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5099.07-IOTE	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5108.07-IOTE	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6009.07-IOTE	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5036)
    (FM 71-2)   (FM 7-20)   (FM 7-85)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has attacked and seized an objective. The enemy has been defeated and/or has withdrawn, but has the capability to counterattack. The BN/TF has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend its position or directing a change in mission. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The unit established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts consolidation IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF eliminates any remaining enemy resistance, and establishes local security. The BN/TF accounts for all personnel, fills key leader positions, mans primary weapon systems, reestablishes and/or verifies communications, and submits all required reports IAW the unit TSOP. The BN/TF prepares for an enemy counterattack. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF reestablishes the chain of command as required.		

* 3. Command group moves into position to control and influence the unit.
    a. Positions itself with lead elements in the most critical areas or where it can best influence the battlefield.
    b. Positions security elements to cover avenues of approach (AA).		

4. BN/TF consolidates.
    a. Establishes security consistent with the threat.
    b. Reestablishes communications if required.
      (1) Establishes contact (electronic and or physical) with adjacent friendly units.
    c. Eliminates pockets of enemy resistance.
    d. Prepares defensive positions and establishes a fire plan.
    e. Clears obstacles or improves lanes to support friendly movement and reorganization activities.
    f. Plans and prepares for future operations.
    g. Destroys captured enemy equipment that cannot be evacuated or is not useful to the unit.
    h. Treats and evacuates casualties.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

i. Secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.
j. Processes captured documents as required.
k. Maintains contact with the enemy by redirecting the reconnaissance effort, directing small-unit patrols, possibly conducting limited objective attacks, and by pulling the latest intelligence from the higher headquarters and intelligence officer (S2).
l. Cross-levels and conducts emergency resupply.
 	
5. BN/TF remains ready for an enemy counterattack.
 	
6. BN/TF reports situation and status to higher headquarters.
 	
7. BN/TF continues operations as directed.
    a. Conducts a map and visual reconnaissance of terrain between present location and next objective.
    b. Issues FRAGOs as necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Counterattack (07-OPFOR-0028)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted enemy penetration attempt or while the enemy is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire and engineer support available. The OPFOR has gained air superiority.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses short, intense artillery and air preparation, attacks the enemy flanks or rear, and or exploits gaps and ruptures in the enemy formations. The OPFOR prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded enemy personnel. The OPFOR gains or regains terrain and destroys or captures the remaining enemy personnel and equipment.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leaders should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5045)

(AR 220-10)   (FM 55-65)   (TB 55-46-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is located at home station, and has received a movement order. The BN/TF command post (CP) is established. The gaining theater command provided a deployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF headquarters established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, installation emergency operations center (EOC) (if applicable), installation transportation office (if applicable), and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts deployment activities IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Soldier readiness processing (SRP) teams are identified and established to prepare personnel for deployment. A rear detachment is established to support non-deploying soldiers and families, if applicable. The BN/TF employs operations security (OPSEC).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: The BN/TF headquarters not only completes the following steps, but supervises subordinate unit and or element deployment activities.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF conducts predeployment activities. a. Conducts planning and training validation. (1) Focuses on mission essential tasks list (METL) tasks. (2) Focuses on individual and collective tasks that support their wartime mission. b. Identifies special teams to assist in deployment planning and execution as required. c. Ensures additional duty personnel required to plan and conduct the deployment have been identified and placed on orders. d. Ensures rear detachment leaders and personnel are identified.		
3. BN/TF conducts alert phase. a. Receives and verifies deployment orders. (1) Issues warning order and or movement order to subordinate units and or elements. (2) Identifies deployment mission requirements by reviewing movement order and any appropriate contingency plan. b. Initiates recall of personnel on temporary duty (TDY), attending schools, or in authorized leave status. c. Completes soldier readiness activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Submits recommendations to appropriate headquarters commander that selected personnel attending formal schools be allowed to complete course work.
      (2) Conducts cross-leveling of personnel within the command.
      (3) Conducts overseas orientations IAW appropriate regulation(s).
  d. Up-loads vehicles with equipment.
  e. Configure pallets and containerized loads.
  f. Issues communications security (COMSEC) materials.
  g. Issues movement orders and instructions.
  h. Prepares manifest lists for movement.
  i. Transfers all nondeploying equipment to rear detachment.
  j. Updates critical equipment shortage lists.
  k. Picks up ammunition from ammunition supply point (ASP).
  l. Conducts operations security (OPSEC) sweeps of the unit area.
  m. Conducts analysis of higher headquarters order.
  n. Up loads contingency stocks for class I and chemical detection equipment (CDE).
  o. Conducts personal property inventories of deploying soldiers.
  p. Prepares shipping labels.
 	
4. BN/TF conducts deployment phase.
  a. Clears the installation.
  b. Finalizes deployment plans.
  c. Conducts any final coordination with the higher headquarters and or installation.
  d. Deploys an advance party to the port of embarkation (POE).
  e. Conducts all coordination with division and or post transportation offices for movement times and routes from unit marshalling areas to the POE.
  f. Confirms unit area security, privately owned vehicles (POV) storage areas, and arms rooms. (rear detachment).
 	
5. BN/TF moves to the POE.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-2-1604.07-C222	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	
17-1-6465.07-C222	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion, Brigade Combat Team)	

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-5054)

(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 5-100)	(FM 5-101)	(FM 5-102)
(FM 5-103)		

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M		(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:				T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently, or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF engineer and staff conducts engineer planning and coordination in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and or BN/TF commander's guidance that supports the BN/TF scheme of maneuver and commander's intent. BN/TF engineer assists the staff in producing the BN/TF order or plan. The BN/TF engineer develops the engineer annex to the plan or order. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. Staff engineer and staff receive an order for a new mission and begins the engineer estimate process.
    a. Issues a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate engineer elements if applicable.
    b. Analyzes a copy of higher headquarters OPLAN and or OPORD for the following as it relates to engineer support to the maneuver unit.
       (1) Focuses on enemy situation.
       (2) Focuses on mission paragraph.
       (3) Focuses on task organization.
       (4) Focuses on logistics paragraph.
       (5) Focuses on Engineer Annex.
       (6) Focuses on type of operation. (offensive or defensive).
       (7) Focuses on current intelligence picture.
       (8) Focuses on assets available.
       (9) Focuses on time available. (estimate).
    c. Participates in the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
    d. Conducts the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA).
       (1) Conducts terrain analysis using Observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment. (OAKOC). (Engineer analyses terrain and weather to determine their impact on military and or engineer operations.)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Terrain analysis is a major component of the IPB and the first component of the EBA.		
(a) Develops, in concert with the unit intelligence officer (S2), the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO).		
(2) Conducts analysis of the ENEMY mission and mobility and or survivability capabilities.		
(a) Uses the unit S2's doctrinal and situational template to develop the enemy order of battle. (may be accomplished by the engineer battalion S2 if available).		
(b) Recommends intelligence requirements (IR) and priority intelligence requirements (PIR), in coordination with the unit S2.		
Note: Staff engineer plans for engineers to be part of unit intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations, based on commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).		
(c) Templates (for defense) the enemy's mobility capabilities and their location in the formation, use of scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), engineers that support the reconnaissance effort, high value targets, and countermobility and survivability capabilities in a transition to a defense.		
(d) Templates (for offense) the enemy's tactical and protective obstacle effort, use of SCATMINEs, and survivability and fortification effort.		
(3) Conducts analysis of the FRIENDLY engineer mission and mobility and or survivability capabilities.		
(a) Evaluates the task organization to determine engineer organization and assets available.		
(b) Determines if additional assets and or resources are needed from higher headquarters.		
e. Combines the analysis of the terrain and the enemy's and friendly's capabilities to form facts and assumptions.		
(1) Forms facts and assumptions about likely enemy engineer effort and the most probable enemy course of action (ECOA).		
(2) Forms facts and assumptions about critical friendly and enemy tactical events.		
(3) Forms facts and assumptions about potential enemy vulnerabilities.		
(4) Forms facts and assumptions about the effect of these factors on the mission.		
f. Conducts higher mission and intent analysis.		
(1) Determines engineer specified tasks.		
(2) Determines engineer implied tasks.		
(3) Determines engineer essential tasks.		
(4) Determines engineer assets available. (These are assets allocated in the task organization or discussed in organizations for combat in paragraph 3 of the OPORD.)		
(5) Determines engineer limitations. (These are restrictions placed on a commander specifying things that cannot be done and or things that must be done.)		
(6) Determines engineer risks. (The higher headquarters might specify a risk that the commander is willing to accept to accomplish the mission.)		
(7) Determines time analysis. (time available for planning and time lines for executing a particular phase of the operation).		
g. Participates in course of action (COA) development.		
(1) Analyzes relative force ratios.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Arrays initial forces.		
(3) Identifies critical events for the enemy and friendly.		
(4) Develops an initial scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) for each COA. (Ensures engineer operations are integrated into unit operations.)		
(5) Determines command and control (C2) means and control measures.		
(6) Prepares COA statement(s) and sketch(s). (At a minimum, the engineer ensures that the operations officer (S3) understands the engineer task organization and available combat power.)		
h. Participates in COA analysis.		
(1) War games the timing aspects of situational obstacles.		
(2) War games the timing aspects of obscuring and suppressing for combined-arms breaching.		
(3) War games the timing aspects of positioning of forces and material for current and future operations.		
(4) Ensures that the SOEO supports the maneuver plan and is integrated with the other staff elements.		
(5) Identifies weaknesses in the engineer plan and make adjustments if necessary.		
(6) Ensure that the unit S2 integrates enemy engineer assets and actions as he plays the enemy force.		
i. Participates in COA comparison.		
(1) Determines which SOEO best supports accomplishing the mission.		
j. Makes a recommendation to the unit commander during the decision brief.		
(1) Briefs the following information. (The type and amount of detail that the engineer briefs depends on the needs and preferences of the individual commander.)		
(a) Briefs the concept of engineer support.		
(b) Briefs engineer mission priorities.		
(c) Briefs critical engineer events and or actions.		
(d) Briefs task-organization and command or support relationships.		
(e) Briefs obstacle overlay (including SCATMINE employment authority and concept for use by system type).		
(f) Briefs survivability estimate and priority.		
(g) Briefs critical tasks directed to subordinate units.		
(h) Briefs engineer's work time line.		
* 3. Staff engineer assists the rest of the staff in producing the order or plan.		
a. States clearly engineer priorities to maneuver units or tasks. (paragraph 3 [execution, subparagraph concept]).		
b. States the SCATMINE concept and briefly states how the commander intends to use SCATMINEs, by system type. (Also, it gives control measures to facilitate future maneuvers and includes approval authority for employing short and long self-destruct mines.)		
c. Lists engineer tasks identified throughout the estimate process. (paragraph 3 of the OPORD, [taskings to subordinate units]).		
d. Includes required material or services to support engineers and their missions. (paragraph 4 of the OPORD).		
* 4. Staff engineer develops the Engineer Annex to the OPORD that includes the following information.		
Note: Below division level, the Engineer Annex can use the five-paragraph format, or it can be a combination of an overlay, obstacle list, execution matrix, or a verbal briefing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Includes critical information derived from the engineer battlefield assessment process.
    b. Includes all critical information and tasks not covered elsewhere in the order.
    c. Includes items not covered in the TSOPs.
    d. Includes information and tasks directed to major subordinate elements of the supported unit, not supporting engineer units.
    e. Includes information and instructions that have been fully coordinated with other parts of the OPORD, supported-unit commander, and staff.
    f. Includes all existing and proposed friendly obstacles and control measures [obstacles, restrictions, and lanes; directed or tactical reserve obstacles; and situational obstacles, including associated named areas of interest (NAI) and or target areas of interest (TAI).]
    g. Includes known and plotted enemy obstacles (must also be on the situation template).
    h. Includes logistic locations and routes, as they apply to engineer operations.
    i. Includes nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated areas.
    j. Includes SCATMINE restrictions.
    k. Includes river-crossing locations and restrictions.		

* 5. Staff engineer plans mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations IAW the commander's intent.		
* 6. Staff engineer receives subordinate unit's obstacle plans and incorporates them into the unit obstacle data base.		
* 7. Staff engineer plans for topographic operations to include terrain analysis, expedient mapping, and map storage and distribution.		

* 8. Staff engineer prepares for operations.
    a. Coordinates with the staff to ensure integration of engineer operations into the maneuver plan.
    b. Monitors intelligence updates and provides information to the unit commander and staff as necessary.
    c. Coordinates for additional engineer assets and resources.
    d. Monitors pre-combat inspections and rehearsals of subordinate engineer elements as required.		

* 9. Staff engineer monitors the battle.
    a. Reports the status of significant engineer events as they occur.
    b. Monitors enemy and friendly locations and critical events.
    c. Tracks the decision support template and synchronization matrix and keeps the unit commander and or staff informed.
    d. Tracks the employment of enemy and friendly SCATMINE systems.
    e. Sends SCATMINE warning to subordinate elements.
    f. Tracks battle losses and requests replacements.
    g. Tracks the positioning of class IV and class V supplies.		

*10. Staff engineer controls engineer assets not task organized to subordinate elements.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-1252	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-1252.07-IOTE	Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6081	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6081.07-IOTE	Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5063)
(FM 7-98)   (TC 7-98-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters in a stability environment. The BN/TF is directed to conduct negotiations within their assigned area to resolve an issue(s) with local factional or non-US military elements. The local factional or external military elements are willing to negotiate. A debriefing format is specified in the higher headquarters tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Higher headquarters provides a negotiator, recorder, and interpreter. The BN/TF designates a security element. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available. The BN/TF establishes communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable TSOP. The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts negotiations IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Negotiations enable agreements to be reached, and promote the process of conciliation. Negotiators resolve the dispute(s) or issue(s), or set the conditions for future negotiations. Resolution is followed by the conduct of scheduled preventive actions and follow-up liaison. Negotiations do not exceed the applicable level of authority. All actions, liaison and/or negotiation, results, and requests for assistance are immediately reported to higher headquarters. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using army battle command system (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF commander designates a negotiation team. a. Includes interpreters and other personnel from higher headquarters.		

* 3. BN/TF commander or designated representative and negotiation team analyze negotiation requirements.
    a. Identify the problem or source of contention.
    b. Analyze previous attempts to resolve the issue(s) or dispute(s).
    c. Analyze existing agreements or understandings relevant to the situation.
    d. Determine end state or success criteria for the negotiating session.
        (1) Identify issue(s) and or item(s) that can not be negotiated.
        (2) Identify issue(s) and or item(s) that can be negotiated and define the "bottom line" position that can be accepted by the US side.
    e. Obtain approval for end state or success criteria for the negotiating session.
    f. Develop a draft agenda for the negotiations.		

4. BN/TF negotiation team prepares for negotiations. a. Requests additional information about the situation, as necessary.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Collects relevant documents, maps, and photographs to facilitate mutual agreement of facts and details of issues.		
c. Briefs interpreter on the situation prior to execution.		
d. Rehearses with interpreter.		
e. Meets individually with the leader of each party to negotiation. At a minimum, negotiator obtains:		
(1) Obtains approval for the meeting site.		
(2) Obtains agreement for the date and time of the negotiation.		
(3) Obtains approval of the negotiation agenda.		
f. Selects meeting location.		
(1) Ensures meeting place is neutral in terms of cultural and ethnic considerations.		
(2) Ensures site is acceptable to all parties.		
5. BN/TF negotiation team prepares meeting location.		
a. Organizes meeting site. (tables, chairs, maps, cameras, and so forth).		
b. Designates a waiting area for guards, support personnel, drivers, and so forth).		
c. Designates a parking area.		
d. Prepares to record meeting on videotape or other electronic media if required.		
e. Provides maps with the same series number, page number and terrain scale to all parties.		
f. Coordinates for local security to secure the site to prevent interference during the negotiations. Security elements are assigned to--		
(1) Conduct rapid but thorough security checks.		
(2) Control access to the meeting.		
(3) Provide local security.		
g. Designates break areas.		
h. Provides for latrine facilities.		
i. Arranges for refreshments when possible.		
j. Establishes adequate communications assets for all parties.		
6. BN/TF negotiation team conducts negotiations.		
a. Establishes the negotiating environment.		
(1) Greets and or exchanges courtesies with negotiators.		
(2) Introduces all attendees and interpreters.		
(3) Encourages informal small talk among participants while offering refreshments.		
(4) Describes layout and configuration of site before starting the negotiation.		
(5) Describes a previously agreed-upon agenda or, establishes one.		
Note: A previously agreed upon agenda becomes a framework to guide the discussion.		
b. Manages the negotiations.		
(1) Keeps the negotiations on the agreed to agenda.		
(2) Identifies what each party desires.		
(3) Provides time for all participants to present their cases without interruption.		
(4) Describes the issue in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants.		
(5) Provides the stability force preferred solution, or acceptable solutions.		
(6) Describes a common middle ground.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: If negotiators display frustration, take a break and give tempers a chance to cool before continuing. If negotiations reach an impasse, isolate the issue and deal with it separately. Get negotiators to identify their issues in specific terms. Then seek common ground.		
(7) Identifies options if appropriate.		
(8) Avoids confrontation.		
(9) Conducts mediation between multiple parties.		
(10) Provides facts supported by evidence to correct inaccurate information or misrepresentation.		
(11) Obtains small concessions to get parties in a pattern of agreements.		
(12) Records all positions, opinions, and issues for possible investigation and further action by higher headquarters.		
(13) Uses previous agreements or understandings as a framework for the negotiation. (unless those are the reason for contention).		
c. Completes the session at the agreed time or ends the session when no further progress is feasible.		
(1) Describes the points of agreement and disagreement in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants. Results include actions to be taken by each party if appropriate.		
(2) Obtains agreements from all negotiating parties that do not exceed the Mission Instructions, higher headquarters order or other special order.		
OR		
(3) Establishes favorable conditions for future successful negotiations.		
(a) Describes the position of each party as concerns the dispute or issue in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants.		
(b) Obtains agreement from all parties to continue negotiations.		
d. Documents the results of the negotiations.		
(1) Records results of session.		
(a) Includes acknowledges agreements and concessions made by negotiating parties.		
(b) Includes issues requiring investigation.		
(c) Includes tentative agenda for follow-up meetings		
(2) Provides written copies of record to participants, if possible.		
(3) Obtains copies of other parties' records if they were taking notes.		
(4) Ensures clear and positive understanding of any actions agreed upon and defines coordination measures to accomplish those actions.		
(5) Prepares agreements for signature before parties depart.		
(6) Obtains signatures to agreements before parties depart.		
(7) Completes the meeting with concluding remarks that point out the positive aspects or results of the session.		
(8) Coordinates for future meetings to include dates, times, locations, and means of communication.		
e. Maintains pleasant conversation with each party during their departure, regardless of results of the session.		
* 7. BN/TF negotiation team leader implements follow up activities.		
a. Reports results of negotiation to the unit commander and, if required, to higher headquarters.		
b. Ensures team consolidates all notes and other raw data.		
c. Debriefs all team members or other participants. (for example, unit personnel or representatives of non-governmental organizations).		
d. Identifies key points or issues that require investigation or immediate attention.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

e. Prepares written report of meeting listing circumstances, issues, and results to include agreements or other outcomes and recommendations.
    f. Prepares documents to implement any agreed upon actions.
 	
* 8. BN/TF leaders assess the negotiations.
    a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of negotiations.
    b. Direct adjustments to ensure that negotiations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
 	
* 9. BN/TF negotiation team leader prepares for subsequent negotiations if required.
    a. Conducts negotiation after action reviews (AARs) to identify techniques and procedures for use in future negotiations.
    b. Updates information requirements.
    c. Disseminates new information requirements.
    d. Arranges for rehearsals to prepare for future negotiations if required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6072	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6072.07-IOTE	Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5072)
<u>(FM 55-15)</u>   (FM 100-14)   (FM 100-17)
(FM 12-6)   (FM 55-10)   (FM 55-12)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) has received a movement order for redeployment. Although hostilities are not currently taking place, the potential still exists for the BN/TF to face a wide range of enemy/threat activity during redeployment. The BN/TF has arrived at the designated tactical assembly area (TAA), but has not completed Phase I (Reconstitution for Strategic Movement) activities. The redeployment assembly area (RAA) and aerial port of embarkation (APOE) are specified in the movement order. A not later than (NLT) time is specified for arrival of the unit at the APOE. Higher headquarters has provided external assets required to execute the redeployment. All redeployment planning has been accomplished. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF meets the redeployment schedule established by higher headquarters, requirements of the US Customs Service, and the US Department of Agriculture (USDA) while maintaining required levels of operations security (OPSEC) and physical security. All operations adhere to the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

2. BN/TF conducts Phase I (Recovery and reconstitution for strategic movement) activities.
 a. Conducts reconstitution and or initial cross-leveling.
 b. Repacks and loads containers under US Customs and USDA supervision if applicable.
 c. Reconciles unit movement data (UMD) through documentation, inventory, and coordination of movement instructions from the theater army movement control agency (TAMCA) representatives.
 Note: Individuals may be returned directly to the theater replacement battalion for redeployment.
 d. Completes reconstitution and cross-leveling for movement and coordinates with TAMCA representatives to begin updating the Automated Unit Equipment List (AUEL).
 e. Provides personnel and administrative services support. (personnel [S1] section).
   (1) Assists subordinate unit commanders to identify soldiers, civilians, and joint assigned or attached personnel who should redeploy individually.
   (2) Assists subordinate unit commanders to prepare soldiers for redeployment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Manages personnel evaluations requirements.		
(4) Process award recommendations.		
(5) Completes records and finance updates.		
(6) Identifies personnel and administrative requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
(7) Plans and conducts "in theater" soldier readiness processing (SRP) and medical screening and surveillance program IAW applicable regulations.		
(8) Processes temporary change of station (TCS) orders and courier orders.		
(9) Conducts manifest verification NLT 48 hours prior to departure.		
(10) Provides personnel service support and administrative support as required.		
(11) Coordinates necessary postal operations.		
f. Establishes procedures to collect sensitive items prior to deployment and or redeployment. (intelligence [S2] section).		
(1) Collects all security badges and passes prior to redeployment and turn them in to higher headquarters before re-deploying.		
(2) Develops a plan to track all sensitive item containers as they are transported from logistical nodes in order to ensure accountability.		
(3) Identifies classified material and plans for security during transportation.		
Note: Includes classified material that will be turned in to higher headquarters or transfer to an incoming unit.		
(4) Collects all confidential material prior to redeployment and transport as classified material or destroys it.		
(5) Monitors subordinate units' compliance to physical security checklists.		
(6) Coordinates the collection of all contraband and arranges appropriate disposition,		
(7) Identifies changes to load plans for redeployment of sensitive items.		
(8) Disseminates classification levels of redeployment data.		
(9) Determines appropriate levels of security at designated port of embarkation (POE) during redeployment.		
g. Coordinates (with the logistics officer [S4]) the movement of personnel and equipment to designated POE. (operations [S3] section).		
(1) Coordinates hazardous material (HAZMAT) and unit movement .		
(a) Establishes documentation requirements.		
(b) Establishes individual environmental responsibilities.		
(2) Coordinates force protection during redeployment.		
(3) Reviews appropriate headquarters redeployment movement order, subordinate unit requests for training support, and commander's guidance.		
(4) Identifies liaison teams for POE.		
(5) Coordinates custom training to facilitate proper handling of equipment.		
(6) Coordinates redeployment support with higher echelon S4 as necessary.		
h. Prepares for the orderly transfer of properties, such as base camp facilities, and the movement of equipment to designated POE. (S4 section)		
(1) Identifies supply and services support requirements.		
(2) Coordinates supply and services support.		
(3) Identifies and separates excess stockage according to guidance provided by the supported commander and executed by the theater army material management center (TAMMC).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Obtains, in conjunction with the home station rear detachment, a place to receive soldiers as they arrive home.		
(5) Coordinates through the rear detachment to open accounts for all classes of supply at home station.		
(6) Identifies quantities of supplies on-hand by reviewing subordinate unit supply status reports (STATREP).		
(7) Identifies excess supplies due-in by comparing supply requirements with quantities on-hand and due-in.		
(8) Cancels requisitions for quantities determined to be excess.		
(9) Identifies required supplies arriving after unit is packed for redeployment by coordinating with direct support supply organization.		
(10) Coordinates field feeding and services support with designated support unit as required.		
(11) Submits request with Department of Defense (DoD) activity address code to the higher headquarters S4 to redirect supplies due-in after unit is packed.		
(12) Designates date and or time when internal supply service support terminates.		
(13) Provides copies of automated unit property book and related documentation to the officer in charge (OIC) of the rear detachment as required.		
(14) Coordinates Customs and USDA requests for units.		
(15) Coordinates supply and service support for main body and rear detachment during movement.		
(16) Coordinates maintenance support.		
(a) Identifies maintenance support requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
(b) Identifies vehicles in organizational and support maintenance by reviewing subordinate unit and higher headquarters maintenance STATREPs.		
(c) Identifies vehicles available for redeployment by coordinating with unit and direct support maintenance organizations.		
(d) Requests disposition instructions for vehicles and equipment not available for redeployment by coordinating with direct support maintenance organizations.		
(e) Tasks subordinate units' maintenance sections to provide maintenance support in assembly areas, staging areas, and during road movements.		
(f) Designates date and or time when organizational maintenance support terminates.		
(g) Coordinates maintenance and recovery support beyond subordinate units' capability with S4 or supporting logistics support organization.		
(17) Coordinates subordinate unit movement officer efforts to:		
(a) Prepares and maintains unit movement plans.		
(b) Updates and maintains unit movement documentation.		
(c) Prepares and submits redeployment/deployment equipment list.		
(d) Obtains and distributes military shipment labels.		
(18) Clears all properties to remain in host country.		
(a) Reports excess material to the senior material management center (MMC) for recovery (palletizing and or rewarehousing) and redistribution.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Clears facilities with higher headquarters and or civilian authorities.		
(c) Lateral transfers all equipment and or supplies to receiving unit IAW higher headquarters' guidance.		
i. Coordinates redeployment movement. (unit movement officer and or noncommissioned officer in charge [NCOIC]).		
(1) Establishes unit load teams.		
(a) Secures classified material or protects sensitive equipment.		
(b) Marks equipment for shipment by air or rail.		
(c) Stencils cargo.		
(2) Verifies unit movement date and movement schedules and routes by coordinating with theater army movement control agency (TAMCA).		
(3) Develops milestones for packing, loading, and movement operations IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
(4) Coordinates customs and USDA inspection support with unit S4.		
(5) Monitors subordinate unit's preparation of movement, customs, and USDA forms for compliance with redeployment movement order and appropriate publications.		
(6) Monitors supporting unit's vehicle and equipment preparation and cleaning for compliance with USDA guidance, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.		
(7) Monitors subordinate unit's customs and USDA inspection results for compliance with appropriate publications.		
(8) Monitors subordinate unit's movement readiness status for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
(9) Inspects subordinate unit's movement plans and or orders for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
(10) Briefs commander and or staff on movement readiness status as required.		
j. Provides communication links. (signal [S6] section).		
(1) Provides dedicated communication until completion of redeployment.		
(2) Ensures, in conjunction with the S2, the proper packing and loading of controlled cryptographic item (CCI) equipment in compliance with communication security (COMSEC) regulation.		
3. Unit completes tactical assembly area (TAA) activities and moves to redeployment assembly area (RAA).		
4. Unit conducts RAA activities.		
a. Washes major end items.		
b. Affixes placards to equipment and containers.		
c. Requests US Customs and USDA inspections on all unit equipment.		
d. Finalizes UMD.		
e. Continues supply accountability and maintenance actions.		
f. Ensures the property book and all related documentation, such as the document register, is loaded immediately. (accountable officer).		
Note: If equipment is staged for shipment after main body departure, then the property book and related documents will be left with the officer-in-charge (OIC) of the units' rear detachments and will return with them. This will expedite the reconstitution process at the home station.		
g. Coordinates final changes to the AUEL to complete actual identification of UMD.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

h. Coordinates movement of individuals not redeploying under a Time-Phased Force Deployment Data (TPFDD) unit line number (ULN).
Note: Personnel redeploying as individuals will remain under the administrative control of their assigned unit or the theater PERSCOM until POE-processed for redeployment.
 	
5. BN/TF completes RAA activities and moves to POE by the time specified in the order.
 	
6. BN/TF conducts POE activities.
    a. Coordinates with designated Theater Army Area Command (TAACOM) elements.
        (1) Coordinates for the processing of baggage and accompanying cargo.
        (2) Coordinates for cargo and passenger inspections if required.
        (3) Coordinates and or verifies the final manifest and documentation.
 	
7. BN/TF tracks equipment throughout the redeployment phase in order to ensure accountability.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2000.07-IOTE	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-4009	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4009.07-IOTE	Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-4018	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-4018.07-IOTE	Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5099.07-IOTE	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5108.07-IOTE	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
              HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5081)

(DA FORM 1155)	(DA FORM 1156)	(DA FORM 5976)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-20)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))
(FM 7-85)		

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The commander's assessment of BN/TF capabilities indicates that reorganization should be undertaken. The BN/TF has performed consolidation activities and established ground security. All necessary unit personnel and personnel are available The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts reorganization IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Command, control, and communications (C3) are reestablished, and BN/TF status is reported to higher headquarter. The BN/TF re-establishes the chain of command, key staff positions, and command and control (C2) facilities lost before or during the battle. Cross leveling and resupply are completed in time for follow-on or future operations. The BN/TF prepares for an enemy counterattack. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Reorganization can be IMMEDIATE or DELIBERATE. IMMEDIATE reorganization is quick and usually a temporary restoration of degraded units to minimum levels of effectiveness. It is implemented by the affected BN/TF commander and conducted in position as near to operating location as possible. DELIBERATE reorganization is conducted when more time and resources are available. It usually occurs after actions on the objective, during extended lulls in defensive battles, and during extended pauses between operations.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander, with staff assistance, conducts an assessment to determine the unit's capability to perform a mission.
  a. Requests status reports from subordinate elements.
  b. Determines follow-on mission if applicable.
  c. Determines available time before the start of the follow-on mission.
  d. Develops a reorganization plan.
    (1) Determines which assets will be cross-leveled to which element.
    (2) Develops a timeline to complete reorganization.		

3. BN/TF reports situation and status to higher headquarters.		
4. BN/TF prepares for reorganization.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Briefs leaders on reorganization plan.		
b. Issues orders as necessary.		
5. BN/TF conducts a deliberate reorganization.		
a. Reestablishes communications if required.		
b. Establishes and maintains security.		
c. Reestablishes the unit chain of command, key staff positions, and command and control (C2) facilities lost before or during the battle.		
d. Treats and evacuates casualties.		
(1) Performs triage, treats injured, and requests evacuation assistance. (medical personnel).		
e. Recovers and repairs damaged equipment as necessary. (coordinates with higher headquarters if recovery and repairs exceed the unit's capabilities).		
f. Redistributes ammunition, supplies, and equipment as necessary.		
g. Coordinates and conducts resupply and refueling operations.		
h. Repositions C2 facilities, communications assets, and logistics for future operations.		
i. Reorganizes subordinate elements if losses have occurred.		
(1) Replaces key wounded personnel (personnel [S1] section).		
(a) Uses personnel from disabled vehicles.		
(b) Ensures all leader positions are filled and the chain of command is reestablished.		
(c) Requests additional manpower from higher headquarters and processes replacements.		
(2) Coordinates for mortuary affairs support. Recovery operations are conducted to search for, recover, and evacuate human remains for proper disposition. (logistics [S4] section).		
(a) Evacuate remains to casualty collection point (CCP) using available transportation.		
(b) Processes Witness Statement and Casualty Feeder Reports. (DA Forms 1155 and 1156). (S1 section).		
(3) Informs the higher headquarters S4 of unit equipment loss status. (S4 section).		
(a) Reports types of vehicles lost.		
(b) Reports bumper and serial numbers of vehicles lost.		
(c) Evacuates nonmission capable (NMC) equipment IAW operation order (OPORD) or TSOP.		
(d) Request replacement personnel and vehicles by line number.		
j. Secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and captured documents and material. (S1 and intelligence [S2] sections).		
(1) Handles EPWs using the following procedure.		
(a) Searches them.		
(b) Segregates them from civilian detainees and so forth.		
(c) Silences them.		
(d) Speeds them to the rear.		
(e) Safeguards them at all time while they are under unit control.		
(2) Ensures EPWs are tagged with necessary information, to include date and time of capture, location of capture (grid coordinates), capturing unit, and circumstances of capture. (DA Form 5976 - Enemy Prisoner of War Capture Tag)		
(3) Ensures documents are evacuated to higher headquarters intelligence personnel.		
(4) Ensures captured material is reported to higher headquarters.		
(5) Evacuates wounded EPWs by the most expeditious means possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

6. BN/TF reports situation and status to higher headquarters.
 	
7. BN/TF continues operations as directed.
    a. Conducts a map and visual reconnaissance of terrain between present location and next objective.
    b. Issues FRAGOs as necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Counterattack (07-OPFOR-0028)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted enemy penetration attempt or while the enemy is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire and engineer support available. The OPFOR has gained air superiority.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses short, intense artillery and air preparation, attacks the enemy flanks or rear, and or exploits gaps and ruptures in the enemy formations. The OPFOR prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded enemy personnel. The OPFOR gains or regains terrain and destroys or captures the remaining enemy personnel and equipment.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leaders should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
            HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5090)
         (FM 100-14)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts risk management and fratricide prevention IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of safety hazards and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. BN/TF does not experience losses due to fratricide. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards.
     a. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, ROE and ROI.
     b. Identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks.
     c. Integrate safety into every phase of planning process.
     d. Identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards.
     e. Conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.		

* 3. BN/TF commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
     a. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions.
     b. Identify unwarranted risks.
     c. Compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives.
     d. Calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records.
     e. Describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) using risk assessment matrices (regular and environmental) and the following categories.
        (1) Uses nature of operation. (length and area).
        (2) Uses mission preparation. (guidance time and depth).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Uses mission control. (command and control [C2] status and nature of mission).		
(4) Uses soldier selection. (task nature and soldier experience).		
(5) Uses soldier alertness. (operational environment and length of rest).		
(6) Uses soldier fitness. (mission complexity and environmental conditioning).		
(7) Uses equipment status. (age and maintenance status).		
(8) Uses weather. (temperature, visibility, and moisture).		
f. Computes overall risk status.		
g. Identify aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.		
(1) Includes failures in direct fire control plan.		
(2) Includes land navigation failures.		
(3) Includes failures in combat identification.		
(4) Includes inadequate control measures.		
(5) Includes failures in reporting and communications.		
(6) Includes weapons errors.		
(7) Includes battlefield hazards.		
* 4. BN/TF commander and leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.		
a. Select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk.		
b. Develop procedures that reduce risk.		
c. Provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation.		
d. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks.		
5. BN/TF personnel implement risk control procedures.		
a. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations.		
b. Correct unsafe acts on the spot.		
c. Report all risk and safety violations to commander and unit safety officer.		
* 6. BN/TF commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls.		
a. Enforces standards and controls.		
b. Evaluates effectiveness of controls and adjust and or update as necessary.		
c. Complies with orders, TSOP, commander's guidance, ROE, and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5099)

(FM 100-34)	(FM 100-34-1)	(FM 100-40)
(FM 100-5)	(FM 100-55)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 20-32)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 3-100)
(FM 3-19)	(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-3-1)
(FM 3-34.2)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 34-2-1)
(FM 34-54)	(FM 34-60)	(FM 3-5)
(FM 3-50-1)	(FM 44-1)	(FM 5-71-2)
(FM 6-30)	(FM 90-10(HTF))	(FM 90-10-1)
(FM 90-13)	(FM 90-2)	(FM 90-4)
(FM 90-7)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Command posts (CPs) are established and functioning. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts S3 operations IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The S3 section plans, coordinates, creates orders, and performs control activities to ensure successful accomplishment of the mission. The S3 section prepares, updates, and maintains the operations estimate. The S3 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The S3 section monitors the execution of decisions. The S3 section tracks the current battle. The S3 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The S3 supervises S3 section activities and S3 personnel. The S3 section considers ROE and ROI during planning. The S3 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF operations officer (S3) participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP).		

3. BN/TF S3 section prepares, coordinates, authenticates, publishes, and distributes the TSOP, OPORDs, FRAGOs, warning orders (WARNOs), and operations plans (OPLANs) in coordination with other staff officers.
    a. Reviews entire OPLANs and OPORDs for synchronization and completeness.
    b. Reviews plans and orders of subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. BN/TF S3 section develops and provides applicable graphics to subordinate elements. a. Acknowledges and records receipt of orders and graphics by all subordinates.		
5. BN/TF S3 section prepares, updates, and maintains operations estimate IAW TSOP and or commander's guidance.		
6. BN/TF S3 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.		

7. BN/TF S3 section issues FRAGOs to implement guidance or directions of the commander.
    a. Issues FRAGOs that are clear and concise.
    b. Verifies FRAGOs are received by all necessary elements.		

* 8. BN/TF S3 participates in targeting.		
9. BN/TF S3 section conducts staff coordination. a. Synchronizes tactical operations with all staff.		
10. BN/TF S3 section monitors the battle.		
11. BN/TF S3 coordinates with the S2 to write the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) annex. a. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process		
12. BN/TF S3 recommends intelligence requirements (IR) to the intelligence officer (S2).		
13. BN/TF S3 section integrates fire support into all operations.		
14. BN/TF S3 plans tactical troop movement, including route selection, priority of movement, timing, providing of security, bivouacking, quartering, staging, and preparing of the movement order.		

15. BN/TF S3 recommends priorities for allocating critical command resources, such as, but not limited to:
    a. Recommends allocation of time. (available planning time).
    b. Recommends allocation of ammunition basic loads and the controlled supply rate (CSR) of ammunition.
    c. Recommends allocation of personnel and equipment replacements.
    d. Recommends allocation of electronic frequencies and secure key lists.
    e. Recommends use of resources to accomplish both maneuver and support.
      (1) Includes resources required for deception purposes.		

16. BN/TF S3 coordinates and directs terrain management. (overall ground manager).		
17. BN/TF S3 determines combat service support (CSS) resource requirements in coordination with the personnel and logistics officers (S1 and S4).		
18. BN/TF S3 participates in course of action (COA) and decision support template (DST) development with other staff officers.		
19. BN/TF S3 recommends the general locations of command posts (CPs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

20. BN/TF S3 recommends task organization and assigning missions to subordinate elements, which includes the following:
    a. Includes developing, maintaining, and revising the troop list.
    b. Includes assigning, attaching, and detaching units, detachments, or teams.
    c. Includes receiving units, detachments, or teams.
       (1) Orients, trains, and reorganizes them as necessary.		

21. BN/TF S3 plans and supervises the following:
    a. Plans and supervises operations security (OPSEC).
       (1) Includes analyzing the OPSEC posture of the command.
       (2) Includes determining essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) and OPSEC vulnerabilities.
       (3) Includes evaluating and planning countersurveillance operations and countermeasures.
       (4) Includes coordinating signal security (SIGSEC) measures with the signal officer (S6).
    b. Plans and supervises force protection measures.
    c. Plans and supervises Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2).
    d. Plans and supervises information operations.
    e. Plans and supervises area damage control.
    f. Plans and supervises rear operations.
    g. Plans and supervises operations concerning enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and civilian internees in coordination with the S1 and S4.		

22. BN/TF S3 exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the following special staff officers:
    a. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the air defense officer (ADO).
    b. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the air liaison officer (ALO). (Air Force).
    c. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the aviation liaison officer (AVN LNO). (Army).
    d. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the chemical officer (CHEMO).
    e. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the fire support officer (FSO).
    f. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for any liaison officers (LNOs).
    g. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the psychological operations (PSYOP) officer if available.		

23. BN/TF S3 in concert with other staff sections plans and coordinates mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations.
    a. Assigns R&S assets to find and or verify route, approach, and obstacle characteristics.
       (1) Identifies existing obstacles and likely or effective potential positions for reinforcing obstacles along threat routes, friendly approaches, and other routes.
    b. Selects and prioritizes critical mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks IAW their contributions to the concept.
    c. Assigns mobility, countermobility, and or survivability tasks for execution.		

24. BN/TF S3 and ADO, if available, plan and coordinate air defense.		
25. BN/TF S3 and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) section plan and coordinate NBC defense and smoke operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Analyze enemy NBC threat.
    b. Identify friendly NBC posture and capabilities.
    c. Identify weather impact on NBC operations. (friendly and threat).
    d. Recommend uses and sources of smoke.
    e. Maintain accurate and complete radiological exposure statuses.
    f. Analyze, prepare, and disseminate NBC reports.		

26. BN/TF S3 section assesses and tracks the current battle and monitors the execution of decisions.
    a. Disseminates quickly critical information to the commander, staff, and subordinate and supporting headquarters.
    b. Monitors continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
    c. Directs adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.		

27. BN/TF S3 section coordinates information impacting operations with forward, adjacent, supporting, and supported elements.		

28. BN/TF S3 section supports the command group's command, control, and coordination of the battle.
    a. Keeps the commander updated by providing concise consolidated updates.
    b. Communicates with subordinates the commander cannot reach.
    c. Coordinates additional support from the higher headquarters.
    d. Acts as net control station (NCS) for command net.
    e. Plans future operations.		

29. BN/TF S3 section executes contingency plans.
    a. Recommends contingency plan to be executed based on coordination with S2.
    b. Transitions from original tactical plan to execute predetermined contingency plans.
    c. Clarifies decision point(s) for implementation of contingency plan.
    d. Monitors developments in situations not foreseen in contingency plan.
    e. Directs execution based on commander's guidance.
    f. Issues necessary orders.
    g. Monitors execution of the contingencies plan.		

30. BN/TF S3 section reports. a. Submits all required operational reports IAW the TSOP and or guidance from higher headquarters.		
31. BN/TF S3 supervises the S3 section and S3 personnel.		

32. BN/TF S3 section complies with ROE and ROI.
    a. Considers ROE and ROI during planning operations.
    b. Enforces ROE and ROI during execution.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009.07-IOTE	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5153.07-IOTE	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5162	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5162.07-IOTE	Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6009.07-IOTE	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
          HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5108)

(FM 100-14)	(FM 100-6)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 11-41)	(FM 11-43)
(FM 11-50)	(FM 24-33)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 34-40-7)		

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts S6 operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The S6 section establishes, maintains, and monitors information systems to support BN/TF operations. The S6 section complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF signal (S6) section plans, integrates and synchronizes, trouble-shoots and maintains, and supervises signal support for unit operations.		
a. BN/TF signal officer (S6) participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP).		
(1) Conducts mission analysis to determine specified and implied communication tasks.		
b. Participates in intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) to determine the signal threat.		
(1) Coordinates with the intelligence officer (S2) on electronic countermeasure (ECM) threat and electronic counter countermeasure (ECCM) procedures.		
c. Evaluates terrain.		
(1) Participates with the Headquarters and Headquarters Company (HHC) Commander and a representative from the operations (S3) section to determine command post (CP) sites.		
d. Coordinates with the S3 for placement of communications equipment and line-of-sight analysis.		
e. Coordinates with the S3 on manipulative communications deception and tactical ECCM.		
f. Identifies, coordinates, and provides for task force (TF) communication requirements.		
g. Conducts network systems planning for the tactical internet (TI). (digital equipped units).		
h. Produces the TI mission data package (MDP). (digital equipped units).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Determines TI router connectivity and loads into computer. (digital equipped units).		
j. Determines unit task organization.		
k. Verifies task organization needline requirements.		
l. Reviews mission data from unit order and Warfighter Information Network-Management System (WIN-MS). (digital equipped units).		
m. Reviews frequency allocation plan for all unit emitters.		
n. Ensures all task-organized units are supported by plan.		
o. Confirms network management communication channels are in place.		
p. Includes sources of external unit intelligence data.		
q. Includes adequate name service to include connectivity between name servers and managed objects.		
r. Conducts retransmission (RETRANS) planning for the unit to include comparing assets with projected requirements.		
s. Coordinates with next higher echelon signal officer for additional communications support if required.		
t. Coordinates with the supporting signal unit to maintain access to the Army Common User System (ACUS).		
u. Coordinates for maintenance support with the logistics officer (S4).		
3. S6 section accomplishes the following:		
a. Provides technical staff supervision over signal support activities throughout the unit.		
b. Exercises OPCON of all communications assets assigned or attached to the unit.		
c. Assumes supervisory responsibility for all communications security (COMSEC) items within the unit to include accountability, distribution, destruction, and security.		
d. Inspects subordinate unit signal support sections.		
e. Reviews signal prescribed load lists (PLLs) and ensures scheduled services are completed on unit communications equipment.		
f. Provides organizational level COMSEC maintenance to support the unit.		
4. BN/TF S6 section constructs the signal annex to the unit OPORD.		
a. Prepares annex IAW appropriate field manuals.		
b. Prepares the command and signal paragraph.		
c. Provides annex to the S3 for inclusion in the unit order.		
d. Includes the frequency modulation (FM) retransmission plan to support the commander's directed scheme of maneuver.		
e. Prepares the digital subscriber table and or address book for the unit TI. (digital equipped units).		
5. BN/TF S6 section provides unit communications support.		
a. Establishes and maintains communications.		
(1) Establishes analog communications. (includes mobile subscriber equipment).		
(2) Links separate command posts (CPs) through the wide area network (WAN). (digital equipped units).		
(3) Maintains the communications network in the face of tactical movement, battle damage, and equipment failures.		
(4) Oversees the planning and installation of the local area network (LAN) configuration procedures. (digital equipped units).		
(5) Monitors WAN performance. (digital equipped units).		
(6) Maximizes the throughput capability of the WAN. (digital equipped units).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(7) Operates the WIN-MS. (digital equipped units).		
(a) Provides effective management of the installation, operation, and maintenance of the unit communication system including the TI by transmitting and receiving tactical messages.		
(b) Confirms that simple network management protocol (SNMP) and network management server within the TI network are operational.		
(c) Ensures distribution of unit task organization (UTO) to appropriate Enhanced Position Locating and Reporting System (EPLRS) network control stations (NCSs).		
(d) Scans EPLRS net control station (NCS) for applicable data.		
(e) Identifies system problems and initiates corrective action.		
(f) Coordinates internal CP set-up to include radio, wire, facsimile (FAX), and tactical satellite (TACSAT).		
(g) Reconfigures the communication systems to meet situational requirements.		
b. Troubleshoots and maintains communication assets.		
(1) Identifies system problems and initiates corrective action.		
(a) Troubleshoots mobile subscriber system.		
(b) Troubleshoots analog communications systems.		
(c) Troubleshoots digital communication systems.		
6. BN/TF S6 section manages TI network initialization functions. (digital equipped units).		
a. Verifies network initialization.		
b. Confirms free text, preformatted message screens, and pop-ups are operational.		
c. Confirms automated reports and functions are operational.		
d. Confirms Army Battle Command System (ABCS) components are functional.		
7. BN/TF S6 section ensures communication activities continue to support unit operations through changing situations and conditions.		
a. Maintains status of unit equipment outages, maintenance, and impact on communications plans.		
b. Coordinates changes to communications plans resulting from system status changes with the higher headquarters system control (SYSCON).		
c. Advises the unit S3 on adjustments to communication support requirements to maintain system continuity.		
8. BN/TF S6 section provides communications security (COMSEC) management.		
a. Maintains the signal operating instructions (SOI) distribution scheme.		
b. Supervises the issue and accounting for COMSEC equipment, key lists, codes, and authentication systems.		
c. Clearly defines time sharing and procedures for critical nets, especially satellite communications-facsimile (FAX).		
9. BN/TF S6, in concert with the unit S2 and unit S3, processes interference reports and submits meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) FEEDER voice template message reports to higher headquarters by secure means as required.		
10. BN/TF S6 coordinates with civil affairs officer (S5) and or civil affairs team for use of commercial information systems.		
11. BN/TF S6 section complies with ROE and ROI.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BCT)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5117)

(FM 5-71-3)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 5-100)	(FM 5-101)	(FM 5-102)
(FM 5-103)	(FM 5-170)	(FM 5-33)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff develops the engineer estimate IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The staff engineer is integrated with the BN/TF staff and participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP). The staff engineer, with input from the BN/TF staff, conducts the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA). The staff engineer, with input from the BN/TF staff, develops the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) that supports the BN/TF commander's intent and scheme of maneuver. The staff engineer makes operational reports to/through the BN/TF S3, and provides other required reports through engineer channels. The BN/TF staff considers ROE and ROI during planning. The BN/TF staff enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. Staff engineer, with assistance of staff, conducts battlespace assessment as part of the MDMP.
    a. Obtains commander's planning guidance.
    b. Develops the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA).
        (1) Conducts terrain analysis. (Terrain analysis is a major component of the intelligence preparation of the battlefield [IPB].)
            (a) Analyzes the terrain's impact on the battlefield using Observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment. (OAKOC) framework.
            (b) Analyzes the advantages and or disadvantages that the terrain offers the enemy and friendly forces.
            (c) Analyzes the conclusions on the terrain's impact on accomplishing the mission.
        (2) Conducts enemy mission and mobility and or survivability capabilities.
            (a) Supports the intelligence officer (S2) during the enemy evaluation by focusing on the enemy's mission as it relates to its engineer capabilities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Develops an estimate of the enemy's engineer capabilities using the S2's order of battle and the knowledge of enemy engineer organizations and other assets. (such as combat-vehicle self-entrenching capabilities that may impact engineer operations).		
(c) Uses the S2's situation template (SITEMP) and the enemy's capabilities estimate to plot the enemy's engineer effort and its location.		
(d) Coordinates with the S2 and recommends priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and the engineer force needed to augment the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) effort that will confirm or deny the SITEMP.		
(e) Determines the enemy's mobility capabilities and location in its formation. (defense).		
(f) Determines the enemy's use of scatterable mines (SCATMINEs). (defense).		
(g) Determines enemy engineers that support the reconnaissance effort. (defense).		
(h) Determines high value targets (HVTs). (such as bridging assets, breaching assets, and SCATMINE delivery systems). (defense).		
(i) Determines countermobility and survivability capabilities in a transition to a defense. (defense).		
(j) Determines the enemy's tactical and protective obstacle effort, use of SCATMINEs, and survivability and fortification efforts. (offense).		
(3) Conducts friendly mission and mobility and or survivability capabilities.		
(a) Determines engineer forces task-organized to the unit as well as the assets that other members of the combined-arms team have (such as mine plows) to determine the assets that are available.		
(b) Uses standard engineer planning factors or known unit work rates to determine the total engineer capabilities.		
c. Combines the analysis of the terrain, enemy capabilities, and friendly capabilities to form facts and assumptions about the following:		
(1) Forms facts and assumptions that focus on the information required by the unit commander and his battle staff to make decisions.		
(2) Forms facts and assumptions about likely enemy engineer effort and the most probable enemy course of action (ECOA).		
(3) Forms facts and assumptions about potential enemy vulnerabilities.		
(4) Forms facts and assumptions about critical friendly requirements.		
(5) Forms facts and assumptions about the impact these factors have on the mission.		
d. Focuses on the following components of the basic order and engineer annex when the mission is received.		
(1) Focuses on the enemy situation.		
(2) Focuses on the mission paragraph.		
(3) Focuses on the task organization.		
(4) Focuses on the logistics paragraph and the engineer annex.		
(a) Determines type of operation. (offensive or defensive).		
(b) Determines current intelligence picture.		
(c) Determines engineer assets available.		
(d) Determines time available. (estimated).		
(5) Identifies engineer specified, implied, and essential tasks that are mission-critical and have an impact on the overall mission.		
(6) Determines engineer constraints.		
(7) Conducts risk assessment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Issues a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate engineer elements.		
f. Develops the SOEO. (Staff engineer).		
(1) Develops a SOEO that is generic, without a specific engineer force allocation or unit designation.		
(2) Analyzes relative combat power.		
(a) Compares the anticipated enemy engineer capability with the friendly engineer's capability needed to defeat it.		
(b) Determines what will defeat the enemy and what assets are available to ensure success.		
(c) Determines if the friendly engineer's capability is sufficient to overcome the enemy's capability.		
(3) Assesses engineers requirements based on the maneuver COA, situation analysis, mission analysis, and commander's intent.		
(4) Focuses on how engineer efforts integrate into and support the maneuver COA.		
(5) Addresses all phases of the operation, especially where engineer priorities must change to support the maneuver COA.		
(6) Balances available assets against support requirements.		
(a) Reviews his scheme of engineer operations in light of the assets he has available.		
(b) Uses hasty estimate tools, such as belt-planning factors, blade-hour estimates, and breach-lane requirements to assess quickly whether adequate assets are available to support the plan.		
(c) Notes all shortfalls and refines the SOEO, if necessary, by shifting assets to the main effort, shifting priorities with the phases of the operation, recommending that the commander accept risk, or requesting additional assets.		
(7) Prepares a statement describing the SOEO.		
(a) Addresses how engineer efforts support the maneuver COA and integrates the necessary graphics (breach-control measures and obstacle graphics and intents) to show this tentative engineer plan.		
g. War games the engineer plan, as part of the MDMP, to-		
(1) Ensure that the SOEO supports the maneuver plan and is integrated with the other staff elements.		
(2) Identify weaknesses in his plan and make adjustments if necessary.		
(3) Ensure that the unit S2 integrates enemy engineer assets and actions as he plays the enemy force.		
(4) Compares COAs in terms of which SOEO best supports mission accomplishment. (The staff engineer's comparison is only part of the total comparison by the staff.)		
h. Recommends a COA.		
Note: The staff engineer may have to consider a COA that he can least support if, from the other staff perspectives, it is the best selection.		
i. Finalizes the engineer plan and participates in developing the order.		
(1) Determines the command and control (C2) necessary to accomplish the engineer missions		
(2) Refers to his initial mission analysis to ensure that he accounts for all missions.		
(3) Ensures that he assigns all engineer tasks to maneuver and engineer units as part of the subunit instructions.		
(4) Coordinates with the logistics officer (S4) and or support battalion for class IV / V obstacle materials.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Coordinates with other staff members to ensure total integration and mutual support.		
* 4. Staff engineer participates in the OPORD brief to the assembled command group.		
* 5. Staff engineer makes operational reports through the unit operations officer (S3) and provides other required reports through engineer channels as necessary.		
6. BN/TF staff considers ROE and ROI during planning.		
7. BN/TF staff enforces ROE and ROI during execution.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BCT)
HHC INF BN (BCT)

TASK: Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)   (07-1-5126)

(FM 100-34)	(FM 100-34-1)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 71-2)	(FM 7-22 (3-21.21))	

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The digitized Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is required to establish the digital command post (CP). A reconnaissance of the new location has been completed, the site secured, and the CP has been moved. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS). All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes the digital CP IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. CP personnel establish the Warfighter Information Network (WIN), information assurance (IA), and common operating picture (COP). CP personnel complete communication checks and assume control of the operation. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Note: BN/TF are equipped with the following components of ABCS: Maneuver Control System-Light (MCS-Light), All Source Analysis System-Light (ASAS-Light), and Force XXI Battle Command-Brigade and Below (FBCB2). The supporting Fire Support Element (FSE) typically has the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS). Note: Within the MCS is a software application called common tactical picture (CTP), which interfaces with the joint common data base (JCDB), joint mapping tool kit (JMTK), and overlay explorer. CTP uses a combination of visual products that allows the commander and his staff to digitally build and display a clear, accurate, and common view of the battlespace, the common operational picture (COP).		

2. BN/TF executive officer (XO) establishes the main command post (CP).
    a. Configures the main CP in accordance with (IAW) TSOP, available resources, and the mission.
    b. Uses representatives from intelligence (S2), operations (S3), and signal (S6) sections, FSE, engineers, air defense artillery, signal elements, headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) support elements, and representatives of attached units, as required.
    c. Establishes the main CP as the net control station (NCS) for the operations / intelligence (O/I) FM net.
    d. Delegates CP defense to the HHC commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. BN/TF S3 establishes the tactical command post (TAC CP). a. Configures the TAC CP IAW TSOP, available resources, the mission, and commander's guidance. b. Includes representatives from the S2 and S3 sections, FSE, and the special staff as required. c. Establishes the TAC CP as the net control station (NCS) for the higher headquarters command FM net. d. Establishes the TAC CP as the alternate main CP as required. 4. BN/TF logistics and personnel officers (S4 and S1) establish the combat trains command post (CTCP). a. Coordinate location of CTCP with TF S3. b. Configure the CTCP IAW TSOP, available resources, and the mission. c. Includes representatives from the special staff and supporting units as required. d. Establishes the CTCP as the net control station (NCS) for the administrative / logistics (A/L) FM net. e. Prepare the CTCP to serve as the alternate main CP as required. 5. BN/TF establishes CP operations. a. Establishes the warrior information network (WIN). (S6 section) b. Establishes information assurance (IA). (S6 section) c. Establishes the COP. d. Completes all communications checks. e. Posts and updates situation map (SITMAP), conventional and digital, and verifies appropriate overlays are set on the FBCB2 main screen. f. Posts ABCS overlays, as required. g. Directs sections to update personnel on critical events occurring during movement. * 6. Battle captain accomplishes the following tasks. a. Verifies that all functions have been transferred and the CP is prepared to assume control of TF operations. b. Opens operations log and verifies significant events are recorded in the appropriate ABCS files. c. Initiates net call (digital and voice) to higher, subordinate, and adjacent units acknowledging assumption of control. 7. BN/TF complies with rules of engagement (ROE) and or rules of interaction (ROI).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5153.07-IOTE	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying an objective rally point with orders to conduct a raid against the enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. The OPFOR avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtains all required priority intelligence requirements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-5135)

(FM 101-5)   (FM 71-2)   (FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1   2   3   4   5   M   (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T   P   U   (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation at a location and time specified. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff is functioning. There is a requirement to provide liaison to an adjacent, passing, supported, supporting, or higher unit. The unit with whom liaison is to be established may or may not be digitally equipped. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes liaison with other units IAW TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Liaison officers (LNOs) obtain information to meet the commander's critical information requirements (CCIR), and provide the necessary information to the supported unit. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI, mission instructions, higher headquarters, and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF executive officer (XO) or operations officer (S3) designates liaison officers (LNOs) based on commander's guidance and mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		

3. LNOs examine all aspects of unit operation before departing on liaison tour.
    a. Understand the mission and duties as the LNO.
    b. Understand the unit mission, situation, commander's intent, concept of operation, logistics situation, combat power status, and status of critical supplies.
    c. Verify notional overlays and orders created during the military decision-making process (MDMP) are current.
    d. Ensure there is reliable means of digital or voice communication back to the main command post (CP).
        (1) Identify communications equipment requirements based on options available internally or at the receiving unit.
    e. Obtain and understands the commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs).		

4. LNOs coordinate with the headquarters of the receiving unit. a. Report to receiving commander, S3, or, XO and brief the unit situation.		

ARTEP 7-22-MTP

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Establish voice and or digital communications with the receiving unit main CP as required.
Note: If receiving unit is digitized, verify addresses in parent unit and receiving unit command and control (C2) registries are correct.
c. Provide necessary information to appropriate receiving staff section on parent unit situation.
d. Conduct the following:
   (1) Keep abreast of the situation of parent unit and provide updates to receiving unit headquarters.
   (2) Participate in the planning process of the receiving unit.
   (3) Advise receiving unit commander and or staff on how to best employ assets of sending unit.
   (4) Record all critical information (specified and implied tasks, mission essential tasks, constraints and limitations) and passes it to parent unit as soon as possible.
Note: If both units are digitized, ensure notional overlays created during MDMP that portray maneuver graphics and courses of action (COAs) are established in the Joint Common Database (JCDB).
   (5) Obtain enemy situation templates and other intelligence products and transmit to sending unit as soon as possible.
   (6) Conduct adjacent unit coordination as required.
   (7) Maintain a record of significant liaison actions during tour.
   (8) Transmit critical information to parent unit staff as soon as possible or as directed.
 	
5. LNOs transmit information to parent unit staff on return from liaison duties.
a. Brief unit XO, S3, or battle captain on all relevant information received during visit.
b. Submit mission requirements to S3 and request for information (RFI) from the visited headquarters to intelligence officer (S2) as appropriate.
c. Brief all staff sections on detailed information received during visit and transmit information required by higher headquarters in each staff area of responsibility.
d. Provide information on visited unit operations, commander's intent, mission, unit locations, capabilities, and future operations as required.
 	
6. BN/TF XO maintains control of liaison officers during liaison tour.
a. Establishes and maintains liaison and communication with units external to the unit as required.
b. Ensures exchange of information is completed upon arrival at the main CP.
c. Ensures LNOs update the S3 section on their visited unit's status as changes occur.
d. Ensures LNOs maintain communication with parent unit and remain abreast of parent unit activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)   (07-1-5144)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The digitized Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Command posts (CPs) are operational. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS). All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff establishes the common operational picture (COP) in accordance with (IAW) the TSOP, the order, and or higher commander's guidance. BN/TF staff sections establish or re-establish data feeds for friendly, enemy, and other elements the BN/TF is tracking. Staff sections verify that the unit task organization (UTO) is current. Staff sections verify the common tactical picture (CTP) application system configurations are correct for the upcoming operation. Staff sections update, import, and export notional overlays as required.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
Note: BN/TF are equipped with the following components of ABCS: Maneuver Control System-Light (MCS-Light), All Source Analysis System-Light (ASAS-Light), and Force XXI Battle Command-Brigade and Below (FBCB2). The supporting Fire Support Element (FSE) typically has the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS).
Note: Within the MCS is a software application called common tactical picture (CTP), which interfaces with the joint common data base (JCDB), joint mapping tool kit (JMTK), and overlay explorer. CTP uses a combination of visual products that allows the commander and his staff to digitally build and display a clear, accurate, and common view of the battlespace, the COP.
 	
2. Staff sections initialize the common tactical picture (CTP) and plan manager applications on their specific digital system: MCS-Light, ASAS-Light, AFATDS, and FBCB2.
 	
3. Staff sections verify that their database preliminaries set during pre-deployment or pre-displacement planning are still current.
    a. Verify that the UTO is current using FBCB2. (signal [S6] section).
    b. Verify CTP application system configurations are correct for the upcoming operation to include chart tabs, map areas, and filters. (staff sections).
    c. Update notional overlays in the active chart tab for the upcoming operation as required. (staff sections).
    d. Export notional overlays to higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters as required. (staff sections).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Import notional overlays from higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters as required. (staff sections).		

4. Staff sections (re)establish data feeds (platform or unit locations) for friendly, enemy, and other elements the TF is tracking as follows:
Note: Data feeds are displayed IAW filtering procedures in TSOP and or mission specific requirements. Settings for friendly (BLUE) data must be set for the current operation. Live BLUE feed displays all platforms with functioning FBCB2 systems as individual icons. Filter settings declutter platform data to aggregate unit locations (echelon aggregate set by user and or TACSOP).
    a. Establish live blue feed (friendly) using MCS-Light with data provided via FBCB2. (operations [S3] section).
    b. Establish red feed (enemy) using ASAS-Light with data provided by FBCB2 and other intelligence sources. (intelligence [S2] section).
    c. Establish gray feed (other) for other battlefield elements the TF has decided to track (civilians on the battlefield, non-military organizations, and so forth) using ASAS-Light with data provided by FBCB2 and other intelligence sources. (S2 section).
    d. Sets software configuration settings to allow staff sections and elements to view the live feeds. (S3 section or S2 section, depending on designation of tactical operations center [TOC] boot server).
    e. Ensures data feeds are being received at their specific digital system by looking for the presence of blue, red, and gray icons on their display. (staff sections).		

* 5. BN/TF S3 section displays the COP at the command information center IAW TSOP and or mission specifics.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)   (07-1-5153)

(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)	(FM 101-5-2)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 71-2)

ITERATION:	1 2 3 4 5 M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T P U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters   The main command post (CP) is established and operational. A copy of the higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) is available. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI).   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes the information network (IN) IAW the TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF establishes network connectivity via Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) by sending and receiving messages with higher, lower, and adjacent units via voice and digital systems. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders of digital equipped units gain and or maintain understanding using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
2. BN/TF signal (S6) section communications security (COMSEC) account issues all necessary cryptographic material to support the establishment of the TF's voice and data networks. a. Establishes basic system security by assigning passwords, user accounts and levels of access for users.		
3. BN/TF S6 section issues signal operating instructions (SOI).		
4. BN/TF S6 section uses near term digital radio (NTDR) to link TF to upper tactical internet (TI).		
5. BN/TF operations (S3) sergeant supervises the establishment of the command post (CP) WIN. Note: Designated signal support systems specialist(s) (31U) and local area network (LAN) manager (74B) provide technical assistance to CP staff sections to establish connectivity to the WIN.		

6. BN/TF staff (intelligence [S2], operations [S3], logistics [S4], and signal [S6] sections install commercial and tactical voice telephone networks.
    a. Install voice cable lines:
        (1) Run WF-16 Cable to J-1077 junction box to connect digital secure voice terminal (DSVT) and or digital non-secure voice terminal (DNVT) telephones to mobile subscriber equipment (MSE) network.
        (2) S6 section installs commercial telephone lines (if any) to designated locations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Install terminating instruments:
        (1) Connect and affiliate DSVT/DNVT telephones.
        (2) Connect commercial telephones.		

7. BN/TF CP staff sections connect fiber optic and category 5 cable to support the CP LAN.
    a. Establish the CP LANs by connecting vehicles at their respective signal entry panels (SEP) with tactical fiber optic cable assembly (TFOCA) cables IAW the TSOP (where applicable).
    b. Establish the CP LAN by connecting vehicles at their respective signal entry panels (SEP) with category 5 LAN cables IAW the TSOP.
    c. Runs TFOCA cable (equipped with TFOCA II-to-ST connector adaptor) to signal entry panel (SEP) on the MSE small extension node (SEN) to establish interface to the WAN MSE tactical packet network (TPN) a synchronous transfer mode (ATM) network. (CP server vehicle [S3 or S2] crew.)		

8. BN/TF staff sections establish the CP Intercommunication System (ICS) by:
    a. Running a LAN cable from each vehicle Tent Interface Panel (TIP) radio connection to the corresponding S6 vehicle TIP connection.
    b. Running a LAN cable from each vehicle TIP touchscreen access unit (TAU) connection to the corresponding S6 vehicle TIP connection.
    c. Running a LAN cable from the back of their remoted TAUs to the corresponding S6 vehicle TIP connection.		

9. BN/TF S6 initializes the ICS server and configures the server to support CP operations IAW TSOP and current CP task organization.		
10. BN/TF S6 section designates and marks approved antenna setup areas.		
11. Staff sections erect CP antenna systems. SAFETY NOTE: Antennas must be located at least twice their erected height from all power lines, power line poles or towers, or buildings and or structures. All personnel involved in antenna erection must wear appropriate safety equipment (Kevlar, leather gloves and safety goggles). Only antenna erection team members are allowed in the erection area. All guy wires and ropes must be clearly marked.		
12. Erect appropriate antenna system (based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations [METT-TC]) in designated area.		
13. Staff sections establish required combat net radio (CNR) voice and data networks IAW TSOP and SOI. Note: Combat net radio (CNR) includes all frequency modulated (FM) and amplitude modulated (AM) radio systems.		
14. BN/TF selected staff sections (S3 Ops, S3/S2 Plans, TAC, S6 Retrans [if necessary] initialize designated near term data radio [NTDR] IAW TSOP and SOI.)		
15. BN/TF selected staff sections (S3 Operations, S3/S2 Plans, S2, Tactical) establish required Spitfire TACSAT network IAW TSOP and SOI.		
16. BN/TF S6 section establishes network control by initializing and configuring network routers, switches, NTDRs, and tactical operations center (TOC) internet controllers (INCs) utilizing tactical internet manager (TIM) and NTDR management terminal (NMT).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
17. BN/TF staff elements establish ABCS connectivity IAW TSOP by: 　　a. Initializing the primary TOC server. 　　b. Initializing DHCP server. 　　c. Initializing DNS server. 　　d. Initializing secondary TOC server. 　　e. Initializing ABCS work stations.		
18. BN/TF S3 and S6 sections establish the command information center (CIC).		
19. BN/TF S3 and S6 sections establish the Battlefield Video Teleconference (BVTC) system.		
20. Automation section from the BN/TF S6 element establishes a help desk. Note: The help desk provides the focal point for automation and or network support.		
21. BN/TF S6 verifies network connectivity of all BN/TF staff sections to the LAN and or WAN.		
22. Digital users initialize their systems. 　　a. Achieve a common operational picture (COP) using standardized filter settings from Force XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and higher headquarters. 　　　(1) Gives standardized settings to operational control (OPCON) units. Note: The BN/TF commander and S3 define what overlays and map data filters it wants displayed in order to have effective coordination.		
23. Single Channel and Ground Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) users initialize their radios.		
24. All Source Analysis System-Light (ASAS-Light) operators go into their enemy interoperability destination screen and turn embedded battle command (EBC) on in order for EBC to receive the Red correlated picture.		
25. FBCB2 operators must also initiate a unit task organization (UTO) change. Note: The BN/TF S3 should develop or determine UTOs prior to deployment so they can be quickly executed when needed.		
26. BN/TF digital users perform a digital commo check by sending a free text message flow with an operational readiness requirement by the receiver.		
27. BN/TF conducts analog commo checks as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5162)

(FM 100-14)	(FM 100-34)	(FM 100-34-1)
(FM 100-40)	(FM 100-5)	(FM 100-55)
(FM 100-6)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 20-3)	(FM 20-32)
(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 3-100)
(FM 3-19)	(FM 3-34.2)	(FM 3-4)
(FM 34-1)	(FM 34-130)	(FM 34-2)
(FM 34-5)	(FM 34-52)	(FM 34-54)
(FM 34-60)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 44-1)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 71-123)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)	(FM 90-10(HTF))	(FM 90-10-1)
(FM 90-13)	(FM 90-2)	(FM 90-4)
(FM 90-7)		

ITERATION:	1　2　3　4　5　M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T　P　U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The main command post (CP) has been established and is operational. A copy of the higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) is available. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI).   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF executes staff activities IAW the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF staff plans future operations, and executes current operations. The BN/TF staff maintains situational understanding (SU) for the current operation. The BN/TF staff maintains the common operational picture (COP) and/or current situation map (SITMAP) and journals. The BN/TF staff assesses when decision points require action, and determines if adjustments to the tactical plan are needed. The BN/TF staff keeps the commander updated on future operations planning, current operation, and critical information transmitted to and from the BN/TF headquarters. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF battle staff performs liaison activities with adjacent, supporting, or supported units.		
* 3. BN/TF battle staff monitors mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations.		
* 4. BN/TF battle staff plans future operations, maintains SU for the current operation, and manages information going in and out of the headquarters. 　　a. Plans future operations using the military decision-making process (MDMP). 　　b. Maintains SU for the current operation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Monitors current operation using all available assets. (a) Determines progress toward mission accomplishment based on commander's critical information requirements (CCIR), scheme of maneuver decision points (commander's decision support template [DST]), and commander's intent. (b) Assesses vulnerability to nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack if applicable. (c) Assesses when decision points require action and determines if adjustments are needed for the tactical plan. (d) Identifies need for adjustments to executive officer (XO) or commander. (2) Maintains current situation map (SITMAP) and journals. c. Updates (continually) operations estimate. (1) Determines enemy situation. (a) Considers identification of all hostile main force or factional forces in unit area of operations (AO). (b) Considers most probable course of action (COA) for each faction or main threat. (c) Considers vulnerabilities of main force or each faction. (d) Considers changes in threat order of battle. (e) Considers enemy's capability and possible intention to employ NBC weapons and electronic warfare (EW). (f) Considers enemy's capability and possible intention to initiate low intensity combat actions or insurgency-type operations. (2) Determines current friendly situation. (a) Determines disposition. (b) Determines composition. (c) Determines strength. (d) Determines recent and current significant activities. (e) Determines peculiarities and weaknesses. (f) Determines vulnerability to threat NBC attacks. (g) Determines status of friendly base camps and lines of communications (LOCs). (h) Determines identification of host nation (HN) or coalition forces. (i) Determines significant HN or coalition force activities affecting unit battlespace. (3) Integrates status of fire support (both organic and direct support). (4) Integrates status of attached or operational control (OPCON) combat support (CS) elements. (a) Includes engineer. (b) Includes air defense. (c) Includes military intelligence. (d) Includes signal. (e) Includes military police. (f) Includes civil affairs. (5) Maintains liaison with adjacent units. d. Coordinates and or monitors fire support in unit AO. (1) Conducts the targeting process. (2) Monitors unit fire control operations. (uses Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System [AFATDS] if available). (3) Ensures fires are employed within the commander's concept. (4) Continually updates unit targeting plan and fire execution annex. e. Manages information going in and out of the unit headquarters in accordance with (IAW) the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

* 5. BN/TF battle staff keeps commander updated on future operations planning, current operation, and critical information coming in and going out of the unit headquarters.
Note: During mission execution, there will be limited time for a formal decision briefing. Based on the unit TSOP, the battle captain and or XO will conduct the update.
 	
* 6. BN/TF battle staff assess operations.
    a. Monitors continuously the situation and the progress of operations.
    b. Directs adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
    c. Notifies XO or commander when the tactical plan is affected based on changing tactical conditions, CCIR, or attaining decision points.
 	
* 7. BN/TF battle staff operates on a 24-hour basis with shift changes IAW TSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2000	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2000.07-IOTE	Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2009	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-2009.07-IOTE	Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2018	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-2018.07-IOTE	Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2027	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2027.07-IOTE	Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2036	Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2036.07-IOTE	Plan Intelligence, Reconnaissance, and Surveillance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-2054	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-2054.07-IOTE	Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3000	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-3000.07-IOTE	Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009.07-IOTE	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-3009A	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5009	Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5009.07-IOTE	Employ Army Aviation Assets (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5018	Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
07-1-5027	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5027.07-IOTE	Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5054	Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5054.07-IOTE	Conduct Engineer Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5099	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5099.07-IOTE	Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5108	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5108.07-IOTE	Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5135	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5135.07-IOTE	Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5144	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5144.07-IOTE	Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5153	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5153.07-IOTE	Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5198	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5198.07-IOTE	Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5207	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5207.07-IOTE	Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-6009	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6009.07-IOTE	Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-6027	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-6027.07-IOTE	Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-WT07.07-C720	Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion)	
71-1-2324.07-C712	Plan Checkpoints and or Roadblocks (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-5171)
        (FM 71-2)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. Snipers have been given specific missions (target criteria and priority) based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF integrates sniper and BN/TF operations IAW TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander and/or staff brief sniper team(s) on the current situation, purpose of the mission, specific targets, and the desired results. The BN/TF commander and/or staff debriefs sniper team(s) after completion of sniper operations. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff plan the employment of snipers using the factors of METT-TC.
     a. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
     b. Update the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
     c. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.
       (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.
       (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.
     d. Addresses sniper employment during course of action (COA) development.
     e. Assigns specific targets or specific types of targets.
     f. Ensures targets are prioritized.
     g. Determines the best mix of sniper teams.
     h. Ensures proper terrain management with unit sniper assets.
     i. Develops criteria that would allow sniper(s) to select key targets.		

3. BN/TF commander, operations officer (S3), and or intelligence officer (S2) brief sniper(s) on current situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

Note: During mission execution, there will be limited time for a formal briefing. In many cases, based on the TSOP, the S3 will brief and synchronize the actions and missions of the snipers.
    a. Ensure sniper(s) understand the task(s) the commander wants and the purpose of each task.
    b. Ensure sniper(s) understand the commander's priority of targets
    c. Ensure sniper(s) understand the ROE and ROI.
    d. Describe the effects or results the commander expects.
 	
  4. BN/TF controls sniper teams from a central location.
 	
  5. BN/TF S2 debriefs snipers upon completion of their mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities and or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5180)
        (FM 71-2)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:		T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to move to a tactical assembly area (AA) and prepare for future operations at a time specified. The BN/TF is given a general area in which to select the exact location of its AA. Resupply and maintenance support are available. Enemy contact is likely. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF occupies the tactical AA in accordance with IAW TSOP, the order, and or commander's guidance no later than (NLT) the specified time. BN/TF elements occupy positions without halting or blocking the route of march, establish local security, maintain appropriate force protection measures, and prepares to conduct future operations. The BN/TF completes combat preparations as specified in the OPORD and IAW the commander's intent. The BN/TF maintains the appropriate readiness condition (REDCON) level based on the operational environment, and complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).
    a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order.
    b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.
        (1) Select tentative assembly area (AA) positions unit headquarters and subordinate elements.
    c. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process.
        (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.
        (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.
        (3) Select AA positions for unit headquarters and subordinate elements.
            (a) Ensure the areas provide concealment from air and ground observation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Ensure the areas provide sufficient space for dispersion of subunits and their vehicles consistent with the enemy and friendly tactical situation.		
(c) Ensure the areas provide suitable entrances, exits, and internal routes.		
(d) Ensure the areas are suitable for defense and security.		
(e) Ensure the areas provide cover from direct fire.		
(f) Ensure the areas provide terrain masking of electromagnetic signal signature.		
(g) Ensure the areas provide for unit trains, maintenance operations, and command and control (C2) facilities.		
(h) Ensure the areas provide terrain allowing the observation of ground and air avenues of approach into the AA.		
(i) Ensure the areas provide good drainage and soil conditions that support unit vehicle movement.		
d. Update intelligence products and information.		
(1) Disseminate intelligence data to subordinate elements to assist in planning.		
e. Designate areas for each subordinate element.		
f. Designate a quartering party.		
(1) Identify quartering party leader.		
(2) Develop quartering party instructions.		
(3) Include enough personnel to select and mark routes, to guide the main body into positions, and to secure the area.		
g. Specify an order of march that allows for rapid occupation.		
h. Develop a plan that facilitates defense.		
i. Designate priority of work and provide for maintenance and resupply.		
j. Plan to occupy the assembly area under conditions of limited visibility if possible.		
k. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).		
(1) Plan fire support.		
(a) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.		
(b) Plan obscuration fires as required.		
(c) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary.		
(d) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort.		
(e) Plan fires to support the quartering party.		
(f) Plan fires in support of the approach to the AA.		
(g) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves.		
(h) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide.		
(2) Plan engineer support. (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.)		
(a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed.		
(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan.		
(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis.		
(e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation.		
(f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required.		
(g) Plan engineer support to the quartering party.		
(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.		
(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan.		
(b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.		
(c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit.		
(d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites.		
(4) Plan air defense (AD) support. (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).		
(a) Ensure adequate AD of the quartering party and unit main body during movement to and actions on the AA.		
(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during movements through restrictive terrain.		
(c) Provide current and projected future weapons control status (WCS) and air defense warning (ADW).		
(5) Plan CSS.		
(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.		
(b) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort. (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)		
(c) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.		
(d) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver.		
(e) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets.		
(f) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points if applicable.		
l. Conduct risk management.		
3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.		
4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.		
a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		
b. Conducts extensive ISR.		
c. Conducts precombat checks.		
d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.		
e. Provides current and projected future weapons control status (WCS) and air defense warning (ADW).		
f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

5. BN/TF executes the plan.
   a. Dispatches quartering party to the AA.
     (1) Moves under the supervision of the designated leader.
     (2) Ensures the area is clear of the enemy.
     (3) Establishes security.
     (4) Reconnoiters the area and selects sites that support the occupation of the AA and the execution of the AA mission.
     (5) Marks subordinate element sectors.
     (6) Checks for, marks, or removes enemy mines and enemy or natural obstacles.
     (7) Checks for nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination.
     (8) Selects a location for the unit mortars.
     (9) Selects and marks a location for the unit command posts (CP).
     (10) Selects and marks a unit trains location.
     (11) Lays communications wire as needed.
     (12) Guides march elements into the assembly area as they clear the release point.
   b. Moves unit main body to and occupies the AA.
     (1) Moves the main body into position without halting or blocking routes by the time specified in the order.
     (2) Maintains noise, light, and camouflage discipline and dispersion.
     (3) Organizes the AA IAW the factors of METT-TC.
     (4) Controls routes into and out of the assembly area.
     (5) Occupies the AA during limited visibility.
     (6) Positions combat service (CS) elements with the subordinate elements they will support.
     (7) Positions the unit CP and the trains elements centrally for convenience.
     (8) Positions the mortars based on employment distances.
   c. Performs AA operations IAW established priority of work and TSOP.
     (1) Maintains security.
       (a) Employs passive and active operations security (OPSEC) measures to deny the enemy any indications of friendly plans such as intentions, force composition, or unit identity and locations.
       (b) Detects all enemy aircraft over-flying the AA.
     (2) Maintains concealment and maximum dispersion.
     (3) Uses time efficiently to prepare for the next operation.
       (a) Improves readiness rates to ensure the greatest force requirements are met IAW the OPORD and the commander's intent.
       (b) Prepares and disseminates unit OPORDs and performs briefbacks, rehearsals, and leaders' reconnaissance.
       (c) Performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all systems.
   d. Defends the AA ensuring enemy activity does not impede operations.
 	
* 6. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.
   a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.
   b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.
 	
7. BN/TF departs the AA, on order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Ensures all equipment and supplies are moved at the time designated by the OPORD. b. Ensures subordinate elements recover all emplaced mines and obstacles unless directed by higher headquarters to do otherwise. c. Conducts an intelligence sweep of the area ensuring no equipment or intelligence material is left in the AA. d. Ensures signs of the unit's presence in the assembly area are removed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5090	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5090.07-IOTE	Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to enemy's location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-5189)
<u>(FM 101-5)</u>   (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION:			1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:				T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD), warning order (WARNO), or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation at a specified location and time. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF plans operations utilizing the military decision-making process (MDMP) IAW appropriate field manuals,TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. BN/TF S3 section issues a WARNO to the staff alerting them of a pending mission planning requirement. The BN/TF staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools. The BN/TF commander and staff complete a quick initial assessment determining time available from mission receipt to mission execution. The BN/TF commander issues planning guidance to the staff. The BN/TF commander and staff conduct mission analysis. The BN/TF commander approves the restated mission. The BN/TF issues WARNOs as necessary during the planning process. The BN/TF staff develops courses of action (COAs) for analysis and comparison. The BN/TF staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely enemy course of action (ECOA) and most dangerous ECOA. The BN/TF staff briefs the selected COA. The BN/TF develops a plan that supports the higher commander's intent. The BN/TF plan complies with ROE and ROI

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Each staff officer addresses planning from his own functional area. The personnel officer (S1), for example, would concern himself with personnel-related issues that could affect the outcome of the mission.		
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). Note: The BN/TF executive officer (XO) is the timekeeper for the MDMP. He coordinates and synchronizes actives of all staff officers.		
* 3. BN/TF commander identifies what is to be displayed as the common operational picture (COP).		
4. BN/TF staff ensure that the COP is updated and maintained during the MDMP.		
5. BN/TF operations (S3) section issues a WARNO to staff alerting them of pending planning process.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

6. BN/TF XO coordinates staff actions required to ensure staff estimates are current and staff elements have necessary mission analysis tools.
    a. Ensures shared network databases are current.
    b. Identifies information gaps that may require the use of reach-back capabilities.		

7. BN/TF staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools.
    a. Ensures the COP is created and or maintained.
    b. Gathers higher headquarters plan or orders with graphics.
    c. Gathers digital or paper maps of area of operations (AO).
    d. Gathers own and higher headquarters' TSOP.
    e. Gathers appropriate field manuals and other references.
    f. Gathers existing staff estimates.
Note: Estimates are conducted continuously to provide important inputs for the MDMP. The commander and each staff section make estimates. Estimates are revised when important new information is received or when the situation changes significantly.
    g. Obtains and or reviews information available through shared network databases or through reach-back.		

* 8. BN/TF commander and staff complete quick initial assessment.
    a. Determine time available from mission receipt to mission execution.
Note: The most critical product of the assessment is an initial allocation of available time. As a general rule, the commander allocates a minimum of two-thirds of available time for subordinate units to conduct their planning and preparation.
    b. Determine time needed to plan, prepare for, and execute mission for own and subordinate units.
    c. Determine intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
Note: IPB is an ongoing process, proceeding simultaneously with other steps in the MDMP. Changes are dictated by the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) and MDMP requirements.
    d. Determine staff estimates and or information already available to assist planning.
    e. Determine time required to position critical elements (to include command and control (C2) nodes) for the upcoming operation.
    f. Determine how to incorporate collaborative planning, and if used, who must collaborate, when, and via what medium.
    g. Determine staff's experience, cohesiveness, and level of rest or stress.		

* 9. BN/TF commander determines whether time permits conduct of a full or an abbreviated (time-constrained environment) MDMP.		

*10. BN/TF commander issues his initial guidance.
    a. Includes how to abbreviate MDMP if necessary.
    b. Includes initial time allocation.
    c. Includes liaison officers to dispatch.
    d. Includes time to begin initial reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) or collection planning to answer initial priority intelligence requirements (PIR) or to fill information voids that allow the commander to visualize.
    e. Includes possible decision points.
    f. Includes authorized movement.
    g. Includes additional tasks he wants the staff to accomplish.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*11. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process
    a. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process.
    b. Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent.		

12. BN/TF S3 section issues the WARNO 1 to subordinate and supporting units.
    a. Includes type of operation.
    b. Includes general location of operation.
    c. Includes initial time line.
    d. Includes any collaborative planning sessions directed by the commander.
    e. Includes any movement or ISR to initiate.		

13. BN/TF XO coordinates dispatch of liaison personnel as directed.		

*14. BN/TF commander and staff conduct mission analysis. (Each staff officer analyzes the mission and order for his area of expertise and or responsibility).
    a. Analyze the higher headquarters' order.
        (1) Determine commanders' intent two levels up.
        (2) Determine mission.
        (3) Determine tasks.
        (4) Determine constraints.
        (5) Determine risks.
        (6) Determine available assets.
        (7) Determine higher headquarters' AO.
        (8) Determine concept of the operation including deception plan.
        (9) Determine timeliness for mission execution.
        (10) Determine missions of adjacent units (including front and rear) and their relation to higher headquarters plan.
        (11) Determine assigned unit AO.
Note: If confused by the higher headquarters' order or guidance, the staff must seek clarification immediately.
    b. Conduct initial intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
Note: The IPB is the commander's and each staff officer's responsibility.
    c. Assist the intelligence (S2) section in developing the situation template (SITEMP) within their specific area of expertise/responsibility.
    d. Determine specified, implied, and essential task for their area of expertise/responsibility.
    e. Review available assets for their area of expertise and or responsibility.
        (1) Examine additions to and deletions from current task organization, support relationships, and status to determine additional resources needed for mission success (commander and staff).
    f. Determine constraints that restrict freedom of action in their area of expertise and or responsibility.
    g. Identify critical facts and assumptions in their area of expertise and or responsibility.
        (1) List all appropriate assumptions received from higher headquarters.
        (2) State expected conditions over which the commander has no control but which are relevant to the plan.
        (3) List conditions that would invalidate the plan or its concept of operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

h. Conduct risk assessment for their area of expertise and or responsibility. (The unit commander makes an initial assessment of where he might take tactical risks.)
    (1) Identify non-tactical risk hazards and make an initial assessment of the risk level for each hazard.
 i. Determine information requirements (IR) and initial commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) for each area of expertise and or responsibility. (The commander alone decides what information is critical. However, staff nominates IR to become CCIR).
 j. Determine the initial ISR plan based on the initial IPB, the CCIR , and the commander's initial guidance for ISR.
    (1) Turn the R&S plan into an initial detailed, synchronized reconnaissance annex and surveillance order to the reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition (RSTA) squadron (or other intelligence, surveillance, reconnaissance [ISR] assets) to launch R&S assets as soon as possible so they can begin the collection effort (S3 section).
 Note: As more information becomes available, it is incorporated into a complete reconnaissance annex for the OPORD.
    (2) Publish a R&S order with the minimum information (S3 section).
      (a) Include the AO for the RSTA squadron and other R&S assets.
      (b) Include a mission statement.
      (c) Include task organization.
      (d) Include the reconnaissance objective.
      (e) Include PIR and IR to be answered.
      (f) Include line of departure (LD) or line of contact (LC).
      (g) Include initial named areas of interest (NAIs)
      (h) Include routes to AO and passage of lines instructions.
      (i) Include fire support coordinating measures and airspace control measures.
      (j) Include communications and logistics support.
      (k) Include casualty evacuation.
 k. Plan use of available time.
    (1) Refine their initial plan for the use of available time.
    (2) Compare the time needed to accomplish essential tasks to the higher headquarters' time line to ensure mission accomplishment is possible in the allotted time.
    (3) Compare the time line to the enemy time line developed during the IPB to determine windows of opportunity for exploitation or times when the unit will be at risk from enemy activity.
    (4) Specify when and where they will conduct briefings that result from planning process if they will use collaborative planning sessions (if so, when and on what network), and when, where, and in what form they will conduct rehearsals.
    (5) Use liaison officers (LNOs) to stay abreast of changes at the unit.
 l. Write the restated mission.
    (1) Prepares restated mission for the unit based on mission analysis (XO or S3).
      (a) Addresses who, what (tasks), when, where, how, and why.
 m. Conduct a mission analysis briefing.
 Note: The commander may forego the briefing if he obtains the mission analysis information from a shared database.
    (1) Briefs the commander on its mission analysis (time permitting).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Includes mission and commander's intent of the headquarters two levels up.		
(b) Includes mission, commander's intent, concept of the operation, and deception plan or objective of the headquarters one level up.		
(c) Includes review of unit commander's initial guidance.		
(d) Includes initial IPB products.		
(e) Includes specified, implied, and essential task		
(f) Includes constraints on the operation.		
(g) Includes forces available.		
(h) Includes risk assessments.		
(i) Includes recommended IR for incorporation into the CCIR.		
(j) Includes recommended time lines.		
(k) Includes recommended restated mission.		
(l) Includes recommended collaborative planning sessions.		

*15. BN/TF commander approves restated mission.

*16. BN/TF commander develops his initial intent. (During mission analysis, the commander begins his visualization and develops his initial intent for the operation.)
    a. Provides intent to staff.
        (1) Issues intent statement that is clear and concise.
        (2) Provides link between the mission and the concept of operations.
        (3) Includes key tasks that must be performed or conditions that must be met to accomplish the mission.
        (4) Does not include the "method" by which the force will get from its current state to the end state.
        (5) Does not include "acceptable risk".
    b. Prepares (personally) his intent statement and, when possible, delivers it face-to-face.

*17. BN/TF commander issues the commander's guidance.
    a. Provides the staff with enough additional guidance (preliminary decisions) to focus staff activities in planning.
    b. Places guidance on a shared database to ensure a common base of planning effort within the unit.
    c. Focuses on essential tasks.
    d. Emphasizes in broad terms when, where, and how he intends to mass his combat power.
    e. Includes priorities for all combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements and how he envisions their support of his concept.
    f. Includes specific COA to consider, both friendly and threat, and priority for addressing them.
    g. Includes initial CCIR.
    h. Includes anticipated decision points.
    i. Includes risk guidance.
    j. Includes military deception guidance.
    k. Includes fire and effects guidance.
    l. Includes guidance for nonlethal efforts.
    m. Includes targeting guidance.
    n. Includes mobility and countermobility guidance.
    o. Includes security measures to be implemented.
    p. Includes time plan.
    q. Includes type of order to issue.
    r. Includes any collaborative planning sessions to be conducted.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

s. Includes movement to initiate (including movement of command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance [C4ISR] information systems [INFOSYS] nodes).
     t. Includes type of rehearsal to conduct.
     u. Includes additional specific priorities for CS and CSS.
     v. Includes any other information the commander wants the staff to consider.
 	
 18. BN/TF S3 section issues a WARNO 2 to subordinate and supporting elements immediately after the unit commander provides his guidance.
     a. Contains R&S to be initiated by RSTA squadron and other R&S assets.
     b. Contains approved restated mission statement.
     c. Contains unit commander's intent.
     d. Contains unit's AO (for example, sketch, overlay, or some other description).
     e. Contains CCIR.
     f. Contains risk guidance.
     g. Contains security measures.
     h. Contains military deception guidance.
     i. Contains mobility and countermobility guidance.
     j. Contains specific priorities.
     k. Contains time plan.
     l. Contains guidance on collaborative events and rehearsals.
     m. Contains task organization changes from the higher headquarters.
     n. Contains attachments and or detachments.
 	
 *19. BN/TF commander and staff perform the following functions during the rest of the decision-making process:
     a. Review periodically all available facts and assumptions for new or changed information.
     b. Assess impact of changes on the plan.
     c. Make necessary adjustments.
 	
 20. BN/TF staff, upon receipt of commander's guidance, develops COAs for analysis and comparison.
     a. Ensures COAs meet the following criteria.
        (1) Ensures COAs are suitable.
        (2) Ensures COAs are feasible.
        (3) Ensures COAs are acceptable.
        (4) Ensures COAs are distinguishable.
        (5) Ensures COAs are complete.
     b. Continues the risk management process.
     c. Uses the following guidelines to develop COAs.
        (1) Analyzes relative combat power.
        (2) Generates options.
        (3) Arrays initial forces.
        (4) Develops the scheme of maneuver.
        (5) Assigns headquarters.
        (6) Prepares COA statements and sketches.
     d. Briefs COAs to the unit commander for review (optional).
 	
 21. BN/TF staff conducts course of action analysis (war-gaming) for each COA.
     a. Uses the following rules for war-gaming:
        (1) Remains objective. (War-gamers do not defend a COA just because they developed it.)
        (2) Records (accurately) advantages and disadvantages for each COA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Assesses (continually) the feasibility, acceptability, and suitability of the COA.		
(4) Avoids drawing premature conclusions.		
(5) Avoids comparing one COA with another during war gaming.		
b. Uses the following war-gaming steps.		
(1) Gathers tools.		
(2) Lists all friendly forces.		
(3) Lists assumptions.		
(4) Lists known critical events and decision points.		
(5) Determines evaluation criteria.		
(6) Selects the war-gaming method.		
(7) Selects a method to record and display results.		
(8) Conduct the war-game and assesses the results.		
c. Understands war-gaming responsibilities.		
(1) Coordinates actions of staff (XO).		
(2) Analyzes COAs to determine potential personnel battle losses and determine how to provide personnel support during the operation (S1). The S1 may represent the battalion surgeon and chaplain IAW TSOP.		
(3) Develops critical enemy decision points in relation to the friendly course of action (S2).		
(4) Captures the results of enemy action and counteraction and the corresponding friendly and enemy strengths and vulnerabilities (S2).		
(5) Role-plays the enemy commander (S2).		
(6) Identifies information requirements for friendly forces (S2).		
(7) Refines NAIs, TAIs, and the high-value targets (HVTs) (S2).		
(8) Refines the event template, situation template, and event matrix (S2).		
(9) Participates in the targeting conference and identifies a high payoff targets (HPTs) list based on the IPB (S2).		
(10) Selects the technique and methods to be used for war gaming (S3).		
(11) Role-plays the friendly commander during the war-gaming if the unit commander is unavailable (S3).		
(12) Ensures the war-game covers every operational aspect of the mission (S3).		
(13) Records each event's strengths and weaknesses and annotates the rationale (S3).		
(14) Analyzes each COA to assess its sustainability (logistics officer [S4]).		
(15) Identifies potential shortfalls and recommends actions to eliminate or reduce their effect on the COA (S4).		
(16) Ensures that available movement times and assets will support the COA (S4).		
(17) Analyzes each course of action for effective integration of the information systems (signal officer [S6]).		
(18) Determines how the information management (IM) plan will effect each course of action and recommends to the XO how to modify (if necessary) the IM plan to best support each course of action (S6).		
(19) Analyzes the COA in their own area of expertise including how they can best support the mission (special staff officers).		
d. Determines the force requirements and the risks.		
e. Completes the war-gaming process.		
22. BN/TF staff conducts an (internal) war-game briefing. (This briefing is OPTIONAL and is normally given to the XO.)		
23. BN/TF staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely ECOA and most dangerous ECOA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Analyzes and evaluates advantages and disadvantages of each COA. (Each staff officer evaluates the COA from his perspective and presents findings for others' consideration.)
Note: Each staff officer may use his own matrix, however, all must use the same evaluation criteria. The XO normally determines the weight of each evaluation criterion.
    b. Identifies the preferred COA and makes recommendation. (The XO decides which COA to recommend at the commander's decision briefing if the staff cannot reach a mutual recommendation.)
Note: If the unit commander has directed one course of action, the staff modifies this step (combining it with course of action analysis) to determine the advantages and disadvantages of the directed or refined course of action.
 	
 24. BN/TF S3 presents the decision briefing.
    a. Includes as a minimum.
        (1) Includes intent of the higher headquarters (higher and next higher commanders).
        (2) Includes mission.
        (3) Includes status of own forces.
        (4) Includes an updated IPB.
        (5) Includes assumptions used in planning.
        (6) Includes courses of action considered.
        (7) Includes advantages and disadvantages (including risk) of each COA, with a decision matrix or table showing course of action comparison.
        (8) Includes recommended COA.
 	
*25. BN/TF commander approves a COA.
    a. Decides on a COA he believes to be most advantageous.
        (1) Refines intent statement and CCIR, if required.
        (2) Issues additional guidance if required.
            (a) Issues additional guidance for priorities for CS or CSS activities (particularly for resources he needs to preserve his freedom of action and ensure continuous service support).
            (b) Issues additional guidance for orders preparation.
            (c) Issues additional guidance for rehearsal preparation.
            (d) Issues additional guidance for preparation for mission execution.
    b. Decides what level of residual risk he will accept to accomplish mission.
 	
 26. BN/TF S3 section issues WARNO with essential information so subordinate elements can refine their plans.
 	
 27. BN/TF staff refines the COA based on the commander's decision and final guidance.
 	
 28. BN/TF staff prepares the order or plan by turning it into a clear, concise concept of operations, a scheme of maneuver, and the required fire support.
 	
*29. BN/TF commander reviews and approves orders before the staff reproduces and briefs them.
 	
 30. BN/TF staff reproduces, briefs, and distributes order.
Note: The MDMP can be conducted in a time-constrained environment. However, before a unit can conduct decision making in a time-constrained environment, it must master the steps in the full MDMP. (See FM 6-0 (101-5) for information on conducting the MDMP in a time-constrained environment.)
 	
 31. BN/TF begins preparing for operations and conducts a rehearsal.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5198)
<u>(FM 101-5)</u>   (FM 100-5)   (FM 100-55)
(FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a specified location and time. The commander and staff have completed the planning phase for the mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF prepares for operations IAW the TSOP, the order, appropriate field manual, and/or higher commander's guidance. BN/TF leaders refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. BN/TF leaders conduct pre-combat checks. BN/TF leaders supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparation efforts are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent. The BN/TF conducts rehearsals during daylight and periods of limited visibility, if possible. BN/TF leaders position forces IAW the order. BN/TF leaders reinforce ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		

* 2. BN/TF commander and staff prepare for operations.
 a. Conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.
 b. Conduct backbriefs.
   (1) Allow the commander to identify problems with the concept of operations (unit commander's or subordinates').
   (2) Learn how subordinates intend to accomplish their mission.
 c. Update staff estimates when new information is received.
 d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.
 e. Ensure support plans are integrated with the tactical plan at each level.
 f. Consider specific branches of the current plan or contingency planning of future (sequel) operations.
 g. Look for changes in conditions that will result in new or significantly altered missions and thus cause the planning process to start again.
 h. Direct or recommend actions to deal with forecasted changes.
 i. Conduct extensive reconnaissance.
 j. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Ensure subordinates conduct equipment precombat checks and or preventative maintenance checks and services (PMCS). l. Coordinate vertically and horizontally to exchange information and to synchronize actions that may impact on each staff officer's functional area. m. Supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. n. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility, if possible, based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). o. Position forces IAW the plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-1-5000	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5000.07-IOTE	Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP
07-1-5189	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-MTP
		ARTEP 7-20-MTP
		ARTEP 7-22-MTP
07-1-5189.07-IOTE	Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)	ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT:

TASK: Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)   (07-1-5207)

(FM 100-34)	(FM 100-34-1)	(FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5-2)	(FM 20-3)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 71-123)	(FM 71-2)
(FM 7-20)		

ITERATION:		1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U			(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry Battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation that requires the relocation of the command post (CP). The CP is operational. The jump element has deployed to the new CP location, established operations, and is preparing to assume operational control of the unit. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.   Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BN/TF transfers command and control (C2) functions during displacement of the CP IAW TSOP, the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. C2 of the current operations is transferred between CPs without a break in continuity or efficiency. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BN/TF leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.		
* 2. Battle captain of jump element or alternate CP notifies displacing element that he is prepared to assume control of unit operations.		
* 3. Battle captain of the displacing element CP notifies the jump element or alternate CP of the anticipated time of transfer.		

4. Staff sections of the displacing element CP and jump element or alternate CP transfer information and functions of the current operation.
 a. Provide the following information. (displacing element CP staff sections).
     (1) Provide friendly unit status, location, and activity information.
     (2) Provide enemy location and activity information.
     (3) Provide combat service support (CSS) status.
     (4) Provide data distribution configuration scheme.
     (5) Provide plans so jump element or alternate CP can execute branches and sequels.
 b. Verify the following information. (jump element or alternate CP staff sections).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(1) Verify tactical operations center (TOC) server and Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS) databases have been synchronized.
 (2) Verify both element CPs have the same operational picture and understand the situation and future actions to be executed.
 (3) Verify communications have been established with higher, subordinate, and adjacent headquarters as required.
 (4) Verify net control station (NCS) functions for all CP nets have been assumed.
 	
 * 5. Battle captain of jump element or alternate CP performs the following tasks.
     a. Verifies that all functions have been transferred and jump element or alternate CP is prepared to assume control of the unit.
     b. Initiates net call (digital and voice) to higher, subordinate, and adjacent units acknowledging assumption of control.
 Note. Under unusual or emergency conditions (jump element movement is not feasible or command and control (C2) is lost), CP mission is transferred to alternate CP IAW TSOP.
 	
 6. BN/TF CTCP (S1 and S4 section) monitors transfer of C2.
     a. Prepares to, on order, assume control of the current operation in accordance with the TSOP when the main CP is unable to C2 the TF.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying an objective rally point with orders to conduct a raid against the enemy elements. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. The OPFOR avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtains all required priority intelligence requirements.Note: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. **General**. An external evaluation is conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its missions. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external evaluation. Using units may modify this evaluation, based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) or other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander or leader. Selected training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in Chapter 5 are used for evaluation that involves the total unit and employs a realistic OPFOR and the use of multiple integrated laser engagement system (MILES). At the end of the evaluation, the unit and evaluating commander or leader can identify the strengths and weaknesses of the evaluated unit. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. **Preparing the Evaluation**. The evaluating unit commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit's capabilities.

   a. *Preparing the Evaluation Instrument*. The sample evaluation scenario in Table 6-1 contains the tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Selective tailoring is required, because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation.

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
1	Conduct preevaluation activities (for example, install, align, and troubleshoot MILES equipment; conduct inspections, draw equipment and ammunition).	Before start time		
2	Conduct advance party activities	1 hr.	Day 1	0800
3	Move to and Occupy Assembly Area	2 hr.		0900
4	Receive OPORD	15 min.		1115
5	Plan Operations using the TLPs	2 hr.		1130
6	Prepare for Operations	30 min.		1330
7	Conduct a Rehearsal	2 hr.		1400
8	Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit	3 hr.		1600
9	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance	6 hr.		1900
10	Intermediate After-action Review (AAR)	1 hr.	Day 2	0130
11	Cross a Water Obstacle	2 hr.		0800
12	Conduct a Link-up	2 hr.		1000
13	Conduct a Movement to Contact	10 hr.		1200
14	Conduct Intermediate AAR	1 hr.		2200
15	Depart field location (Adinistrative move)		Day 3	0800
16	Conduct Final AAR	2 hr.		1300
	Total Time: 34 hr, 45 min			
Times shown are for demonstration purposes only and should not be used for planning.				

Table 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario.

(1) Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element by using Chapter 2. Record the selected missions in the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW), Figure 6-1.

No.	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Unit Overall Rating & Remarks
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

UNIT: _____ DATE: _____

* If more space is required for remarks, use the back of this form.

Figure 6-1. Example unit proficiency work sheet.

(2) List each mission on a Task Summary Sheet, Figure 6-2.

```
                    TASK SUMMARY SHEET
Mission:
Task Title                  T&EO          Evaluation
                            Number       Go  | No Go
```

Figure 6-2. Example task summary sheet.

Observer/Controller's Signature:_____

Note: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. Observer/Controller's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

        (3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the Task Summary Sheets that are used for recording the results of the evaluation.
        (4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations (Table 6-1). Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in-process after-action reviews (AARs).

    b. *Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources.* Adequate training ammunition, equipment and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experiences with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters will prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS			
Ammunition		**Quantity**	
5.56-mm (Blank)		150 Rounds for Each Rifleman	
5.56-mm (Blank)		400 M249 Machine Guns	
7.62-mm (Blank)		400 M240B Machine Guns	
Hand Grenade (Practice)		2 for Each Rifleman	
Hand Grenade Fuse (Practice)		2 for Each Rifleman	
Other Items		**Quantity**	
Batteries--BA 200 (6-volt)		36 Each	
Batteries--BA 3090 (9-volt)		1,020 Each	
MILES Equipment	**Platoon**	**Evaluators**	**Opposing Force**
M4 MILES Kit	24		6
M240B MG MILES Adaptor	2		1
M249 Machine Gun	6		1
Controller Gun		4	
Small-arms Alignment Fixture		1	
Javelin	3		1
This is an example only and is not intended to reflect all or any of the MILES equipment required by a unit to conduct an exercise.			

Table 6-2. Example consolidated support requirements.

c. *Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site*. Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements form the basis for site selection. For this evaluation an area of _____meters X _____ meters was selected. The OPFOR is positioned according to enemy doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area that is required to support the evaluation.

d. *Planning Indirect Fire Simulation*. Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.
(1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.
(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters that will simulate the tactical fire direction center (FDC). The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the observers and or controllers who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the observer and or controller may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. FM 7-0 (25-100) and FM 7-1 (25-101) provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-3. **Selecting and Training Observers and or Controllers**.

a. Evaluators must be highly qualified to enhance the training experience for the evaluated unit by providing valid, credible observations. The evaluator should be equal or senior in rank to the leader being evaluated. Ideally, the evaluator should have held the position himself, as it lends credibility to his role.
(1) Selected observers and or controllers should as a minimum--
- Be familiar with the evaluated organization's mission essential task list (METL).
- Be tactically and technically proficient in the tasks evaluated.
- Know the evaluation standards.

- Follow the tactical and field tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) for the organization being evaluated.
- Apply relevant information about the evaluated unit, such as wartime missions, personnel turbulence, leader fill, and equipment status.
- Be trained and rehearsed.
- Know the terrain. (Conduct a reconnaissance when possible.)
- Know OPFOR training objective.

c. Observer and or controller standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas.

(1) **Evaluation Design**. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. Observer and or controller must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

(2) **MILES**. Each observer and or controller, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

(3) **Evaluation Control System**. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

(a) Rules of engagement (ROE).
(b) Observer and or controller duties and responsibilities.
(c) Communication systems.
(d) Evaluation data collection plan.

d. A recorder or recorders should be designated by the evaluation control headquarters to receive "kill" information or results and time data from the observers and or controllers.

6-4. **Documentation**.

a. The evaluating headquarters develops the data recording instruments for the observers and or controllers. The Unit Data Sheet (Figure 6-3) documents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet (Figure 6-4) documents weather information in order to compare missions under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report (Figure 6-5) documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. UNIT DESIGNATION:				DATE:		
2. UNIT LEADERS: (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
Battalion Commander	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
Executive Officer	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
S3	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
Command Sergeant Major	CSM	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
Company A Commander	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
Company A First Sergeant	1SG	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
Company B Commander	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
Company B First Sergeant	1SG	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	> 19
And so on.						
3. UNIT STRENGTH (EXCLUDING LEADERS):						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (MAJOR ITEMS):						
5. COMMENTS:						
OBSERVER/CONTROLLER'S SIGNATURE: _____						

Figure 6-3. Example unit data sheet.

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET

EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:

DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:

DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:

1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)

Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog

Other:

Temperature:

2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)

Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow	

Other:

3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)

Day	Night	

Moon Phase:	1/4	1/2	3/4	Full	

Average Range of Visibility Due to Light:

4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description)

Flat	Rolling	Mountains	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Arctic

Other:

Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:

Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:

5. REMARKS:

Figure 6-4. Example environmental data sheet.

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title or Task Number	Date/Time of Enemy Contact	Friendly KIA/WIA	Enemy KIA/WIA	Friendly Vehicles Destroyed	Enemy Vehicles Destroyed
COMMENTS:					

Figure 6-5. Example personnel and equipment loss report.

b.   The senior observer and or controller has the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on his findings as well as input from subordinate observers and or controllers. Subordinate observers and or controllers use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from Chapter 5 and Task Summary Sheets) to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior observer and or controller compile the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the subordinate observers and or controllers may be addressed by the senior observer and or controller in the comments portion of the unit proficiency worksheet (UPW).

6-5. **Selecting and Training OPFOR**. The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent that realistically resembles the enemy in strength, weapons, and skill.

a. *Selection.* Any qualified Skill Level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, the OPFOR should be a small, cohesive unit under the control of its leader or commander.

b. *Training.* The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:
 (1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.
 (2) Rules of engagement (ROE).
 (3) Enemy small unit tactics.
 (4) Selected training scenarios.
 (5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.
 (6) Safety procedures.

c. *OPFOR Strength.*
 (1) **Offense.** Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. The OPFOR must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.
 (2) **Defense.** The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one ratio of superiority because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. It must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan its own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establishes its plan, it must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-6. **Conducting the Evaluation**. Evaluations are divided into three distinct areas. Each area requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.

a. *Pre-Evaluation.*
 (1) The senior observer and or controller and all other observers and or controllers must recon the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's area of operation.
 (2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario.
 (3) Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions as required.
 (4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.
 (5) In this evaluation scenario, the unit is issued a movement order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. The observers and or controllers should make an equipment functions check after the unit occupies the assembly area and after the unit leaders have issued their instructions.

b. *Evaluation.*
 (1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD or FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior observer and or controller for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense; instead, it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior observer and or controller has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All other observers and or controllers do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the unit's performance except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. Observers and or controllers are neutral throughout the evaluation.
 (2) Once the senior observer and or controller issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the events and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begin with a FRAGO.

(3) The senior observer and or controller terminates a part when the unit has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or so much damage that the part cannot be completed. The observer and or controller must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the Task Summary Sheet and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, "conducting sustainment operations" follows the completion of each event or action. During this period, the senior observer and or controller will direct the unit to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, observer and or controller must perform the following actions:

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior observer and or controller directs the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) These guidelines should be followed by the observers and or controllers.

(a) Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce ROE.

(d) Spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and unit's location.

(f) Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit's location, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR action to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate mission at the appropriate time.

c. *Post-Evaluation*. After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions.

(1) The unit observer and or controller debriefs subordinate observers and or controllers and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2) The unit observer and or controller must complete the task summary sheets.

(3) The unit observer and or controller must turn in all completed observer and or controller packets (with the observer and or controller scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4) The unit observer and or controller must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.

(5) Each element observer and or controller should conduct an AAR of his element's performance.

6-7. **Conducting the After Action Review**.

a. *General*. At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning.

b. *Feedback*. Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "data base" for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member. This information becomes an important part of the discussion and is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action.

c. *Preparing the AAR*. AAR preparation involves five steps.

(1) **Review Training Orders and Objectives**. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The observer and or controller should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) ***Observe the Exercise***. This is an active process. The emphasis is on noting those actions that make the difference between the unit's success or failure. The observer and or controller does not need to remain close to the unit leader; more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Because unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the observer and or controller must be present when the commander issues the order. The observer and or controller should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events. Examples of critical events may include—

- Conducting a road march.
- Crossing a radiologically contaminated area.
- Performing unit supply operations.
- Responding to an NBC attack.

(3) ***Select the Site and Assemble the Participants***. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. (The OPFOR or unit objective is normally suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.)

(4) ***Debrief Observers and or Controllers***. While the units are moving to the selected site, observers and or controllers should be debriefed. The senior observer and or controller must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise events in the order in which they occurred.

(5) ***Review the Events***. After the senior observer and or controller has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the events which are ranked in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and their contributions to the exercise outcome. He selects as many events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

d. *Conducting the AAR*. Conducting the AAR requires five steps.

(1) ***Organize the Participants***. When the observer and or controller and AAR leader assemble the participants, they group them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's observer and or controller is located with the element for which he is responsible.

(2) ***State the Training Objectives***. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) ***Lead the Discussion***. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and as the AAR proceeds, he directs the participants to draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should—

- Avoid giving a critique or lecture.
- Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.
- Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.
- Suggest the players discuss not only what happened but how it happened and how it could be done better.
- Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.
- Relate events to subsequent results.
- Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.
- Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.
- Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(4) ***Review.*** Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

(a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?
(b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?
(c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?
(d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?

(e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) ***Summarize Key Points***. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader

- Maintains order and discipline.
- Reviews the training objectives.
- Addresses important events as they occurred and how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.
- Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.
- Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.
- Involves participants in the discussion.
- Clearly and concisely gives summary and new training objectives.
- Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models in the AAR.

f. Reference materials (FMs and training circulars [TCs]) for conducting an AAR should be reviewed.

APPENDIX A

COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

Note: Development of the Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS) is the responsibility of the proponent, not individual units. CATS should be available to the using unit through the Standard Army Training System (SATS).

1. CATS is the Army's over-arching strategy for the current and future training of the force. It describes how the Army will train the total force to standard in the institution, unit, and through self-development. It also identifies, quantifies, and justifies the training resources required to execute the training.

2. CATS provides a mix of collective and individual tasks that are recommended to be trained to standard by units. CATS also provides a range of events that furnishes a menu from which units may choose as they decide how to train those tasks. Along with presenting the tasks, the CATS data contains information on recommended prerequisite tasks for a specific task and the required frequency to perform the tasks to attain proficiency. You may access this data as a guideline while working on various Standard Army Training System modules.

3. During the process of developing their Mission Essential Tasks List (METL) and Essential Collective Task List (ECTL) training strategies, commanders and leaders should refer to CATS information if it is available for their unit type. As a reference, CATS can save time and effort in researching appropriate event types and types of target audience units to participate in these event types.

Note: CATS data does not include all the tasks for each of the available echelons and unit types.

4. The CATS and related plans, developed by the proponent, provide the means to--
   * Establish training requirements.
   * Determine who (units and or individuals), when, where (site), and how (methods and or media) collective and individual critical tasks will be trained.
   * Identify required resources for training.

APPENDIX B

Exercise OPORDS

SAMPLE BRIGADE ORDER

_____
(Classification)

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Headquarters _____
_____
(coordinates) _____
_____

BRIGADE OPERATION PLAN 02-04

References:

a. DIVISION OPERATION PLAN 03-06.

b. Map _____, _____, ____

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local.

Task Organization. See Annex A.

Terrain Analysis. See Annex B (Intelligence).

1. Situation:

    a. *Enemy*. See Annex B (Intelligence).
       (1) ***General Situation.***
          (a) The collapse of Slavia in 1999 was followed by destructive warfare and destabilization of boundaries in the countries of Skandia and Gordo, both of which had previously been part of the Slavian regime. Kazar, the southernmost part of Gordo, became an autonomous province following the 1991 collapse. A mix of ethnic Skandians, who constitute the majority, and ethnic Gordians, who represent a minority population in the area, populates Kazar. The Gordian President, wanting to capitalize on the assumed support of the Gordian majority population, altered the status of Kazar to bring the country under his direct control. This decisive move was implemented in spite of the strenuous opposition of the Kazarian people and ignited hostilities between the two groups.
          (b) In 1998, hostilities turned into open conflict between Gordian military and police forces and Kazarian forces, resulting in the deaths of over 1500 Kazarians and the displacement of 400,000 Kazarian refugees. These conflicts eventually led to the attempted establishment of a UN-proposed peace agreement between the two forces in 1998, which subsequently collapsed due to the refusal of the Gordian delegation to sign any agreement. Instead, additional Gordian conventional forces were introduced into Kazar, forcing hundreds of thousands of ethnic Skandians to flee the province.
          (c) NATO established a presence and restored peace by 2003; the intervention by NATO forces stabilized the area. In 2004 the province of Kazar declared independence, Democratic elections were established in 2005 and the Kazar Republic seemed stable. In 2005, the NATO presence left the area. In 2006, Gordian forces began infiltrating into northern Kazar with the intent of organizing and inciting the Gordian population. This infiltration was escalated in January 2007, when additional

Gordian unconventional forces were introduced into Kazar to continue the protection of ethnic Gordians. Unconventional warfare operations were conducted to create political unrest and establish fear among ethnic Skandians. Specific methods of this warfare included demolitions, arson, mortar attacks, kidnappings, bombings, and assassinations of prominent Kazarian figures.

(d) A key fact to note is that neither law of land warfare nor international conventions bind the unconventional forces within the area. They will attempt to access commercial communications systems and try to use propaganda to turn the population against the US forces.

(e) The beginning of 2007 witnessed the number and intensity of ethnic cleansing incidents continue to increase in northern Kazar and begin to spread to both southern Kazar and along the ethnic border. On March 1, Gordian unconventional warfare units (approximately 800 strong) were credited with sponsoring a series of terrorist explosions throughout Kazar, destroying government buildings in the city of Pristina, and conducting a mortar attack on the Pristina airport. As a result, Kazar requested immediate UN assistance to counter the incursion. Under the previous peacekeeping charter, the US Secretary of Defense authorized the employment of US military forces on 3 March 2007.

(2) COA #1 Sketch: See Annex B (Intelligence).

(3) ECOA #2. See Annex B (Intelligence).

b. *Friendly*.

(1) **Higher Mission**. ARFOR, NLT D-day, secures area of responsibility (AOR) GOLD (KAZAR), defeats unconventional threats and deters the employment of Gordian conventional forces and inter-ethnic hostilities in order to stabilize Kazar and hand over control authority to follow-on forces.

(2) **Higher Intent and Concept**.

(a) Intent. This operation focuses on stabilizing the situation in Kazar by rapidly occupying the brigade zone with forces as soon as they arrive in the APOD in Skopje. We will not wait for the entire BCT to arrive before moving into our AO. Rapid occupation of AOR Gold will deter the Gordonian conventional force attack. We will focus initially on two objectives: (1) Areas that put the SPF on the defense. (2) Areas that facilitate our C2 INFOSYS. As units within the brigade arrive at Skopje, we will continue to expand our presence in zone, improve our capability to dominate the situation, neutralize the SPF, and minimize our vulnerability to SPF actions. Caution, patience, force security, situational understanding, and impartiality by all soldiers and units will be decisive to our success. We must not allow any faction to get the impression that we will overreact, are not impartial, that we can't operate within the ROE, or that we are unable to respond to unique or unforeseen situations. The cavalry squadron (RSTA) operates freely throughout the brigade zone; Pristina and Pristina Airfield, Podujevo, and Mitrovica are secured against SPF threats; CS, CSS, and C2 INFOSYS architectures are secure and fully operational, and the SPF in the remainder of the AOR are neutralized. Finally, we are postured to defeat a conventional Gordonian attack from either assembly area (AA) 2 or AA3 on three days warning.

(b) Desired Endstate. The cavalry squadron (RSTA) operates freely throughout the brigade zone; Pristina and Pristina Airfield, Podujevo, and Mitrovica are secured against SPF threats; CS, CSS and C2 INFOSYS architectures are secure and fully operational, and the SPF in the remainder of the AOR are neutralized. Finally, we are postured to defeat a conventional Gordonian attack from either AA2 or AA3, on three days warning.

(c) Concept. Decisive to this operation is securing AO PRISTINA. This is decisive because Pristina is key to the stability of Kazar. 1-325 PIR, shaping effort, secures the Kacanic Corridor to facilitate the passage of follow-on forces into AOR GOLD. The Stryker Brigade Combat Team, decisive effort, secures AOR GOLD and deters conventional forces from entering AOR GOLD, to stabilize Kazar and hand over control to UN observers. 11th AVN REGT, shaping effort, screens along the Gordonian and Kazar border to prevent Gordian conventional forces from attacking into AOR GOLD. 1st BDE, shaping effort, secures AO Urosevac to prevent interdiction of forces moving into the AOR by SPF forces and deters a conventional Gordonian attack from the west. 2nd BCT, shaping effort, secures AO Mitrovica to neutralize the SPF threat and deters a Gordonian conventional force attack from the north.

(3) **Left Unit's Mission.**

(4) **Right Unit's Mission**.

(5) **_Forward Unit's Mission._** RSTA and CA HUMINT TM's infiltrate the town of Gracinica to provide intelligence to the SBCT ME, 3rd BN.

(6) **_Rear Unit's Mission_**. 1-325 PIR, shaping effort, secures the Kacanic Corridor to facilitate the passage of follow-on forces into AOR GOLD

c. Attachments/Detachments: See Task Organization effective: _____.

2. **Mission.** SBCT secures AO Pristina in order to stabilize Kazar. On order, seizes AO GRACANICA NLT D+7(272000NOV07) in order to prevent SPF elements in AO GRACANICA from destabilizing AO PRISTINA.

3. **Execution.**
a. *Commander's Intent*.
   ▪ AO PRISTINA Secure.
   ▪ AO LAAF Secure.
   ▪ SPF unable to destabilize AO PRISTINA from surrounding villages.
   ▪ Maintain political legitimacy of operation.
   ▪ Minimize collateral damage.
   ▪ Postured to defend against conventional attack within six hours.

b. Desired Endstate. 1 BN in AO PRISTINA. 1 BN in AO PAF. 1 BN in AO GRACANICA. SPF unable to coordinate above cell-level operations.

c. Concept of the Operation. See Appendix 1 (Operations Sketch) and Annex C (Operations Overlay). We will conduct an envelopment of the enemy vic Gracanica. Decisive to this operation is our ability to neutralize SPF ambush teams in the town of Gracanica. This is decisive because this is the base combat power for the SPF and denial will lead to our brigade being able to secure the town of Gracanica without interference. A battalion, main effort, attacks to secure AO GRACANICA in order to prevent enemy UW forces from destabilizing AOR GOLD. A battalion, supporting effort one, continues to secure AO PRISTINA AF in order to prevent UW forces from conducting UW attacks in the AO and interdicting the main effort battalion. A battalion, supporting effort two, will continue to secure AO PRISTINA from UW and Gordian conventional force attacks in order to prevent the enemy from massing forces against the brigade main effort. AT will remain as the brigade reserve in AO PRISTINA. RSTA will continue to conduct area reconnaissance and HUMINT in order to determine concentration of SPF units. Fires will be used to suppress enemy UW forces and neutralize attacking enemy conventional forces. Engineers will be used primarily for mobility against enemy UW strongpoint defenses in AO GRACANICA. Civil affairs will be used to support the legitimacy of the brigade, and UN forces in AOR GOLD continue to support the Kazar infrastructure. Endstate is AOR GOLD secure, SPF neutralized and unable to continue UW attacks and destabilization in AOR GOLD, Gordian conventional forces deterred from attacking AOR GOLD, SBCT postured in AO's K-M PODUJEVO, PRISTINA, and PAF with SBCT capable of continuing stability operations in AOR GOLD in support of UN mandate and Akron Accords.

(1) **_Maneuver_**. See Appendix 1 (Synchronization Matrix) to Annex C (Operations).

(a) 1st BN, SBCT, shaping effort, secures AO PAF, Pristina Airfield, to provide a logistical base to support future brigade and Division Operations.

(b) 2nd BN, SBCT, decisive effort, secures AO PRISTINA, to prevent SPF from destabilizing AOR KAZAR.

(c) 3rd BN, SBCT, shaping effort, seizes AO GRACANICA to prevent SPF from destabilizing AO PRISTINA

(2) **_Lethal Fires and Effects_**. See Annex D (Lethal Fire Support). The three essential fire support tasks (EFST) are 1. Isolation and neutralization; 2. Counterbattery fire; 3. Interdiction.

(a) Isolation and neutralization.
   • TASK: Isolate and neutralize objective areas.
   • PURPOSE: Support maneuver to enable SBCT to rapidly move forward from Pristina Airfield and Pristina to secure AO Gracanica, Pristina, and retain Pristina Airfield.
   • METHOD: 3/1-37FA in direct support of 3rd BN. RSTA has priority of 1st and 2nd Battery until 3rd BN crosses PL KANSAS and priority of 1st battery shifts to 1st BN

and priority of 2nd battery shifts to 2nd BN. POF of all FA shifts to 2nd BN in event of conventional attack of Gordian forces (see FSEM).

- ASSESSMENT: Target acquisition assets and RSTA assets confirm and report effects in real time.

(b) Counterbattery fire.
- TASK: Counterbattery fire
- PURPOSE: To destroy enemy indirect fire assets through counterbattery or direct fire.
- METHOD: Q-36s and Q-47 activate CFZs. Priority is to BDE planned CFZs and CFFZs, then 5 CFZs to each BN.
- ASSESSMENT: Maneuver, UAV, and RSTA assets confirm and report effects in real time.

(c) Interdiction.
- TASK: Interdiction
- PURPOSE: To disrupt and deter Gordian conventional forces attack.
- METHOD: Upon eminent conventional attack, all POF FA goes initially to 2nd BN.
- ASSESSMENT: Maneuver, UAV, and RSTA assets confirm and report effects in real time.

(3) *Engineer.* See Annex F (Engineer Operations).

(a) Purpose: The purpose of engineering is to breach and or mark obstacles road, and then to block enemy counterattacks.

(b) Priority of Engineering Effort: The priority of engineers is initially mobility, survivability, and then countermobility to block from counterattack.

(c) Allocation. Priority of support is to 3rd Bn then 2nd Bn and 1st Bn. VOLCANO minefield for planning purposes – use to disrupt enemy counterattack.

(d) Restrictions. Short duration VOLCANO employment is Bde commander approval.

(4) *Air Defense Artillery*.

(a) Purpose. Prevent enemy close air support from placing effective fires onto the task force's maneuver element, to allow freedom of movement without disruption, and deny the enemy surveillance of friendly units.

(b) Priority. Priority for protection goes to: SBCT HQ, 1st BN, 2nd BN, 3rd BN, and then FA BN.

(c) Allocation. One AVENGER team will be OPCON to SBCT HQ, two AVENGER teams will be OPCON to 1st BN, one AVENGER team will be OPCON to 2nd BN, one AVENGER team will be OPCON to 3rd BN, and one AVENGER team will be OPCON to the FA BN. One SENTINEL team will be OPCON to SBCT HQ, and one SENTINEL team will be OPCON to 1st BN.

(d) Restriction. Air defense warning will be WHITE; weapon control status will be TIGHT.

(5) *Reconnaissance and Surveillance*. See Annex L.
(a) Purpose. Provide SBCT intel from Gracanica
(b) Priority. HUMINT Plt, UAV, A, B, C troop.
(c) Allocation.
(d) Restriction.

(6) *Intelligence*. See Appendix 1 (Synchronization Matrix) to Annex C.

d. *Tasks to Maneuver Units*. See Appendix 1 (Synchronization Matrix) to Annex C.

(1) *1st BN, SBCT:*
- Secure Pristina Airfield.
- BPT defend along HWY ___ north of PL ____ and west of PL ___ within 6 hours notice.
- BPT to provide one CO to 2nd BN to assist in riot control.

(2) *2nd BN, SBCT:*
- Secure AO PRISTINA
- BPT defend south of PL ____ and north of PL ____ within 6 hours notice

- Secure refugee camps at University of Pristina stadium and civic center stadiums
- Secure television towers at GLXXXX.

   (3) **3rd BN, SBCT:**
- Seize AO GRACANICA.
- BPT defend east of PL Sara and north of PL _____ within 6 hours notice.

   (4) **AT Company Reserve**. Priority for planning:
- Defend against conventional attack along HWY _____ and HWY _____.
- Assist 2nd Bn riot control in AO PRISTINA
- BPT to assist 2nd BN in securing refugee camps vic University and in downtown _____ vic civic center.
- Provide one PLT to 3rd BN to assist in seizure of AO GRACANICA

c. *Tasks to Combat Support Units*: See Appendix 2 (Synch Matrix) to Annex C.
   (1) **Fire Support**: See Annex D (Fire Support).
   (2) **Engineers _____:**
- 1st Eng Plt attach to 3rd Bn
- 2nd Eng Plt attach to 3rd Bn
- 3rd Eng Plt attach to SBCT
- 1st Mobility Plt attach to 3rd Bn

d. *Coordinating Instructions.*
   (1) **Timeline**. See Appendix 4 (Timeline) to Annex C (Operations).
   (2) ADA warning is WHITE/TIGHT.
   (3) MOPP ___0__ in effect NLT at LD.
   (4) LD/LC is:
   (5) LOA is:
   (6) **Rehearsal Priority**.
      (a) Actions on the OBJ.
      (b) Cordon and Search a BUA.
      (c) UXO Training
      (d) PIFWIC Apprehension.
   (7) **CCIR**:
      (a) PIR:
- Composition disposition of SPF in Gracanica
- Obstacles and ambush positions along routes into Gracanica
- 3. LOC of CO HQ
- LOC of WPN cache, type of commo systems
- Will Gordian conventional forces ATTK Kazar upon seizure of Gracanica.
- Will Gordian force attack under guise of "Humanitarian" convoy
- Will Armor BDE support ATTK?
- Who are the key religious leaders?
- What support is the SPF getting from civilians in Gracanica?
- What is the public attitude toward American Intervention?
- Are there any demonstration in AO PRISTINA?

      (b) FFIR:
- Loss of one RECON section or UAV.
- Report of any war atrocity or ROE violation.
- Loss of friendly AIR.
- Any direct fire contact
- Loss of HUMINT TM

      (c) EEFI:
- LOC of C4ISR assets.

- RTE of IBCT into Gracanica.
- LOC of AT PLT.
- Location of C-Fire Radar.
- Disposition of HUMINT TM.

4. **Service Support.** See Annex I (Service Support).

   a. *Concept of Support.* See Annex I (Service Support).

5. **Command and Signal.**

   a. *Command.*
   - Battalion CP Locations: MAIN: Pristina Government Center (GLXXX), TAC CP (GLXXXX), BSB: VIC. PRAF (GLXXXX).
   - Succession of Command: SBCT CDR, XO, 1ST BN CDR, 2ND BN CDR, 3RD BN CDR, RSTA CDR.

   b. *Signal.*
   (1) SOI in effect: # 23.
   (2) Primary means of communication: FM.
   (3) Backup means of communications: TACSAT.
   (4) Location of Retrans: GL XXXX.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

OFFICIAL: S3

CONTENTS

UNCLASSIFIED

ANNEX A (TASK ORGANIZATION) TO BRIGADE OPLAN 02-04

TASK ORGANIZATION (BDE)

SBCT
    1st BN (-)(+)
        2xADA TM's
        2x HUMMINT
        1xCO Detach to 3rd BN
        1xSENTINAL Radar
        1xAT PLT

    2nd BN
        2x HUMMINT
        2xADA TM's

    3rd BN (+)
        1xCO from 3rd BN
        1xADA TM
        2xENG PLT's
        2xHUMINT TM's

BDE CONTROL
    1-32 AR (RSTA) SQDN
        1-37 FA (155) MAV: DS
        1xADA TM
    MI Co
    SIG Co
    AT Co
    EN Co
    296th BSB

APPENDIX 1 (TERRAIN AND WEATHER ANALYSIS) TO ANNEX B (INTELLIGENCE) TO OPLAN 02-04

1. **Terrain Analysis.**

    a. *City of Pristina.*
        (1) Located in central Kazar, Pristina is Kazar's largest city. The city is broken into three major parts. In the center of the city is the densely populated uptown area. The area is characterized by a mix of older mass construction storefront, residential, and industrial buildings that are very close together and newer framed construction buildings which house local government agencies, media headquarters, and technology-industry headquarters. The framed construction buildings tend to house the assets most important to stabilization of the city.
        (2) Just outside of the uptown area of Pristina is the suburban sprawl of the city. This area surrounds the uptown on all sides and extends down to the _____ area in the south and two miles beyond the city's airport in the north. Its buildings are mainly framed construction and are made up of eighty-percent residential buildings and twenty-percent commercial buildings. These commercial buildings are similar to strip malls and indoor malls in their use and construction. The suburban sprawl is quite expansive in all directions and separations in buildings are usually filled in with moderate amounts of vegetation and trees.
        (3) Beyond the suburban sprawl the city of Pristina becomes more rural. This area is mostly thick forest with very few clearings. Throughout this area are occasional residences and industrial buildings, both made with framed construction methods. The few farms in this area are very small and are mostly for personal use by the landowner, not for commercial growing.
        (4) Pristina is split between Gordians(to the north) and Scandians (to the south). The ethnic tensions seem to erupt predominately within this line where the majority of population shifts. Expect to see a majority of riots, tensions, and activities along this line (see overlay).

    b. *Terrain's Impact Pristina.*
        (1) **Obstacles.**
        (a) Along AA1 from the north, the major obstacle is the dense vegetation and thick forest along _____ and HWY __ and ___. This makes it very hard to maneuver mounted forces cross-country. Once these roads enter Pristina they become less restricted by the vegetation, allowing mounted forces to move off the main roads. However, as these roads enter Pristina, they become more surrounded by dense residential and commercial areas which will severely inhibit forces from moving in tactical formations. This becomes more true as these roads approach the uptown area.
        (b) Along AA2 from the northeast, the same holds true. However, HWY __ and _____ road are significantly smaller, making the thick vegetation an even greater obstacle.
        (c) Along AA3 from the south, _____ Rd. and _____ provide very little obstacle to the sides of the roads as the road's shoulders are very wide. However, forces must travel through heavily populated areas on the post in the south in order to reach key places within the city limits.
        (d) Along AA4 from the southeast, the avenue is similar. HWY ____ is much wider as it approaches Pristina and is a full four-lane highway. The density of the vegetation is thicker here than in the north and northeast; however, this AA does not experience the severe effects of the suburban buildings until just a few miles from the uptown section of Pristina.
        (e) The _____ River is an obstacle to the west of both Pristina air field and the city of Pristina. The river has a multitude of bridges in the uptown area and one in the southern portion near Pristina Air Field. These bridges are key because they control the flow of mounted movements to and from Pristina from the west.
        (f) The actual city of Pristina is an obstacle. The built-up areas within the city limits will impede movement, limit observation, and provide cover and concealment for both friendly and enemy elements.
        (2) **Avenues of Approach.**
        (a) AA1. This is the major route of traffic from the north to the city of Pristina. It is a four to six lane highway on ____ with wide shoulders allowing nearly a company of mounted forces on line and a brigade in column. Just to the east of ____ is HWY__ , which is a two-lane highway that opens to four lanes as it enters the city. This AA can handle a brigade (+) sized element travelling at 25-30 k/hr on the roads and 15-20k/hr off the roads.

(b) AA2. AA2 runs from the northeast to the city of Pristina and includes HWY _____ and _____ Rd. This is a narrower AA because of small shoulders on the road forcing mounted units to stay on the road. It can handle a battalion-size element in column travelling at 20-25 k/hr on roads and 10-15k/hr off road.

(c) AA3. AA3 comes into the city directly from the south along I-185 and _____ road. This AA is wide with wide shoulders that can handle a company on line and a brigade (+) in column. Because of the wide shoulders and large number of secondary roads running parallel to the major roads, this AA allows for fast travel to the uptown area at a rate of 25-30k/hr on roads and 10-20k/hr off roads.

(d) AA4. AA4 runs into Pristina coming from the southeast. Its major road is Hwy _____ and has few secondary roads running in the same direction. This highway is two lanes about 20 miles from the city and widens to four lanes from there into uptown Pristina. This AA intersects _____ and _____ just before uptown Pristina. It will allow a battalion (+) in column travelling at 25-30 k/hr on the roads and 10 k/hr off road.

(e) AA5. AA5 runs into Pristina coming from the east along _____ Road. The road is two lanes and enters Pristina with relatively few constraints. It will allow a battalion in column traveling at 25-30 k/hr on the roads and 10 k/hr off road.

(f) AA6. AA6 runs into Pristina coming from the east along Buena Vista road. The road is two lanes and enters Pristina with limited constraints. It is smaller than the other avenues of approach but will still allow a battalion in column to move at approximately 25-30 k/hr on the roads and 5-10 k/hr off road.

(3) ***Key Terrain***.
    (a) K1-Pristina Airport (GLXXXX).
    (b) K2-City Hall and broadcast tower uptown (radio and television) (GLXXXX).
    (c) K3-Uptown bridges across Chattahoochee:
- GLXXXX.
- GLXXXX.
- GLXXXX.
- GLXXXX.

    (d) K4-Broadcast tower vic. _____ Rd. and _____ Rd. (radio and television) (GLXXXX).
    (e) K5-Train station uptown (GLXXXX).
    (f) K6-Water treatment plant south of uptown (GLXXXX).
    (g) K7-Hospital (GLXXXX).
    (h) K8-Golf course (GLXXXX).
    (i) K9-Bradley Crossing (GLXXXX).
    (j) K10-Southern bridge (GLXXXX).
    (k) K11-Upatoi Bridge (GLXXXX).
    (l) K12-Pristina Airport within city: (GLXXXX).
    (m) K13-_____ Pkwy Interchange (GLXXXX).
    (n) K14-_____ Drive/_____ interchange (GLXXXX).

(4) ***Observation and Fields of Fire***.
    (a) Along all avenues of approach, observation and fields of fire are restricted by forests alongside the roads, curves in the roads, and the rolling hills in the terrain. At most along any avenue of approach observation is limited to under 2 km and can be as little as 200-500 meters. Within built-up areas and wooded areas off the main avenues of approach, observation and fields of fire are restricted to 100-200 meters.

    (b) Within the uptown area of Pristina, several high-rise buildings provide substantially greater observation and fields of fire. The city hall building vicinity _____ Avenue and _____ Street provides observation for three to five km in all directions covering the entire uptown area and the major brides across the _____ River. Also, the _____ Building near _____ and _____ Roads provides the same degree of observation overlooking the eastern portion of the city.

(5) ***Cover and Concealment.***
    (a) Outskirts of Pristina. Good Concealment can be easily found along all avenues of approach in the rural outskirts of the city via small roads running deep into the thick forests. These forests can also conceal forces from air observation if they can move off the trails. However, there is not much cover in these areas as the trees are not of large diameter and the sparse buildings are made using framed construction.

(b) Suburban Pristina. Good concealment from ground forces can be found in the many suburban neighborhoods in this area. Some commercial buildings are big enough to store vehicles and equipment for periods of time. Dismounted forces can find great cover and concealment all over the suburban sprawl. However, the framed construction buildings will not provide cover for forces in the area and the many small road networks make it easy to see vehicles and personnel with air reconnaissance.

(c) Uptown Pristina. Within the uptown area cover and concealment are ample. A majority of buildings are constructed with heavy brick using mass construction which will provide excellent cover. The large amount of building makes it possible to be concealed from an observer only meters away. However, the high-rise building in the area are framed construction with glass walls providing no cover at all.

2. **Weather Analysis.**

a. *Weather.*

(1) **Existing Situation.** Weather during the month of _____ is usually hot with moderate amounts of rainfall. Precipitation usually occurs during short intense thunderstorms in early evenings. Visibility can be severely hampered by this precipitation, but normally visibility remains 3-5km on clear days. Temperatures range from highs in the low 100s to lows in the 70s in the evening. Generally, there is very light wind except during thunderstorms, which average 5 days throughout the month.

(2) **Effects on Enemy COAs**: The biggest hindrance to enemy operations is the heat and heavy precipitation associated with storms. The heat of the summer will ensure that enemy will not stray far from water sources for long periods of time. The heavy precipitation will restrict his cross-country movement and will force him to use improved roads near major lines of communication. Frequent storms may hinder his visibility and severely limit his ability to gain intelligence about us but will provide him with additional concealment. Illumination is favorable for night operations.

(3) **Effects on Friendly COAs**: The biggest hindrance to our operations will be the heavy rainfall associated with summer storms. This will affect our ability to move cross-country. However the network of roads can support wheeled and tracked vehicle traffic. Frequent storms will force refugees and displaced civilians to keep to major roads, making networks more congested. Also, heavy precipitation will have a major effect on airport operations, effectively stopping all air traffic during storms. Heavy thunderstorms will limit visibility and hinder reconnaissance and air operations. However, it will provide some concealment for dismounted forces. High heat will force the local populace to search and loot for potable water, possibly affecting the amount of water needed to sustain our soldiers. Close air support as well as target acquisition and lock-on will be hampered by the lower visibility during storms. The best time for operations requiring high visibility and limited obstruction is 1200-1500 and 2200-0200.

b. *Weather Data*. Following is the light data for _____.

DATE	____	____	____	____
SR	0717	0718	0719	0720
SS	1730	1729	1728	1727
MR	0346	0446	0546	0645
MS	1547	1620	1655	1732
HI	74	74	74	71
LO	34	31	32	29
%ILLUM	15	8	3	1
WINDS	SW5-7	SW5-7	SW4-6	W1-2
PRECIP	30%	20%	20%	20%
BMNT	0610	0611	0612	0613
EENT	1819	1819	1819	1819

APPENDIX 2 (ENEMY ANALYSIS) TO ANNEX B (INTELLIGENCE) to OPLAN 02-04

1. **Enemy Situation**

    a. *Disposition.*

        (1) We are facing elements of the 90th Special Police Force (SPF), an unconventional unit that infiltrated approximately 7 companies into Kazar beginning in NOV 07. In the BCT sector, there is one identified SOF company with 2 possible cells from another SOF company reinforcing from the south (Urosevac). Currently they are utilizing former district headquarters in Pristina and Gracanica as their base of operations. An estimated 1 company (-) of SPF is operating out of Gracanica, 3 cells conducting UW in Pristina, and 2 cells from Urosevac operating at PAF. They are all closely allied with the surrounding ethnic Gordians. Currently, the SPF HQ in Gracanica has been actively recruiting among the local Gordians. We expect them to have recruited 3 additional cells from the local population that is sympathetic to their cause. They have been conducting UW operations in the form of arson, extortion, murder, kidnappings, bombings and mortar attacks, misinformation, and ethnic cleansing in order to destabilize the Kazar government and its infrastructure. On alert from Gordo, they can transition to interdiction operations to seize key terrain, control corridors, and harass UN rear areas in order to facilitate the passage of the Gordian 1st Infantry Corps.

        (2) The conventional Gordian 1st Infantry Corps continues to recall and mobilize its brigades to move into tactical assembly areas along major avenues of approach into Kazar. The TAA's are located at:

- 5th Mechanized BDE vic Muhovac GLXXXX.
- 25th Motorized BDE vic Raska GLXXXX.
- 49th Motorized BDE vic Tutin GLXXXX.
- 54th Motorized BDE vic Loznica GLXXXX.
- 43rd Armored BDE location unknown.

    b. *Composition.* SBCT is directly opposed by the unconventional Gordian 90th Special Police Forces (SPF) as well as the potential of conventional 1st Corps of the Gordonian 1st Army.

    c. *Capabilities.*
        (1) **Manuever.**
        (a) SPF forces in Pristina and Gracinica are currently at 100% strength and are actively recruiting in Gracinica. This recruiting has resulted in the addition of three more cells. The three cells in Pristina are capable of continuing unconventional warfare tactics through a decentralized command.

        (b) The headquarters for the cells operating in Gracinica is currently occupying a strong point in a conventional warfare manner with AT/AP mines, 3 X ADA systems, 2 X M-80's, and 2 X M-60 RCLG.

        (c) The Gordian SPF consists primarily of light, dismounted infantry with some degree of motorization. Allied intelligence has yet to detect the infiltration of vehicles across the border. SPF units have man-portable ADA and indirect fire support capability in the form of RPG-7V's and 82mm mortars. They are capable of unconventional, police, and terrorist operations in dispersed operations at team, squad, and platoon levels. They are highly effective at platoon level operations and are not constrained by the law of land warfare or international conventions. They also display a mature organizational structure with central leadership from Gordo proper. They are capable of conducting limited company-level operations but will opt not to. The 90th SPF has seven district units allied with seven major towns and cities (Pristina [Columbus], Kosovska Mitrovika, Pec, Dakovica, Urosevec, Gnjilane, and Podojevo). They are highly aware of world attention and will conduct operations consistent with the Gordian strategic campaign. The 90th SPF has yet to infiltrate all of its combat vehicles and equipment. We do not expect them to infiltrate this equipment or any UW reinforcements.

        (2) **Reinforcements.** Reinforcement for the 90th SPF UW operations is the conventional attack by the 1st Inf. Corps. The seizure of Gracinica may trigger Gordo to commit the conventional forces into Kazar.
        (3) **Artillery.**

(a) SPF: The artillery assets available to the SPF are the 82mm organic to each cell. The cells in Gracinica are expected to consolidate their mortars into a split section to mass fires into engagement areas. The mortars are capable of firing HE, WP, and illumination.

(b) 1st Gordian Infantry Corps: All tube and rocket artillery 122mm and above are chemical capable. The enemy has task-organized the majority of his artillery down to maneuver brigade level. At this point there has been no indication of Corps or Army artillery groups forming. Towed field artillery includes pieces of 76/105/122/130/152/155/203mm; the most modern being Gordian produced D30j 122-mm howitzers and M-84 152-mm gun-howitzers. The only significant self-propelled artillery is a small number of 2S1 122mm howitzers. The MRLs are primarily 128mm 32-round models--approximately 75% towed M-63 Plamens and 25% M-77 truck-mounted Organis. A limited number of M-87 Orkan 262-mm MRLs and Frog 7/Luna M rockets from the Gordian Army to reinforce 1st Corps artillery operations provide long range (50 to 70 km) fire support. The use of artillery reconnaissance is a standard feature of Gordian tactical doctrine. Reconnaissance unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) capability allows enemy forces to identify and target friendly command and control nodes and or logistics bases with their long-range fire support assets.

(4) Air Defense.

(a) SPF: Organic assets consist of 3 X M53 ADA systems that are currently located in Gracinica overwatching the airstrip and helo pad. Additionally, the SPF has organic RPG-7s that can be used effectively against helicopters. Recent INTREPS have identified 2 SA-7's vicinity Ft. Mitchell near LAAF and 2 possible SA-16's east of LAAF.

(b) 1st Gordian Infantry Corps: Gordian Forces have an extensive network of air defense assets. The most capable asset is the SA-10C, which is currently located with the Capital Defense Command. Should Gordian Forces attack, this asset will most likely be moved down into southern Gordo to support the 1st Corps operation. It is unknown how many SA-10C the Gordian forces have as part of their defense force, but intelligence estimates they could have as many as four supporting the capital defense force. Most of the air defense assets will use passive detection to reduce the threat from NATO air strikes. They will utilize cellular phones to provide indications and warnings of NATO air strikes. EW forces have infiltrated with SA-7, SA-14, and SA-16's. The exact number is unknown. They pose a significant threat to the area around Pristina (LAAF) Airfield and will use them to disrupt US operations.

(5) *Air.*

(a) SPF: The SPF has no air assets.

(b) 1st Gordian Infantry Corps: The allied forces currently have air superiority. However, the Gordian Air Force can conduct limited air operations with both fixed-wing and rotary-wing aircraft. The 1st Corps has 25 sorties available daily from fixed and rotary wing assets. The Gordian fixed wing assets include Fulcrum (14), Frogfoot (20), Jastreb (20), and Soko I-22 (45) for a total of 99 attack aircraft. Attack and assault helicopters are the SA 342L Partizan (45) carrying the AT-3 Sagger, while the Mi-8/17 Hip (80) is used for SOF insertion. Enemy forces also operate a capable UAV system--the SDPR VBL-2000--having at least three full systems, each having four to six UAVs. This is a day/night capable reconnaissance UAV with a real time downlink that may be able to communicate directly to artillery assets. UAV sorties can be expected at the outset of deployment with two to four sorties per day per system. Gordian forces have been negotiating with FSU to acquire the SS-21 short-range ballistic missile system, although current estimates are the system has not been received or deployed.

(6) *Mobility/Survivability*. SPF forces are expected to have a limited supply of AT/AP mines that have been sent from Gordo. The SPF are using these mine in conjunction with ambush sites and to disrupt US forces among avenues of approach. Numerous mine caches have been located by locals and NGO in the area.

(7) *Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC)*.

(a) SPF: The SPF forces have been conducting possible biological warfare at water treatment facilities in Pristina. This water system effects all water in Pristina and the PAF.

(b) 1st Gordian Infantry Corps: The Gordian Army has chemical delivery capability and possesses chemical and biological munitions. Delivery assets available to the 1st Corps includes all tube artillery 120mm and larger, MRL, and rotary- and fixed-wing platforms. The Gordonians have the Frog in limited numbers and primarily use them as part of the capital defense force. It is unlikely that they would move them down to support the forces invading Kazar. It is also unlikely that Gordians will use chemical

or biological weapons on a territory they want to annex. The chemical release authority is held at national level. For a complete capability listing, see the NBC annex.

90th Special Police Force	
STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
*Decentralized operations – mobility.	*Decreased C2 with decentralized operations.
*Uses civilian vehicles and can blend into population easily.	*Very limited experience operating at company level or above.
*Access to commercial commo eqpt, including civilian telephone systems, handheld AM/FM/UHF/HF radios, satellite cell phones, and pagers.	*Relies on ethnic Gordians for support in safe havens consisting of money, subsistence, and transportation.
*Can quickly transition to more conventional tasks tointerdict UN Forces and facilitate 1st Corps' passage.	
*Not constrained by laws of land warfare or international conventions.	

    d. *Recent Activities.*

      (1) ***General***. HUMINT sources have recently confirmed that the 90th SPF relocated a company headquarters, along with its weapons, supply, and communications caches, to the town of Gracanica. It is expected that the SPF will conduct immediate UW attacks on ethnic Skandians and US forces in the AO to destabilize the region. It is also expected that SPF attacks may establish the conditions required for the Gordinian conventional forces to seize AO Pristina.

      (2) ***AO Pristina***.

        (a) The Gordo President has declared "the Peacekeeping resolution of the Pristina situation has been completely inadequate, and that innocent Christians are starving in South Central Pristina while US military forces stand by and do nothing." He announced that the Gordian Government would assist the UN in enforcing the peacekeeping resolutions by sending peaceful convoys of food and other "essential items and necessities" into the ethnic Gordian neighborhoods in and around Pristina. Gordian security forces will ensure the safety of the humanitarian efforts by escorting these convoys. The Gordian President claims that the security forces are peaceful in intent but "if, after failing to deter Muslin terrorist activities, or the US or Kazar security forces engage this peaceful convoy, then the Gordian forces will be forced to defend themselves."

        (b) A convoy of Red Cross trucks carrying food and medical supplies to the refugee camp at the Pristina Olympic Park was ambushed by the SPF along the highway from Pec. Two Red Cross workers were killed in the rocket attack, and the SPF captured one of the trucks.

        (c) The situation in South Central Pristina has stabilized significantly due to SBCT operations in the city. However, for the last three days ethnic Skandians have conducted counter-demonstrations and violent incidents in response to past Gordian activities in the city. These incidents include cases of arson, car bomb explosion, and mob violence/looting in the downtown areas.

      (3) ***AO PAF***.

        (a) For the last several nights, random mortar attacks have occurred at the Pristina Airfield. No significant damage or loss has been reported.

        (b) A local clergyman reported seeing four men being dropped off near his church (Mount Olive Church vic GLXXXX). After unloading two long cylindrical objects, they moved east of the church into the woods. The vehicle that dropped them off headed north on HWY _____.

        (c) A C-130 carrying UN observers was "painted" by anti-aircraft radar on its approach to LAAF. The radar contact was due east of the airfield, short in duration, and ceased when the aircraft took evasive measures. No ordinance was fired, but the UN observers were quite shaken up after the pilots explained the rough landing to them.

        (d) A UAV over-flight of the LAAF and the surrounding area to the west detected activity on a hill top vic GLXXXX. Three persons were observed in the edge of the wood line camouflaging a "lean-to" structure.

(e) A C-17 carrying supplies into the _____ area was fired upon by what has been determined was an SA-6 shoulder-fired air defense weapon system. The missile was fired from high ground due west of the airfield. The plane was not hit directly because of its chaff and flare defenses it deployed on detection of the missile. However, it did receive moderate damage to the fuselage when the missile detonated near the aircraft. ____ has been shutdown until the area is cleared of possible enemy anti-aircraft weapons.

(f) Crowds numbering around 200 persons have been demonstrating against US presence outside the Holy Mosque of the Red Crescent (GLXXXX).

(g) National Organization for the Removal of Mines has located AP mines at GLXXXX.

(h) 5-20 IN has reported 28 cases of dysentery vic PAF. All have been evacuated to their aid station. Possible biological warfare may have been started by SPF.

(i) Large groups of protestors, numbering in the hundreds, have been seen moving towards the Pristina Airfield armed with anti-US signs and banners. The group allegedly threw rocks at several buildings along the way, breaking numerous windows.

(4) *AO Gracanica*.

(a) The SPF company headquarters and approximately 3 SPF teams were reported by SIGNIT and HUMINT sources to have moved out of the Edlervic and Morsevic neighborhoods to Gracanica.

(b) The SPF elements in Gracanica have established weapons and equipment supply caches and a communications retrans site within the village. They have also organized the local ethnic Gordian population and conducted local riots and demonstrations against ethnic Skandians and their community leaders. These demonstrations have been widely covered by CNN reporters in the village.

(c) Last night,ethnic Skandian refugees fleeing Gracanica reported that the Gracanica police chief was kidnapped and murdered two nights ago. The report has not been confirmed by ARFOR sources.

(d) Weapons caches, equipment supply cache, and commo retrans site have been sited within Gracinica. Local demonstrations have been conducted by Gordians against ethnic Kazars and their leaders in Gracinica.

(e) In retaliation for the car bombing, the Skandian protesters set fire to a Gordian neighborhood, completely destroying it. The ethnic Gordians have fled, seeking refuge in other Gordian neighborhoods.

e. *Enemy COA's.*

(1) *MPCOA*:

(a) The SPF forces conduct unconventional warfare vicinity Pristina, Gracinica, and PAF in order to prevent US forces from occupying Gracinica. Decisive to this operation is preventing the town of Gracinica from falling into the occupation of US forces. This is decisive because it allows the SPF to actively recruit in the area and provides a stronghold for SPF forces and follow-on conventional Gordian forces. The main effort at Gracinica, consisting of a SPF company(-), defends in strongpoint in order to prevent the occupation of Gracinica by US forces. These forces will conduct ethnic cleansing of the local Skandian population. They may also be preparing Gracinica as a forward staging base for future conventional Gordian offensive operations. SE1 in AO PAF (2 X SPF cells) disrupts US forces using UW in order to delay follow-on forces/logistical resupply. SE2 in AO Pristina (2 X SPF cells) continues to conduct UW to destabilize the Kazar government and infrastructure and will continue attacks on highly vulnerable US targets, to include C2 and logistics. The purpose of fires is to suppress dismounted forces to prevent the seizure of Gracinica. The purpose of engineers is limited to countermobility consisting of AT and AP mines placed on high speed avenues of approach into Gracinica. The purpose of ADA is to destroy (1) rotary wing troop transports into heliport (2) fixed-wing attack (3) cargo aircraft. The endstate is that Gracinica is retained by SPF and prepared to conduct unconventional operations and transition into conventional warfare in support of the Gordinian brigades.

(b) The Gordian 1st INF Corps will infiltrate small elements over the provincial border using small roads in close terrain. These convoys will rapidly transition into conventional attacks prior to entering major cities and attempt to penetrate UN defenses and seize the urban areas.

(2) *MDCO*.: The occupation of Pristina is the trigger for conventional forces from the north to move into Kazar. Decisive to the enemy is the ability to conduct simultaneous brigade attacks and seize the city of Pristina. Success will provide the Gordian forces the capital of Kazar and the largest city in

AOR GOLD and allow the Gordian forces to continue future offensive operations against ethnic Skandians and NATO forces. Some conventional forces may already be in Gracinica as part of the AGMB of one of the motorized infantry brigades. The local population in Gracinica will aid the SPF and the conventional forces in the city by causing mass demonstrations and riots when the US forces arrive. The 1st Corps brigades will be supported by the 90th SPF. The 3rd Motorized Infantry Brigade will not deploy into Kazar along AA4 until after the other brigades are set, due to severely restricted terrain.

f. *Grey COA's*. In Pristina, ethnic Gordians will covertly aid Gordian SPF but will be constrained by reactions of ethnic Skandians and UN activities. In Gracinica, ethnic Gordians will openly aid the Gordian SPF. Their assistance will include a recruiting pool among their male population and active demonstrations. The populace in Gracinica will also provide the SPF with much needed resupplies with food, maintenance, and safe houses. Ethnic Skandians will be sympathetic to UN peacekeeping operations in Pristina. The Skandians in Gracinica have nearly all been displaced by the SPF and Gordian population there. These Skandian refugees from Gracinica are currently moving to Pristina and Marca. Displaced refugees will congest LOC and operations at key terrain.

APPENDIX C

Enemy Analysis

C-1. **General**. It is the leader's responsibility to know his enemy. Knowing the enemy means conducting a brief analysis of the enemy, weather, and terrain to gain situational understanding (SU) of the enemy's most probable course(s) of action, his strengths, and his weaknesses. The end result of this analysis will be a sketch or graphic of the enemy's probable course of action, a brief statement of enemy capabilities, and a determination of the commander's intelligence requirements. This sketch or graphic and statement provides a valuable tool for the commander and his subordinates in the planning and execution of their mission.

C-2. **Intelligence Products**. The majority of the analysis of the enemy is conducted and provided to the leaders by the commander. Through the intelligence battlefield operating system (BOS), he has access to an extensive array of collection systems, data, and current information. During the military decision-making process and the development of the unit's orders, this information has been analyzed and refined. The information is normally provided in paragraph 1a of the OPLAN and or OPORD, graphics accompanying the order, the intelligence annex, and or periodic or situational updates provided in a graphic or written form. It is important to understand, however, that this information looks at the enemy from a broader perspective. It may not be precisely tailored to the level of detail desired or focus on the enemy attacking in the unit's AO or defending in its portion of the objective. This information is, however, the basis for the unit's order and the assignment of subordinate unit missions and tasks. It is the start point for the commander's analysis.

C-3. **Battalion Commander Intelligence Analysis**. It is the leader's responsibility to refine the information provided by higher headquarters and consider it in the context of his unit's mission. He adapts the information and situation templates (SITEMPs) or threat models and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products. With them he develops the tools and aids necessary for his own mission planning. The focus of his analysis should be to determine four critical factors:

- HOW WILL HE FIGHT? How will the enemy attempt to execute his mission against us, OR how will the enemy attempt to prevent us from accomplishing our mission?
- WHAT CAN HE DO TO ME? What are his strengths? How can we avoid or counter them?
- WHAT CAN I DO TO HIM? What are his weaknesses or vulnerabilities? How can we exploit them? What can we maneuver against or shoot at? What actions or targets provide the highest pay-off?
- WHAT ARE MY PRIORITY INTELLIGENCE REQUIREMENTS (PIR)? What do we need to know to successfully accomplish our mission with minimum expenditure or loss of resources?

This is a dynamic process. Every discovery, report, or new piece of information has the potential to create additional questions. The leader, however, has a limited amount of time for his analysis, planning, and preparation. He should conduct his initial analysis with the resources and information available. As new or additional information is developed and his SU is refined, he may alter the details of his OPLAN or OPORD.

C-4. **How Will He Fight?** The first step of the analysis should examine how the enemy would prefer to execute his mission. The enemy armed force being faced may have well-developed doctrine. They train their soldiers and leaders to employ these tactics and techniques. A less sophisticated enemy force may have demonstrated a preference for organizational styles, specific tactics, or operating techniques. These tactics and techniques may have been documented in use against other armed forces or during previous engagements. Like the U S Army, most forces train to conduct operations in a standard manner. These expected organizations, preferences, or actions provide the tools for doctrinal analysis. Realities of the battlefield must be added to the doctrinal analysis. These realities may include knowledge or assumptions about the enemy's current location, actual force composition, and strengths. Combining these factors provides an understanding of how he may fight in this engagement or situation.

a. Armies organize, equip, and train to fight. Established armed forces tend to have defined force structures and adopt standard methods of conducting combat operations. Irregular forces also adopt organizational principles and methods. Both train to execute them. A "doctrinal analysis" can be conducted with a basic understanding of the normal organization and tactics of an opposing force.

(1) For many established armed forces, the doctrine and tactics are meticulously documented. Doctrinal templates are or can be developed to provide a visual representation, to scale, of various tactical operations. Critical times, frontages, depths, objectives, deployment lines, and probable array of forces can be determined. For example, knowing that a motorized rifle regiment from a specific enemy will conduct an attack; a full doctrinal template could be developed. This template or template set shows how the enemy intends to fight.

(2) The organizations, formations, or methods of irregular forces are also predictable. Total numbers of equipment, exact organization, and tactical proficiency may depend on availability and recruitment. Most military or paramilitary organizations adopt patterns. For example, the actual number of "technical vehicles" in a unit may vary based on the number of trucks or sport utility vehicles and heavy machine guns or antitank launchers available. Intelligence sources, however, may have confirmed that a company-sized unit generally has ten vehicles. Their preferred formation for movement is a file or staggered file with the chief or commander in the second vehicle and the deputy or second in command in the trail vehicle. Irregular forces generally adopt methods for other operations as well. Ambushes, kidnappings, bank robberies, and security for "safe houses" all take on details that are similar. These predictable techniques and tactics provide a "doctrinal template" for their actions.

(3) These doctrinal templates must be overlaid on the AO and adjusted for terrain and weather. This adjustment can be made using IPB products or map inspection and templates can be modified to account for actual conditions or constraints imposed by the terrain and weather conditions. For example, steep slopes, dense vegetation, stream beds, or marshes will alter standard formations and movement rates. Urban terrain imposes unique conditions. Salt flats dry from the sun may provide wide avenues for attack, while seasonal rains may limit attack frontages to a two-lane causeway. Weather conditions also have an impact on visibility, target tracking, and command and control. Dust or darkness has a major impact on forces with only a limited distribution of early-generation night-vision or infrared systems. Forces with a broad distribution of night-vision and thermal systems may operate in darkness and limited visibility, much as they do in daylight. Once adjusted, these modified doctrinal templates assist in predicting how and where the enemy will deploy, formations he will assume, positioning of critical assets, command elements, rates of movement, and so forth.

(4) Given no other information, this modified doctrinal template can provide a fair assessment of how the enemy force can be expected to conduct an operation. The examination of other information, however, can further refine the modified doctrinal templates.

b. Information on the composition, strength, capabilities, and disposition of the enemy may be available to the company/team commander. Analysis of each of these factors can refine the leader's SU and his template.

(1) A review of the composition of forces provides details of what the enemy can bring against the company. Composition may confirm the organization of enemy units and reveal the resources and units available to reinforce or support his operations. It may also reveal limitations of the force that can become vulnerabilities. For example, knowing that an attacking force has limited engineer breaching assets can make engineer efforts of greater value. The leader should consider forces by BOS and add to or remove elements from the modified doctrinal template as the result of his analysis.

(2) A review of the known strengths of enemy forces provides details of "how many" the enemy can muster against the platoon/squad. Strengths may confirm the details concerning the probable number of combat systems--tanks, anti-personnel carriers (APCs)/infantry combat vehicles (ICVs), antitank launchers, artillery tubes, and infantry soldiers--available to the enemy force. Percentages may need to

be converted to actual numbers given the composition and known data on organizational figures. Significant shortages in tank/antitank systems, low-density engineer or air defense systems, and or infantry soldiers may prove to be exploitable vulnerabilities. The modified doctrinal template should be updated to reflect expected system densities.

(3) Review of enemy capabilities provides insight in to what the enemy can do within the time frame of the company commander's mission. For example, he may be capable of supporting his attack with chemical weapons, air strikes, or electronic warfare. While these capabilities are significant strengths, with appropriate precautions their effects can be mitigated. The enemy may have only limited offensive or reinforcement capability for a specific time. This time period could present both a window for prioritized preparation of the defense or an exploitable vulnerability to spoiling attacks. Few capabilities can be graphically depicted, but all should be considered.

(4) Enemy dispositions provide known locations of the enemy or enemy obstacles. While some units beyond your influence may only assist in confirming or adjusting your modified doctrinal template, others may become targets for reconnaissance, fires, or maneuver. In offensive planning, known dispositions may assist you in adjusting the accuracy of the template, determine probable locations for unlocated units, reserves, or counterattack forces. Dispositions may also identify vulnerabilities.

c. Using the resources provided in the intelligence portion of the OPLAN and or OPORD and additional analysis, the leader can create his situation template (SITEMP). It is important to consider that the enemy commander may have branches and sequels to his plan. He may have more than one plan. He may also employ deception. With these items considered, the commander now has graphic tools to support the development of his plan and for use in developing the SU of his subordinates.

C-5. **What Can He Do To Me?** The commander can use his SITEMP and known enemy capabilities to determine enemy strengths that he must avoid or counter. For example, speed may be essential in his attack. Knowing or templating disposition of enemy antitank systems can assist in development of suppression targets, smoke and obscurant plans, and or a probable line of deployment. In the defense, an extensive breaching and mine clearing capability may be frustrated by multiple small obstacles instead of one or two large mine fields. The leader's plan can avoid or negate enemy strengths.

C-6. **What Can I Do To Him?** Understanding and graphically depicting enemy weakness and vulnerabilities can improve the platoon/squad's execution of actions against them. The platoon/squad leader may have already designated high pay-off targets (HPTs). The platoon/squad leader should emphasize and supplement this list. Combat power can be focused to shoot or maneuver against enemy vulnerabilities, rapidly degrading the enemy's capabilities. Probable locations of HPTs and vulnerabilities should be added to the SITEMP.

C-7. **WHAT IS MY PIR?** Development of the SITEMP provides an opportunity for the commander to determine what he knows about the enemy and what he needs to know. He should review the commander's PIR and any intelligence collection tasks assigned to his unit. His intelligence needs may be focused to specific locations, events, or tines. The needs should be formulated into questions and forwarded as PIR to the battalion S2.

APPENDIX D

Digital Supplement

D-1. **General**.

a.   This appendix is a summary to introduce the Army battle command system (ABCS) with special emphasis on three systems: Force XXI battle command brigade and below (FBCB2), maneuver control system (MCS), and all-source analysis system (ASAS) and their capabilities at the battalion level. **This is only a synopsis**; **it is not intended to replace applicable field manuals, technical manuals, or any other how-to publication.** Mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) will drive the use of digital systems on the battlefield. This appendix is not intended to teach soldiers how to operate digital systems but rather how the systems, when used correctly, are a command and control combat multiplier and how they interact with other digital systems.

b.   Digitization is the ongoing effort to integrate the Army's diversified battlefield operating systems (BOS) into an information exchange network while also enhancing the mission capabilities necessary in a multi-dimensional battlespace. The 21st century battlespace will be characterized by the effective use of information technology to mass the effects of dispersed firepower rather than relying exclusively on the physical massing of weapons and forces. Digitization provides rapid sharing of enemy and friendly information among all forces within the battlespace, and it enhances combat power by making combat forces more effective and survivable.

c.   Digitization does not markedly change the way the unit plans and executes operations from a tactical perspective. However, digitized equipment, employed by highly trained and proficient soldiers, enhances the unit's capabilities to conduct operations with greater lethality, survivability, and better command and control. The digitized unit has enhanced capability to maneuver against the enemy and employ direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems. Digitization increases friendly and enemy situational information, reduces the risk of fratricide, and increases the accuracy of fires. In addition, digitization streamlines the battlefield planning process for the leader and allows an increased tempo of combat actions.

D-2. **Army Battle Command System**. ABCS provides for the interface of brigades and battalions with divisions and corps. ABCS is comprised of the MCS, ASAS, forward area air defense command, control, computers and intelligence (FAADC3I), advanced field artillery tactical data system (AFATDS), combat service support control system (CSSCS), and FBCB2. ABCS depends on FBCB2 to provide current friendly and enemy situational understanding data and status information. All these systems have the capability to communicate with each other to provide the commander timely and accurate information enabling him to exercise command and control (C2). Each system is briefly addressed below:

a.   MCS is the ABCS automation system for the maneuver BOS. At the brigade level, planners use MCS-Light. MCS integrates the systems that comprise the ABCS and operates as the server. This integration improves the commander's situational understanding by providing enhanced and timely information, assisting in the direction and synchronization of subordinate and supporting units, and aides in the identification, analysis, comparison and selection of courses of action.

b.   ASAS is the ABCS automation system for the intelligence BOS. ASAS facilitates the decision-making process by rapidly processing large volumes of combat information and intelligence data. This assists the S2 in making timely enemy assessments.

c.   FAADC3I is the ABCS automation system for the air defense BOS. It provides automated processing and dissemination of air tracking data. The air and missile defense workstation (AMDWS) is the hardware component used in the brigade command post (CP).

d.   AFATDS is the ABCS automation system for the field artillery BOS. AFATDS enables the maneuver commander to plan and attack using the optimal weapon-target pairing combinations. AFATDS provides integrated automated support for planning, coordinating, and controlling all fire support assets (field artillery, mortars, close air support, naval gunfire, attack helicopter, and offensive electronic warfare) and for executing counter fire, interdiction, and suppression of enemy targets.

e.   CSSCS is the ABCS automation system for the combat service support BOS. FBCB2 is the primary digital system for collating and forwarding CSS information to the S4's CSSCS in battalion-level combat units. CSCSS consolidates the information for the commander's use in the decision-making process. CSSCS assists the S4 in determining the current and projected capabilities of a force based on the availability of logistical support.

D-3. **Other Systems**.Though not part of ABCS, there are several other digital systems that interface with the C2 systems of the battalion.

a.   The mortar fire control system (MFCS) provides a digitized fire control system down to the gun level. The MFCS provides mortars with a global positioning system (GPS) and collimator on the guns, thus eliminating the need to optically lay a gun with an aiming circle. The MFCS is compatible with the AFATDS.

b.   The joint surveillance target attack radar system (JSTARS) processes radar information, signal intelligence (SIGINT) reports, unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) video and telemetry, and secondary imagery from national sources. The current battle picture provided through the JSTARS common ground station (CGS) allows ground commanders to more effectively conduct intelligence reporting, battle management, and targeting.

c.   The TROJAN SPIRIT system is an intelligence communications and dissemination system. It provides near real time access to national agencies. It provides tactical military intelligence (MI) units the reach-back connectivity into the joint worldwide intelligence communications system (JWICS) and the secure internet protocol router network (SIPRNET).

d.   The digital topographic support system (DTSS) manages the digital topographic database for ABCS. It can provide automated terrain analysis, National Imagery and Mapping Agency (NIMA) digital database updates, and commercial or national imagery inputs. DTSS can create image maps from scanned or digital imagery (for example, tactical UAV [TUAV]) and can provide rapid reproduction of low volume, large format, full-color image maps, situation overlays, special graphics, and other topographic products.

e.   The counter intelligence/human intelligence automated tools set (CHATS) provides digital support to human intelligence (HUMINT) specialists. It interfaces with the ASAS and other MI systems. CHATS provides automation capability to collect, manage, receive, store, and export text, electronic data, and digital imagery information. It provides a secure means to prepare, process, and disseminate standard messages.

f.   The integrated meteorological system (IMETS) provides near real time weather data in order to conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).

g.   Medical communications for combat casualty care (MC4) is a "family of systems" that automates medical record-keeping at all echelons with computer-based medical applications and medical logistics support.

D-4. **Tactical Internet (TI)**.

a.   The TI systems are designed to provide real time, shared situational understanding. They consist of tactical radios linked with routers using commercial protocols that allow digital systems to inter-operate

in a dynamic battlefield environment. The TI provides the reliable, seamless communications connectivity to deliver situational and command and control (C2) data to digital systems.

b.   The TI is comprised of two echelons, warfighter information network terrestrial (WIN-T) (or upper TI) and the lower TI. The upper TI and lower TI overlap both at the battalion and brigade level. The lower TI passes situational understanding and C2 data to the battalion and brigade TOCs by way of tactical data radios, enhanced position location reporting system (EPLRS). WIN-T passes situational understanding and C2 between command posts at battalion level and higher.

c.   The lower TI provides digital communications capability for brigade and below. It is composed of three primary components: the enhanced position location reporting system (EPLRS) provides data-only communication (for example, platform position information, network coordination, and data communication) capability. The single-channel ground and airborne radio system (SINCGARS) provides data-only and voice/data communications capability. The internet controler (INC) provides routing and interface capability.

d.   Currently, with the capability of frequency hopping, digital jamming rarely occurs. However, the enemy can degrade TI operations if he has the capability to jam a broad band of frequencies.

e.   The unit's signal officer (S6) uses the tactical internet manager with information system control (ISYSCON) to exchange technical and operational details for network management at lower echelon networks.

D-5. **Force XXI Battle Command, Brigade and Below (FBCB2)**.

a.   The FBCB2 is a digital battle command information system that provides on-the-move, real-time command and control information to soldiers and leaders at all levels. The FBCB2 provides friendly and enemy situational understanding down to the platform level. Friendly and enemy data includes the user's location, the location of other friendly forces, observed enemy locations, and all known battlefield obstacles. FBCB2 consists of:
- Software for embedded battle command (EBC) systems in the tactical operations centers (TOCs).
- Hardware and software for non-embedded air and ground platforms.
- Supporting communication systems (SINCGARS and EPLRS).

b.   The FBCB2 receives data across the TI by way of SINCGARS or EPLRS which is then routed through the internet controller. The INC is a tactical router built into SINCGARS. The EPLRS data radio and SINCGARS data or voice radio transmit and receive digital information between vehicles. Each FBCB2 derives its own location by way of the precision lightweight GPS receiver (PLGR). Using these interfaces, the FBCB2 automatically updates and broadcasts its current location to all other FBCB2 and embedded battle command (EBC) platforms. The EBC is a separate software package that enables the FBCB2 platforms to share friendly and enemy situational understanding and C2 with battalion and brigade TOCs.

D-6. **Maneuver Control System**.

a.   The MCS is the digital staff-planning tool for the maneuver BOS. The MCS-light is the variant of the MCS used at the maneuver battalion level. The MCS-light application suite consists of interconnected tools designed to assist the commander and the planners in understanding the battlefield situation. These tools improve the commander's maneuver abilities by providing enhanced and timely information, assisting in the direction and synchronization of subordinate and supporting units, and aids in the identification, analysis, comparison and selection of courses of action. MCS-light consists of:
- Software for text and data manipulation, overlay development, and staff planning tools.
- Notebook computer hardware.
- FBCB2/ABCS interfaces/integration.

b. The friendly and enemy situational understanding data for MCS-light is provided by FBCB2 systems. The tactical operations center's (TOC's) local area network (LAN) receives this data by way of EPLRS and routes it to the MCS-light systems in the TOC. Data between TOCs goes by way of a near-term digital radio (NTDR) system. The NTDR is dedicated to transmitting and receiving digital information between ABCS components.

D-7. **All-Source Analysis System**.

a. The ASAS is the digital staff-planning tool for the intelligence BOS. The ASAS-light (ASAS-L) is the battalion-level system. The ASAS-light is primarily a receiver of processed intelligence information and graphic IPB products from the brigade analysis control team (ACT) and division analysis control element (ACE). It also receives and processes initial intelligence reports and information from FBCB2 to maintain the enemy current situational database. It also forwards intelligence reports to the SBCT ACT/DIV ACE where it undergoes an all-source analysis and fusion before returning as fully correlated intelligence information. The ASAS-L includes a common map product, database, and communications to provide the common operational picture, planning and execution tools, common operations/intelligence database, and provides seamless exchanges up and down echelons.

b. The ASAS-L consists of a notebook computer with a select subset of the ASAS-heavy software capabilities and communications interfaces. ASAS-L receives data across the TI by way of the NTDR system. The NTDR is dedicated to transmit and receive digital information between ABCS components.

D-8. **Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System**. The AFATDS is the ABCS automation system for the field artillery BOS. AFATDS enables the maneuver commander to plan and attack using the optimal weapon-target pairing combinations. It provides a digital link between sensors, decision makers, and firing systems.

a. The AFATDS linkage with ASAS improves the targeting process due to the increased amount of intelligence and information that ASAS provides digitally. By using MCS and AFATDS, the development and deconfliction of fire support control measures reduces the planning time. AFATDS provides integrated automated support for planning, coordinating, and controlling all fire support assets (field artillery, mortars, close air support, naval gunfire, attack helicopter, and offensive electronic warfare) and for executing counter fire, interdiction, and suppression of enemy targets.

b. The battalion/squadron fire support element (FSE) has an AFATDS to provide digital linkage. The company/troop fire support team (FIST) has a lightweight computer unit (LCU) with forward observer systems (FOS) software digital linkage. Both are capable of communication with the battalion/squadron mortars as well as fire support assets available at the SBCT or higher levels.

D-9. **Role-Based Functionality**. Different battalion responsibilities require unique demands of FBCB2, MCS-Light, and ASAS-Light. All systems are designed to provide functionality based upon their configured role. Roles are configured into different categories for functionality:
- Individual vehicles
- Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)
- Tactical Operations Center (TOC)
- Combat Trains Command Post (CTCP)

D-10. **Digital Battle Command**.

a. The principles of command and control do not change with digitization. Leaders and staff still plan, direct, and control the operations of their units. Digital systems enhance the leader's ability to make timely and accurate battlefield decisions by providing a timely picture of the situation. One key benefit of the interaction between FBCB2, MCS-Light, and ASAS-Light is the common operational picture (COP). It allows the staff and leaders to have a shared, common view of the terrain, friendly forces, and enemy

forces. Fighting on a digital battlefield requires mental agility that is acquired through realistic digital training.

b.   The COP is a collection of data referenced to a geographical location and displayed on the screen of digital systems. The primary pieces of the COP are Blue force, Red force, terrain, obstacle data, and civilian activities of military concern. What each user actually sees depends on how he sets up his system. The COP is established through settings and filters. The COP settings tell the system how often to update the network with the platform's position. They also dictate how long both Blue and Red icons stay visible. The filters dialog box allows users to set which icons (unit type and echelon), overlays, labels, and geo-referenced graphics are displayed as part of the overall COP. Filter settings are a tool used to reduce screen clutter and simplify C2.

c.   The MCS-Light and the ASAS-Light are used at the battalion-level to assist in planning and preparing phases of the decision-making process for operations. They do not have the necessary functionality to assist leaders in the execution phase. Typical uses for these systems include the following:

- Process mission planning information to and from higher HQ (OPORDs from MCS-heavy).
- Develop mission messages for subordinates (OPORD messages via FBCB2).
- Display the common operating picture (same view as higher HQ).
- Display graphic planning tools (SITEMP, predictive enemy analysis, ISR and collection plans).
- Develop graphic control measures for subordinates (overlay files by way of FBCB2).

d.   The FBCB2 provides the tools that assist leaders in the execution phase of the decision-making process. C2 data is defined as all data other than situational data. There are several categories of C2 digital messages:

- Alerts and warnings (NBC reports, warnings of contaminated areas).
- Mission messages for subordinates (FRAGO messages).
- Common operating picture (same view as subordinates).
- Combat reporting (SITREP)

e.   The FBCB2, the MCS-Light, and the ASAS-Light pass messages using the joint variable message format (JVMF). The JVMF is a DOD standardized message format.

D-12. **Voice versus Digital**. Commanders should not rely on digital communications alone. Digitization does not eliminate the requirement for maps, voice communications, and collaboration. The decision to use voice instead of digital depends on the situation, unit tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs), and the combat environment. It is critical in the heat of combat to avoid assuming that just because a message is sent that it is received. Some message traffic should be sent digitally followed by a voice alert directing recipients to check their message queues.

a.   Voice radios remain the critical communications medium in executing the close fight and coordinating time sensitive actions. Voice communications are more responsive and direct person-to-person communications are shown to be the most effective means of developing and sharing correct group situational understanding. Multiple stations can monitor the net, and parties convey emotion during the transmission--a critical tool in assessing and understanding the battlefield situation. Voice communication is critical for rapidly passing FRAGOs and unit cross talk. Voice reports may also be required for reporting friendly unit strength and activity. Remember, digital traffic does not convey emotion, urgency, or non-verbal cues.

b.   Voice radio is recommended as the primary means of communication for:

- Initial contact and or SPOT reports.
- Coordinating operations when in contact or moving.
- Calls for fire (CFF) on targets of opportunity; particularly moving targets.
- Subsequent adjustment of fires on planned and unplanned targets.
- Urgent medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) requests.

- Enemy air.

c. Digital messaging, though greatly improved, is still somewhat cumbersome and cannot be executed by units engaged in the close fight. At some point in every combat operation, companies revert to voice as the primary medium for reporting and C2. This does not mean that the need to continue to send digital messages goes away; it just shifts to other leaders on the battlefield. This shift is planned before beginning the operation. This shift in communications and defining who picks up the responsibility for digital reporting is outlined in the TSOP or may need to be specified in a specific OPORD. It may occur at a prescribed time, in conjunction with specified battlefield events, on order, and or relative to the situational picture. The situational picture that FBCB2/MCS/ASAS provides reduces the normally extensive volume of voice traffic which is associated with tracking friendly forces, thus making more time available on the net to coordinate operations. Digital communications may extend beyond FM range due to FM limitations.

d. Digital communication is recommended for:
- Enemy spot reports (creates network-wide icon).
- NBC 1 report (creates network-wide icon).
- FM follow-up.
- Transmitting orders and graphics.
- Routine reporting (status, log, personnel reports).
- Planned calls for fire by designated observers.
- Logistic calls for support.

D-13. **Digital Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTP)**.

a. *Orders*. FBCB2 orders have a single-format free text. Additionally, FBCB2 orders have size constraints for each field. These limits can easily accommodate company/platoon OPORDs, but the voluminous orders frequently created at brigade level cannot be handled effectively. FBCB2 cannot handle matrix formats, unique matrixes like decision support, execution, and fire support matrixes. Therefore, orders received and developed must be manipulated to interface with FBCB2. Some of the character limitations and constraints leaders must keep in mind while writing OPORDs with FBCB2 are:
- Situation – 4,000 characters.
- Mission – 2,000 characters.
- Commander's Intent – 2,000 characters.
- Execution – 6,000 characters.
- Comments – 200 characters.
- Service Support – 6,000 characters.
- Command and Signal – 2,000 characters.
- Annexes – 6,000 characters.

b. *Digital Displays*. The display on digital C2 systems can be tailored to show up to four distinct layers of information:
- The map display constitutes the basic information the soldier needs to maneuver on the battlefield.
- The situational understanding display depicts graphical objects such as platform icons, unit symbols, or objects that are automatically displayed on the screen. The filter function of the system allows the users to de-clutter the screen of situational elements based on currency, dimension, type, and affiliation, by toggling these elements on or off. This is based on the unit's TSOP.
- Loaded overlays are composed of overlays that have been previously saved to the system and are now loaded so they can be viewed in the situational understanding area. These loaded overlays layer themselves like sheets of acetate over the map display and the situational understanding icons. A maximum of 12 overlays can be loaded for viewing at any time. Overlays display symbols and are sent and saved as C2 messages. Overlay elements are not situational understanding. They do not update or go stale or old.

- Current overlay consists of any overlay currently being created or edited.

c.   *Overlays.* Digital systems assist in C2 through the creation and transmission of digital graphics. Digital graphics provide excellent graphical control measures applied in battlespace management. Simplicity is the rule for effective digital graphics. Simplicity reduces file size, screen clutter, transmission time, and the volume of digital traffic. While FBCB2 provides 19 different types of overlays, the most commonly used overlays are the following:
- Current operations.
- Operations.
- Enemy.
- Obstacle.
- Fire plan.
- Target.

d.   *Digital Messaging.* Message handling procedures should be directed by unit TSOPs. Standard message management procedures reduce confusion and extra work. Message management includes:
- Message/overlay naming conventions.
- Filing procedures.
- Message precedence.
- Message use.

e.   *Pre-Combat Checks.* Pre-combat checks (PCCs) are a critical part of a unit's combat readiness. PCCs should be standardized and part of unit TSOP's. Some suggested PCCs for a digital unit are:
- Clear all unnecessary message queues and logs.
- Correct "own platform settings."
- Correct Blue and Red filter settings (check unit SOP).
- Correct communication security (COMSEC) fills on commo systems.
- Correct GPS, SINCGARS, and or EPLRS fills and settings.
- Correct map settings.
- Correct orders and overlays.
- Correct unit task organization (UTO) version.
- Correct commanders tracked item list (CTIL) version.
- Update personnel status (PERSTAT) report.
- Set MEDEVAC call signs and frequency in "platform setting dialog box."
- Set message address groups – do not leave at default settings.
- Establish message files and folders (for example, orders, overlays).
- Set message transmission settings for all message types (multicast versus unicast).
- Perform a digital and voice communications check by verifying your server.

D-14. **Land Warrior System**.

a.   The land warrior system (LWS) is a modular, integrated fighting system for individual infantrymen. The LWS includes everything the dismounted soldier wears and carries integrated into a close combat fighting system, which enhances his awareness of the friendly and enemy situation, lethality, and survivability. LWS is intended for use by all five types of infantry: ranger, airborne, air assault, light, and mechanized. The LWS integrates the dismounted infantryman into the Army's digitized battlefield network. The LWS is composed of five integrated subsystems:
- Weapon subsystem.
- Integrated helmet assembly subsystem.
- Computer/radio subsystem (CRS).
- Software subsystem.
- Protective clothing and individual equipment subsystem.

b.   The LWS provides a digital battle command information system that provides on-the-move, real-time command and control information to infantrymen and their leaders. As with FBCB2, the LWS provides Blue force and Red force situational data.

c.   The LWS receives data using the GPS. Using this interface, the LWS automatically updates and broadcasts its current location to other digital platforms.

GLOSSARY

A&R
athletic and recreation

A2C2
Army Airspace Command and Control

AA
assembly area; antiaircraft; avenue of approach

AAR
after-action review

AATF
Air Assault Task Force

ABCS
Army Battle Command System; airfield battlefield countermeasures and survivability

ABF
attack by fire (position)

ACUS
Army Common User System

AD
air defense

ADA
air defense artillery

ADO
Air Defense Officer

ADW
Air Defense Warning

AFATDS
Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System

ALO
air liaison officer

AM
amplitude modulation

AMC
air mission commander

AMDWS
Air and Missile Defense Work Station

AO
area of operation

AOI
area of interest

AOR
area of responsibility

AR
Army Regulation; Army Reserve

ARTEP
Army Training and Evaluation Program

ASAS
All Source Analysis System

ASP
ammunition supply point

AUEL
automated unit equipment list

AVN
aviation

BAS
battalion aid station

BDA
battle damage assessment

bde
brigade

BF
battle fatigue

BFM
Battlefield Forecast Model

BFV
Bradley Fighting Vehicle

BHL
battle handover line

bn
battalion

BOLT
brigade operational legal team

BOS
Battlefield Operating Systems

BP

battle position

BUA
built-up area

C2
command and control

C3
command, control, and communications

C4ISR
command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance

CA
civil affairs

CADST
civil affairs direct support team

CAS
close air support

CATS
Combined Arms Training Strategy

CCI
controlled cryptographic item

CCIR
commander's critical information requirements

CCM
cross country mobility

CCP
casualty collection point; computer control panel

CDE
chemical detection equipment

CFZ
Critical Friendly Zones

CHEMO
chemical officer

CHS
combat health support

CMO
civil military operation

COA
course of action

COLT
> combat observation/lasing team

Combined Arms Training Strategy
> The Army's overarching strategy for the current and future training of the force. Its basis is a series of branch proponent unit and institutional strategies describing training events, frequencies, and resources required to train to standard. These strategies describe how the Army will train the total force to standard in the institutions and unit and through self development. CATS also documents the quantity, and justification for all training resources required to execute the training. See "Training strategy. "

COMSEC
> communications security

CONPLAN
> contingency plan; concept plan

COP
> common operational picture

CP
> control panel; command post

CPR
> cardiopulmonary resuscitation

CRYPTO
> Cryptyographic

CS
> combat support; orthochlorobenzylmalononitrile

CSC
> Command and Staff College; combat stress control

CSR
> controlled supply rate

CSS
> combat service support

CSSCS
> Combat Service Support Control System

CTCP
> combat trains command post

CTP
> common tactical picture

DA
> Department of the Army

DA Form
> Department of the Army Form

DC
dislocated civilians; defense counsel; Dental Corps; direct current

decon
decontaminate; decontamination

div
division

DLIC
detachment left in contact

DoD
Department of Defense

DP
decision points; dual purpose

DS
direct support

DST
decision support template

DTO
Data Terminal Operator

DTSS
Digital Topographic Support System

ea; EA
each; engagement area; electronic attack

EBA
engineer battlefield assessment

EBC
Embedded Battle Command

ECCM
Electronic Counter-Counter Measures

ECM
Electronic Countermeasures

ECOA
enemy course of action

EEFI
essential elements of friendly information

EFST
essential fire support tasks

ELINT
electronic intelligence

EMT
emergency medical treatment

EPB
electronic preparation of the battlefield

EPLRS
enhanced position locating and reporting system

EPW
enemy prisoner of war

ERC
equipment readiness code

EW
electronic warfare; early warning

FA
field artillery; Functional Area

FAC
Family Advocacy Committee, forward area controller

FARP
forward area rearm/refuel point

fax
facsimile

FBCB2
Force XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below

FDC
fire direction center

FFIR
friendly force information requirements

FIST
fire support team

FLOT
forward line of own troops

FM
field manual; frequency modulation (radio)

FO
forward observer

FPF
final protection fires

FRAGO

fragmentary order

FS

fire support; Fort Sill

FSB

forward support battalion

FSCM

fire support coordinating measure

FSE

Fire support element.

FSO

fire support officer

FTX

field training exercise

G1

Assistant Chief of Staff, Personnel

G2

Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence

G4

Assistant Chief of Staff, Logistics

G6

division/corps signal officer/staff section

GSR

ground surveillance radar

HAZMAT

hazardous material

HCP

Health & Comfort Pact

HHC

headquarters and headquarters company

HIMAD

high-to-medium-altitude air defense

HN

host nation

HPT

high-payoff target

HPTL

high-payoff target list

HQDA
Headquarters, Department of the Army

HUMINT
human intelligence

HVT
high value target

IA
information assurance; initial assessment

IAW
in accordance with

ICV
Infantry Carrier Vehicle

IEW
intelligence and electronic warfare

IFF
identification friend or foe

IM
information management

INC
Internet Controller

INFOSYS
information systems

IP
initial point; internet protocol

IPB
Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

ir; IR
infrared; intelligence requirements; information requirement

IREMBASS
improved remotely monitored battlefield sensor system

ISM
intelligence synchronization matrix

ISR
intelligence, surveillance, reconnaissance

IV
intravenous

IW
information warfare

JAAT
joint air attack team

JCDB
Joint Common Database

J-SEAD
joint suppression of enemy air defenses

JSTARS
Joint Surveillance Target Acquisition Radar System

LAN
local area network

LBE
load-bearing equipment

lc; LC
light case; line of contact

LD
line of departure; lighted display; line of duty

live-fire exercise
An exercise designed to allow a unit/team to engage targets with its organic weapons and support.

LNO
liaison officer

LOA
limit of advance; letter of agreement; light observation helicopter

LOD
line of duty

LOS
line of sight

LRP
logistics release point

LW
Land Warrior

LZ
landing zone

MAPEX
map exercise

MBA
main battle area

MC4

medical communications for combat casualty care

MCOO
modified combined obstacle overlay

MCP
maintenance collective points

MCS
Maneuver Control System

MDA
Medical Digital Assistant

MDMP
Military Decision Making Process

MDP
management decision packages; meteorological datum plane

MEDCAP
medical civil action program

MEDEVAC
medical evacuation

METL
mission-essential task list

METT-TC
mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations

MI
military intelligence

MICLIC
mine clearing line charge

MIJI
meaconing intrusion jamming interference

MILES
Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

mm
millimeter

MMC
material management center

MOI
Memorandum of Instruction

MOPP
mission-oriented protection posture

MOS
military occupational specialty

MP
military police

MRB
Motorized Rifle Battalion

MRC
Motorized Rifle Company

MSR
main supply route

MTF
medical treatment facilities

MTOE
Modified Table of Organization and Equipment

MTP
mission training plan; MOS training plan

MWR
Morale, Welfare, and Recreation; missile warning receiver

NAI
named area(s) of interest

NBC
nuclear, biological, and chemical

NCO
noncommissioned officer

NCOIC
Noncommissioned Officer In Charge

NCS
net control station

NGO
non-governmental organization

NLT
not later than

NMC
nonmission capable

NSO
Network Security Officer; National Security Office

OB

order of battle

obj
objective

OBSTINTEL
obstacle intelligence

OCOKA
Observation and fire, Concealment and cover, Obstacles, Key terrain, and Avenues of approach

OEG
Operational Exposure Guidance

OIC
officer in charge

OP
observation post

OPCON
operational control

OPFOR
opposing force

OPLAN
operation plan

OPORD
operations order

OPSEC
operations security

ORP
objective rallying point

PA
physician assistant; posterior anterior; public affairs

PAO
public affairs officer

PDDE
power-driven decontamination equipment

PERSCOM
personnel command

PIR
priority intelligence requirement

PL
platoon leader; preservative lubricant; phase line

PLGR
> precision lightweight global positioning system (GPS) receiver

PLL
> prescribed load list

PMC
> Personnel Management Center

PMCS
> preventive maintenance checks and services

POD
> port of debarkation; point of debarkation

POE
> port of embarkation

POV
> privately owned vehicle

PP
> passage point

PRR
> Personnel Requirements Report

PS
> Personnel Summary

PSB
> Personnel Service Battalion

PSR
> Personnel Status Report

PSYOP
> psychological operations

PVNTMED
> preventive medicine

PVO
> private voluntary organization

PZ
> pickup zone

QRF
> quick reaction force

R&R
> rest and recuperation

R&S
> reconnaissance and surveillance; reconnaissance and security

RAA
rear assembly area; redeployment assembly areas; reconnaissance avenue of approach

REC
radio electronic combat

RETRANS
retransmission

RFI
request for information; Reserve Forces Intelligence

RFL
restrictive fire line

ROE
rules of engagement

ROI
rules of interaction

RP
release point

RSR
required supply rate

RSTA
reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition

RTD
return to duty

S1
personnel officer (below division level)

S2
intelligence officer (below division level)

S3
operations officer (below division level)

S3 air
assistant S3

S4
logistics officer (below division level)

S5
civil affairs officer (below division level)

S6
signal officer (below division level)

SATS

Standard Army Training Systems

SAW
squad automatic weapon

SBF
support by fire

SCATMINE
scatterable mine

SEAD
suppression of enemy air defense

SIDPERS
Standard Installation/Division Personnel System

SIF
selective identification feature

SIGINT
signals intelligence

SIGSEC
signal security

SINCGARS
Single-Channel Ground and Airborne Radio System

SIR
specific information requirements; serious incident report

SITEMP
situation template

SITMAP
situation map

SITREP
situation report

situational training exercise
A short scenario driven mission-oriented tactical exercise that provides a vehicle to train a group of closely related collective tasks and drills together. Situational training exercises provide preconstructed, bite-sized, short-term exercises that are central to sustainment training for tactical mission proficiency.

SJA
Staff Judge Advocate

SM
soldier's manuals

SNMP
Simple Network Management Protocol

SOEO
scheme of engineer operations

SOF
Special Operation Forces

SOI
signal operation instructions

SOP
standing operating procedure

SOR
specified orders and requests

SOSRA
suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault

SP
start point

SPOTREP
spot report

SRP
school requirements package; soldier readiness processing

STATREP
status report

STP
Soldier Training Publication

STRAC
standards in training commission

STRIKWARN
strike warning

STX
situational training exercise

SU
situational understanding

SYSCON
system control

T&EO
training and evaluation outline

TAA
tactical assembly area

TAACOM
theater army area command

TAC CP
tactical command post

TACSAT
tactical satellite

TAI
targeted areas of interest

TAMCA
theater army movement control agency

TAMMC
theater army material management center

TBP
to be published

TC
technical coordinator; training circular

TCS
temporary change of station

TDY
temporary duty

TEWT
tactical exercise without troops

TF
task force

TI
Tactical Internet

TIRS
terrain index reference system

tlp
troop-leading procedures

TOC
tactical operations center

TOE
Table of Organization and Equipment; term of enlistment

TPFDD
time-phased force and deployment data

TRADOC
United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

TRP

target reference point

TSOP
tactical standing operating procedure

TTP
tactics, techniques, and procedures

UAV
unmanned aerial vehicle

ULN
unit line number

UMCP
unit maintenance collection point

UMD
unit movement data

UPW
Unit Proficiency Worksheet

US
United States

USDA
United States Department of Agriculture

UTO
unit task organization

UW
unconventional warfare

vic
in the vicinity of

WAN
wide area network

WARNO
warning order

WCS
weapons control status

WIN
Warfighter Information Network

WIN-MS
Warrior Information Network - Management System

WMD
weapons of mass destruction

WSRO
weapon system replacement operations

XO
executive officer

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 220-10	Preparation for Overseas Movement of Units (POM) 15 June 1973
AR 380-19	Information Systems Security 27 February 1998
AR 380-19-1	(C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U) 30 September 2000
AR 380-5	Department of The Army Information Security Program 25 February 1988

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1355-1-R	HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD RECORD 1 September 2001
DA FORM 5032-R	Field Artillery Delivered Minefield Planning Sheet 1 January 1982
DA FORM 5976	Enemy Prisoner of War Capture Tag 1 January 1991

Field Manuals

FM 100-10	Combat Service Support 3 October 1995
FM 100-103	Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone 7 October 1987
FM 100-14	Risk Management 23 April 1998
FM 100-17	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization 28 October 1992
FM 100-20	Military Operations in Low-Intensity Conflict 5 December 1990
FM 100-23	Peace Operations This item is included on EM 0019 30 December 1994
FM 100-34	Command and Control
FM 100-34-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Command Post Operations
FM 100-40	Tactics
FM 100-5	Operations 14 June 1993
FM 100-55	Reconnaissance Operations
FM 100-6	Information Operations 27 August 1996
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics 30 September 1997
FM 101-5-2	US Army Report and Message Formats 29 June 1999
FM 10-27-4	Organizational Supply And Services For Unit Leaders 14 April 2000
FM 10-500-2	Airdrops of Supplies and Equipment: Rigging Airdrop Platforms 1 November 1990
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations 21 February 1997
FM 1-111	Aviation Brigades 27 October 1997
FM 11-41	Signal Support: Echelons Corps and Below (ECB) 18 December 1991
FM 11-43	Signal Leader's Manual 12 June 1995
FM 11-50	Combat Communications Within the Division (Heavy and Light) 4 April 1991
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine 9 September 1994

FM 19-15	Civil Disturbances 25 November 1985
FM 19-30	Physical Security 1 March 1979
FM 19-40	Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons 27 February 1976
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment and Decoys 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations 29 May 1998
FM 21-60	Visual Signals 30 September 1987
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-countermeasures 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI" 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	Signal Supplemental Instructions 2 October 1990
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals 8 May 1996
FM 3-19	NBC Reconaissance 19 November 1993
FM 3-21.21	The Stryker Brigade Combat Team Infantry Battalion
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance 16 November 1992
FM 33-1	Psychological Operations 18 February 1993
FM 3-3-1	Nuclear Contamination Avoidance 9 September 1994
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations 31 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection 29 May 1992
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations 27 September 1994
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield 8 July 1994
FM 34-2	Collection Management and Synchronization Planning 8 March 1994
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance 19 June 1991
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis 15 March 1990
FM 34-40-7	Communications Jamming Handbook 23 November 1992
FM 34-5	Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations 29 July 1994
FM 34-52	Intelligence Interrogation 28 September 1992
FM 34-54	Technical Intelligence 30 January 1998
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence 30 October 1995
FM 34-8-2	Intelligence Officer's Handbook 1 May 1998
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination 28 July 2000
FM 3-50-1	Smoke Unit Operations (FM to be Published in the Future)
FM 3-6	Field Behavior of NBC Agents (Including Smoke & Incendiaries) 3 November 1986
FM 3-7	NBC Field Handbook 29 September 1994
FM 41-10	Civil Affairs Operations 14 February 2000
FM 44-1	US Army ADA Employment 9 May 1983
FM 44-8	Combined Arms For The Air Defense 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition 30 September 1996
FM 5-100	Engineer Combat Operations 27 February 1996
FM 5-101	Mobility 23 January 1985
FM 5-102	Countermobility 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance 5 May 1998
FM 5-20	Camouflage 30 July 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis 11 July 1990

FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data 30 August 1999
FM 5-35	Engineer Reference and Logistical Data 15 April 1971
FM 55-10	Movement Control 9 February 1999
FM 55-12	Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft (AFR 76-6) 10 November 1989
FM 55-15	Transportation Reference Data 27 October 1997
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment 3 October 1995
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored) 3 October 1995
FM 6-20-10	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Targeting Process 8 May 1996
FM 6-20-20	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support at Battalion Task Force and Below 27 December 1991
FM 6-20-40	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support for Brigade Operations (Heavy) 5 January 1990
FM 6-30	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire 16 July 1991
FM 701-58	Planning Logistics Support for Military Operations. 27 May 1987
FM 71-123	Tactics and Techniques for Combined Arms Heavy Forces: Armored Brigade, Battalion Task Force, and Company Team 30 September 1992
FM 71-2	The Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force 27 September 1988
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion 6 April 1992
FM 7-85	Ranger Unit Operations 9 June 1987
FM 7-90	Tactical Employment of Mortars 9 October 1992
FM 7-91	Tactical Employment of Antiarmor Units 30 September 1987
FM 7-98	Operations in a Low-Intensity Conflict 19 October 1992
FM 8-10	Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations 1 March 1991
FM 8-10-1	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 29 December 1994
FM 8-10-25	Employment of Forward Surgical Teams Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 30 September 1997
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 14 April 2000
FM 8-10-7	Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment 22 April 1993
FM 8-10-9	Combat Health Logistics in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 3 October 1995
FM 8-230	Medical Specialist 24 August 1984
FM 8-51	Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 29 September 1994
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support 9 September 1994
FM 8-9	NATO Handbook on the Medical Aspects of NBC Defensive Operations 1 February 1996
FM 90-10(HTF)	Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT) (How to Fight) 15 August 1979
FM 90-10-1	An Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-up Areas 12 May 1993
FM 90-13	River Crossing Operations 26 January 1998
FM 90-2	Battlefield Deception 3 October 1988
FM 90-4	Air Assault Operations 16 March 1987
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-1	Maintenance Operations and Procedures 21 February 1997

FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair 3 October 1995

Other Product Types

DD FORM 1380	US Field Medical Card 1 December 1991

Technical Bulletins

TB 55-46-1	Standard Characteristics (Dimensions, Weight, and Cube) for Transportability of Military Vehicles and Other Outsize/Overweight Equipment (in TOE Line Item Number Sequence) 1 January 1998

Training Circulars

TC 7-98-1	Stability and Support Operations Training Support Package 5 June 1997

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Field Manuals

FM 100-10	Combat Service Support 3 October 1995
FM 100-34	Command and Control
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics 30 September 1997
FM 25-100	Training The Force 15 November 1988
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training Management at Battalion Level and Lower 30 September 1990
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield 8 July 1994
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance 19 June 1991
FM 34-80	Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations 15 April 1986
FM 41-10	Civil Affairs Operations 14 February 2000
FM 6-20-10	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Targeting Process 8 May 1996
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion 6 April 1992
FM 90-10(HTF)	Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT) (How to Fight) 15 August 1979
FM 90-4	Air Assault Operations 16 March 1987
FM 100-14	Risk Management 23 April 1998
FM 100-17	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization 28 October 1992

Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER: <u>ARTEP 7-22-MTP</u>   DATE: _____

MTP TITLE: <u>Mission Training Plan for Stryker Brigade Combat Team Infantry Battalion</u>

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to: Commandant, US Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-ATD, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5007. Electronic contact can be made at doctrine@benning.army.mil

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1.   What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant)? _____

2.   How long have you served in this position? _____

3.   How long have you served in this unit? _____

4.   What is your component? (Check one.)

      A. Active Component. _____

      B. Reserve Component. _____

5.   Where is your unit? _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6.   How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products? (Check one.)

      A. Has made training worse. _____

      B. Has made training better. _____

      C. Has had no affect on training._____

      D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

7.   How easy is the MTP to use compared to other training products? (Check one.)

      A. More difficult. _____

      B. Easier. _____

      C. About the same. _____

      D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

8.   What part of the MTP document was least useful? (Check one.)

      A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

      B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes. _____

C. Chapter 3, Training Plans/Outlines. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? (Check one.)

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes. _____

C. Chapter 3, Training Plans/Outlines. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand? (Check one.)

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes. _____

C. Chapter 3, Training Plans/Outlines. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? (Check one.)

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes. _____

C. Chapter 3, Training Plans/Outlines. _____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluations. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND STX.

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose? (Check one.)

   A. They do not prepare the unit at all. _____

   B. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. _____

   C. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements. _____

   D. They help but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements. _____

   E. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements. _____

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? _____

14. What was the greatest problem that you experienced with the exercises? (Check one.)

   A. Too many pages. _____

   B. Hard to read and understand. _____

   C. Needs more illustrations. _____

   D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

   E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

   F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

   G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

   H. Needs more information on normally attached elements. _____

   I. Does not interface well with other training products such as battle drills. _____

   J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises? (Check one.)

   A. Too many pages. _____

   B. Hard to read and understand. _____

   C. Needs more illustrations. _____

   D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

   E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

   F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements. _____

I. Does not interface well with other training products such as battle drills. _____

J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP.

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines? (Check one.)

A. Leave it out altogether. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation. _____

D. The standards are too detailed. _____

E. The standards are not detailed enough. _____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime. _____

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluations? (Check one.)

A. Leave it out altogether. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation. _____

D. The standards are too detailed. _____

E. The standards are not detailed enough. _____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime. _____

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____
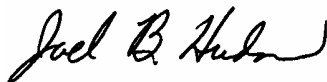
H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

19. Additional comments: _____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

PETER J. SCHOOMAKER
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0328307

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic Means Only.